

Corel<sup>®</sup>  
PHOTO-PAINT<sup>™</sup> X7

User Guide

Copyright © 2014 Corel Corporation. All rights reserved.

Corel® PHOTO-PAINT™ X7 User Guide

Protected by one or more of the following United States Patents and their foreign counterparts: 6195100; 6552725; 6657739; 6825859; 6959422; 7086006; 7207047; 7256793; 7515752; 7640500; 6731309; 7827483; 8397176.

Product specifications, pricing, packaging, technical support and information (“specifications”) refer to the retail English version only. The specifications for all other versions (including other language versions) may vary.

Information is provided by Corel on an “as is” basis, without any other warranties or conditions, express or implied, including, but not limited to, warranties of merchantable quality, satisfactory quality, merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose, or those arising by law, statute, usage of trade, course of dealing or otherwise. The entire risk as to the results of the information provided or its use is assumed by you. Corel shall have no liability to you or any other person or entity for any indirect, incidental, special, or consequential damages whatsoever, including, but not limited to, loss of revenue or profit, lost or damaged data or other commercial or economic loss, even if Corel has been advised of the possibility of such damages, or they are foreseeable. Corel is also not liable for any claims made by any third party. Corel's maximum aggregate liability to you shall not exceed the costs paid by you to purchase the materials. Some states/countries do not allow exclusions or limitations of liability for consequential or incidental damages, so the above limitations may not apply to you.

Corel, the Corel logo, the Corel balloon, CorelDRAW, Corel DESIGNER, Corel PHOTO-PAINT, ConceptShare, Corel CONNECT, Corel CAPTURE, Knowledge Base, Corel PaintShop Pro, Corel Painter, PowerClip, Corel VideoStudio, and WordPerfect are trademarks or registered trademarks of Corel Corporation and/or its subsidiaries in Canada, the U.S., and/or other countries. Other product, font, and company names and logos may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

230124

# Contents

Getting started.....	1
Installing CorelDRAW Graphics Suite.....	3
System requirements.....	3
Preparing for installation.....	3
Installing CorelDRAW Graphics Suite applications.....	4
Installation options.....	4
Modifying and repairing installations.....	6
Uninstalling CorelDRAW Graphics Suite.....	6
Frequently Asked Questions.....	6
Corel memberships and services.....	9
CorelDRAW memberships.....	9
Using your account.....	10
Updating Corel products.....	10
Corel Support Services.....	10
About Corel.....	11
What's new in CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X72.....	13
Get up and running easily.....	13
Work faster and more efficiently.....	16
Design with creativity and confidence.....	20
Share and expand your experience.....	24
Finding out what was new in previous versions.....	25
Learning resources.....	27
Getting help.....	27
Using the Help and tooltips.....	28
Quick Start Guide.....	29
Insights from the Experts.....	29
Video learning resources.....	29
Using Hints.....	30
Welcome screen.....	30

Tips and Tricks.....	31
Macro programming guide.....	31
Network deployment guide.....	31
Web-based resources.....	31
Customized training and integration resources.....	32
Starting and setting up.....	33
Starting and quitting Corel PHOTO-PAINT.....	33
Changing languages.....	33
Changing startup settings.....	34
Corel PHOTO-PAINT workspace tour.....	35
Corel PHOTO-PAINT terms.....	35
Corel PHOTO-PAINT application window.....	36
Choosing a workspace.....	38
Toolbars.....	39
Toolbox.....	41
Property bar.....	48
Dockers.....	48
Color palette.....	50
Status bar.....	50
Setting options.....	51
Changing workspace options.....	51
Disabling warning messages.....	52
Bringing images into Corel PHOTO-PAINT.....	53
Opening images.....	53
Importing files.....	54
Scanning images.....	57
Creating images.....	57
Working with multiple images.....	59
Working with vector graphics.....	59
Displaying images and image information.....	61
Viewing images.....	61

Zooming.....	63
Viewing image information.....	64
Refreshing the image window.....	64
Detecting and embedding Digimarc watermarks.....	65
Using the guidelines, grid, and rulers.....	67
Setting up guidelines.....	67
Setting up the grid.....	70
Setting up the rulers.....	71
Undoing, redoing, repeating, and fading actions.....	75
Undoing and redoing actions.....	75
Reverting to an earlier image state.....	76
Repeating and fading actions.....	77
Saving and closing.....	79
Saving images.....	79
Exporting images to other file formats.....	81
Working with locked files.....	82
Closing images.....	82
Finding and managing content.....	83
Exploring Corel CONNECT.....	83
Accessing content.....	88
Browsing and searching for content.....	90
Viewing content.....	92
Using content.....	93
Installing fonts.....	95
Managing content.....	95
Syncing trays with OneDrive.....	96
Content types.....	98
Collaborating.....	101
Using ConceptShare.....	101
<b>Editing images.....</b>	<b>103</b>

Changing image dimensions, resolution, and paper size.....	105
Changing image dimensions.....	105
Changing image resolution.....	106
Changing paper size.....	107
Cropping, stitching, scaling, and changing orientation.....	109
Cropping images.....	109
Stitching images together.....	111
Scaling images by using Smart Carver.....	112
Straightening images.....	114
Rotating and flipping images.....	116
Retouching.....	119
Improving scanned images.....	119
Removing red-eye.....	120
Removing dust and scratch marks.....	121
Cloning image areas.....	123
Sharpening images.....	125
Removing artifacts and noise from JPEG images.....	126
Erasing image areas.....	126
Smearing, smudging, and blending colors.....	128
Adjusting color and tone.....	131
Using the Image Adjustment Lab.....	131
Using individual color-adjustment effects and tools.....	135
Exploring adjustment filters.....	139
Working with color channels.....	143
Working with lenses.....	147
Creating lenses.....	147
Editing lenses.....	150
Combining lenses with the image background.....	152
Reshaping image areas.....	153
Smearing image areas.....	153
Adding twirl effects.....	154

Reshaping image areas by pulling or pushing away pixels.....	155
<b>Color, fills, and transparencies.....</b>	<b>157</b>
Working with color.....	159
Understanding color models.....	159
Understanding color depth.....	161
Choosing colors.....	161
Using the Image palette.....	168
Creating and editing custom color palettes.....	169
Organizing and displaying color palettes.....	172
Displaying or hiding color palettes in the Palette libraries.....	173
Setting the properties of color palettes.....	174
Using spot color channels.....	175
Changing color modes.....	179
Changing the color mode of images.....	179
Converting images to the black-and-white color mode.....	181
Converting images to the paletted color mode.....	181
Converting images to the duotone color mode.....	183
Using color management.....	185
Understanding color management.....	185
Getting started with color management in Corel PHOTO-PAINT.....	189
Installing, loading, and embedding color profiles.....	190
Assigning color profiles.....	191
Converting colors to other color profiles.....	192
Choosing color-conversion settings.....	193
Soft proofing.....	193
Working with color management presets.....	196
Working with color management policies.....	196
Managing colors when opening documents.....	198
Managing colors when importing and pasting files.....	198
Managing colors for print.....	199

Using a safe CMYK workflow.....	199
Managing colors for online viewing.....	200
Filling images.....	201
Applying uniform fills.....	201
Applying fountain fills.....	202
Applying bitmap pattern fills.....	205
Applying texture fills.....	207
Applying transparency patterns to fills.....	208
Working with transparency.....	209
Applying uniform transparency.....	209
Applying fountain transparency.....	210
Applying bitmap pattern transparency.....	212
Applying texture transparency.....	213
Applying transparency by using brushstrokes.....	214
Making selected colors in objects transparent.....	215
Blending objects.....	215
Managing and sharing fills and transparencies.....	217
Managing fills and transparencies.....	217
Saving and sharing fills and transparencies.....	219
<b>Masks and paths.....</b>	<b>221</b>
Working with masks.....	223
Distinguishing protected and editable areas.....	223
Defining editable areas.....	225
Defining editable areas by using color information.....	229
Expanding and contracting editable areas.....	231
Inverting and removing masks.....	234
Moving and aligning editable areas.....	234
Transforming editable areas.....	236
Adjusting the edges of editable areas.....	238
Adjusting the transparency of masks.....	240
Cutting out images.....	241

Using paths to define image areas.....	245
Creating paths.....	245
Managing paths.....	247
Shaping paths.....	249
Adding and deleting path nodes.....	250
Joining and breaking paths.....	251
Changing node types.....	252
Applying brushstrokes to paths.....	253
Working with clipping paths.....	254
Managing multiple masks with alpha channels.....	257
Creating and editing alpha channels.....	257
Saving masks and alpha channels.....	258
Loading masks and alpha channels.....	259
Managing alpha channels.....	260
<b>Painting and special effects.....</b>	<b>263</b>
Drawing and painting.....	265
Drawing shapes and lines.....	265
Applying brushstrokes.....	268
Spraying images.....	272
Painting symmetrical patterns and orbits.....	274
Repeating brushstrokes.....	276
Creating custom brushes.....	276
Using a pressure-sensitive pen.....	278
Understanding merge modes.....	280
Applying special effects.....	283
Working with special effects.....	283
Applying preset styles.....	285
Applying color and tone effects.....	285
Special effects categories.....	286
Applying Bevel effects.....	293

Applying the Bokeh Blur effect.....	293
Applying Lens Flare effects.....	295
Applying Lighting effects.....	295
Adding photo frames.....	296
Gallery of special effects.....	297
Managing plug-ins.....	306
<b>Objects.....</b>	<b>309</b>
Working with objects.....	311
Creating objects.....	312
Changing object properties.....	313
Selecting objects.....	314
Moving, copying, and deleting objects.....	315
Displaying and arranging objects.....	317
Aligning and distributing objects.....	318
Using alignment guides.....	320
Locking objects.....	322
Grouping and combining objects.....	322
Choosing a merge mode for grouped objects.....	324
Working with clipping groups.....	325
Modifying objects.....	327
Transforming objects.....	327
Cropping objects.....	331
Changing the edges of objects.....	331
Adding drop shadows to objects.....	334
Using clip masks.....	336
Protecting the area around an object.....	338
Linking and embedding objects.....	339
Inserting linked or embedded objects into another application.....	339
Editing linked or embedded objects.....	340
<b>Text.....</b>	<b>341</b>

Creating and formatting text.....	343
Adding and selecting text.....	343
Adding color to text.....	344
Formatting text.....	346
Working with OpenType features.....	347
Inserting special characters, symbols, and glyphs.....	351
Kerning, shifting, and rotating text.....	354
Aligning text.....	354
Adjusting line, character, and word spacing.....	355
Anti-aliasing text.....	355
Fitting text to a path.....	356
Previewing fonts.....	357
Choosing fonts with Font Playground.....	358
Identifying fonts.....	360
Working with legacy text.....	360
Working with text in different languages.....	361
Modifying encoding settings to display text correctly.....	361
Working with Asian and Middle Eastern text.....	362
OpenType support for Asian text.....	363
<b>Web images and movies.....</b>	<b>365</b>
Creating and editing movies.....	367
Opening and playing movies.....	367
Creating movies.....	368
Modifying frame sequence and frame display time.....	370
Saving movies.....	372
Creating images for the web.....	375
Exporting images for the web.....	375
Saving and applying web presets.....	380
Creating palette-based images with transparent colors and backgrounds.....	381
Creating image maps.....	382

Slicing images.....	383
Creating and editing rollovers.....	386
E-mailing images.....	389
<b>Printing.....</b>	<b>391</b>
Printing basics.....	393
Printing your work.....	393
Laying out print jobs.....	394
Previewing print jobs.....	395
Applying print styles.....	396
Fine-tuning print jobs.....	397
Printing colors accurately.....	397
Printing to a PostScript printer.....	399
Viewing preflight summaries.....	401
Preparing files for print service providers.....	403
Preparing a print job for a print service provider.....	403
Working with imposition layouts.....	404
Printing printers' marks.....	406
Printing color separations.....	408
Working with color trapping and overprinting.....	409
Printing to film.....	410
Working with a print service provider.....	410
<b>File formats.....</b>	<b>413</b>
Exporting to PDF.....	415
Exporting documents as PDF files.....	415
Including hyperlinks, bookmarks, and thumbnails in PDF files.....	417
Reducing the size of PDF files.....	418
Specifying an encoding format for PDF files.....	419
Specifying color management options for exporting PDF files.....	419
Setting security options for PDF files.....	420
Optimizing PDF files.....	421

Viewing preflight summaries for PDF files.....	422
Preparing PDF files for a print provider.....	422
Working with office productivity applications.....	425
Exporting files to office productivity applications.....	425
Adding objects to documents.....	425
Working with RAW camera files.....	427
Using RAW camera files.....	427
Bringing RAW camera files into Corel PHOTO-PAINT.....	428
Adjusting the color and tone of RAW camera files.....	430
Sharpening and reducing noise in RAW camera files.....	432
Previewing RAW camera files and obtaining image information.....	433
Supported file formats.....	435
Adobe Illustrator (AI).....	436
Windows Bitmap (BMP).....	436
OS/2 Bitmap (BMP).....	437
Computer Graphics Metafile (CGM).....	437
CorelDRAW (CDR).....	438
Corel Presentation Exchange (CMX).....	438
Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT).....	438
Cursor Resource (CUR).....	439
AutoCAD Drawing Database (DWG) and AutoCAD Drawing Interchange Format (DXF).....	439
Encapsulated PostScript (EPS).....	440
PostScript (PS or PRN).....	442
GIF.....	443
JPEG (JPG).....	444
JPEG 2000 (JP2).....	444
Kodak Photo CD Image (PCD).....	446
PICT (PCT).....	447
PaintBrush (PCX).....	447
Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF).....	448

HPGL Plotter File (PLT).....	448
Portable Network Graphics (PNG).....	449
Adobe Photoshop (PSD).....	450
Corel Painter (RIF).....	451
TARGA (TGA).....	452
TIFF.....	453
Corel Paint Shop Pro (PSP).....	453
WordPerfect Graphic (WPG).....	454
RAW camera file formats.....	454
Wavelet Compressed Bitmap (WI).....	454
Windows Metafile Format (WMF).....	454
Additional file formats.....	455
Recommended formats for importing graphics.....	455
Recommended formats for exporting graphics.....	456
<b>Customizing and automating.....</b>	<b>457</b>
Customizing Corel PHOTO-PAINT.....	459
Creating workspaces.....	459
Customizing keyboard shortcuts.....	461
Customizing menus.....	462
Customizing toolbars.....	463
Customizing the toolbox.....	466
Customizing the property bar.....	466
Customizing the status bar.....	467
Customizing filters.....	468
Customizing file associations.....	469
Using macros and scripts to automate tasks.....	471
Working with macros.....	471
Working with scripts.....	476
<b>Reference.....</b>	<b>481</b>
Corel PHOTO-PAINT for Adobe Photoshop users.....	483

Comparing terminology.....	483
Comparing tools.....	484
Glossary.....	487



## Getting started

Installing CorelDRAW Graphics Suite.....	3
Corel memberships and services.....	9
What's new in CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7?.....	13
Learning resources.....	27
Starting and setting up.....	33
Corel PHOTO-PAINT workspace tour.....	35
Setting options.....	51
Bringing images into Corel PHOTO-PAINT.....	53
Displaying images and image information.....	61
Using the guidelines, grid, and rulers.....	67
Undoing, redoing, repeating, and fading actions.....	75
Saving and closing.....	79
Finding and managing content.....	83
Collaborating.....	101





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Installing CorelDRAW Graphics Suite

This section contains the following topics:

- “System requirements” (page 3)
- “Preparing for installation” (page 3)
- “Installing CorelDRAW Graphics Suite applications” (page 4)
- “Installation options” (page 4)
- “Modifying and repairing installations” (page 6)
- “Uninstalling CorelDRAW Graphics Suite” (page 6)
- “Frequently Asked Questions” (page 6)

### System requirements

The following list includes the minimum system requirements. Note that for optimum performance, you need more RAM and hard disc space than indicated in the list.

- Operating system with latest service pack: Windows 8 (32-bit or 64-bit Editions) or Windows 7 (32-bit or 64-bit Editions)
- Intel Core 2 Duo or AMD Athlon 64
- 2 GB RAM
- 1 GB hard disk space

Electronic software downloads (ESD) require more space to allow for the download, the uncompressed setup files, and the actual installation, which includes copies the source files as well.

- Mouse or tablet
- 1280 x 768 screen resolution or greater
- DVD drive
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 8 or later



If the Microsoft .NET Framework is not available on your computer, it will be installed during product installation.

### Preparing for installation

- Make sure that your system’s date and time are set correctly.
- Close all applications, including all virus detection programs and applications that are open in the system tray or on the Windows taskbar. Not doing so may increase the installation time and interfere with the installation.

- Log in as an administrator.
- Make sure that you have enough free disk space available on the drive where you want to install the application.
- Delete the contents of the system's TEMP folders to avoid file and memory conflicts. To navigate to the Temp folders, type %temp% in the **Search** box on the Windows 7 Start menu or the Windows 8 desktop.
- Install CorelDRAW® Graphics Suite X7 in its own directory to avoid conflicts with previous versions.

## Installing CorelDRAW Graphics Suite applications

The installation wizard makes it easy to install CorelDRAW Graphics Suite applications and components. You can choose a typical installation to quickly install the suite, or you can customize the installation by choosing different options.

### To install CorelDRAW Graphics Suite applications

- 1 Close all applications, including all virus detection programs.
- 2 Insert the DVD in the DVD drive.  
(Windows 7 and Windows 8) If the installation wizard does not start automatically, browse to the root of the DVD, you must locate **setup.exe** on the DVD, and double-click the file. Be sure to navigate to the folder that corresponds to the version of your operating system: 64-Bit or 32-Bit.
- 3 Scroll down to read the license agreement, and then click **I accept**.
- 4 Click **Next**.
- 5 Type your name in the **User name** text box.
- 6 Type your serial number in the **Serial number** text box.  
The serial number is not case-sensitive, and the dashes are optional.
- 7 Click **Next**.
- 8 Follow the instructions for installing the software.

## Installation options

You can choose between two types of installations:

- **Typical installation** — automatically installs the main programs and utilities of the suite to a default location in the Program Files folder. If later you need a component that is not installed, you can modify your installation.
- **Custom installation** — lets you choose additional features, exclude components that you don't need, and specify where to install the suite. For example, you can install desktop shortcuts or install Ghostscript for better handling of imported EPS and PDF files.

### Programs

The following table lists the programs that are installed by default. To exclude a program from the installation, you must choose Custom installation.

Program	Description
CorelDRAW®	An intuitive and versatile graphics application for creating high-quality vector illustrations, logo designs, and page layouts
Corel® PHOTO-PAINT™	A complete image-editing application that lets you retouch and enhance photos as well as create original bitmap illustrations and paintings
Corel® CONNECT™	An application that provides easy access to content such as clipart, photos, and fonts
Corel® CAPTURE™	An easy-to-use application for capturing images from your computer screen

## Program

Bitstream Font Navigator

## Description

An application for browsing, organizing, and managing fonts

## Program features and utilities

The following table lists the program features that you can install. Not all components are available in all versions of the software.

Feature or utility	Description	Notes
Writing Tools	Include Spell Checker, Thesaurus, and Grammatik in various languages to help you proofread and edit documents	Writing tools in the language of the operating system are required and installed by default. For example, the English writing tools are installed by default on an English operating system.  To install additional languages, you must choose Custom installation, or modify your installation later.
Duplexing Wizard	Lets you configure a printer for two-sided printing	Requires Custom installation
Microsoft Visual Basic for Applications 7.1	A subset of the Microsoft Visual Basic (VB) programming environment, which is suitable for beginners.	You can use VBA to create basic macros for personal use, but you can also use it to create more advanced macro projects.
Microsoft Visual Studio Tools for Applications (VSTA)	A built-in program environment that allows developers and other programming experts to use VSTA for creating the most advanced macro projects	To use VSTA with CorelDRAW Graphics Suite, you must have your own copy of Microsoft Visual Studio 2012 or later installed.  If you install Microsoft Visual Studio after installing CorelDRAW Graphics Suite, you must re-install the VSTA feature by modifying your CorelDRAW Graphics Suite installation. For more information, see <a href="#">“To modify or repair a CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 installation” on page 6</a> .
Windows Shell Extension	Lets you view thumbnails of native Corel files such as CorelDRAW (CDR), Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT), and pattern fill (FILL) files.	If you have a previous version of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite installed, this option does not appear in the installation wizard.
GPL Ghostscript	Highly recommended if you import EPS and PDF files in your documents. This feature lets you isolate and use individual elements of imported EPS files rather than only header images. It also improves the import of PDF files generated by third-party applications.	Requires Custom installation

## Additional options

The following table lists additional installation options.

Option	Description	Notes
Language packs	Let you use the programs and Help in two or more languages	This option is included only with multilingual versions of the software and requires Custom installation.
Allow product updates	Automatically downloads product updates and asks you before installing them	Included with the Typical installation
Install desktop shortcuts	Adds product icons to your desktop for easy access	Included with the Typical installation for trial versions of the product, this option requires Custom installation for all other versions.
Copy installation files	Lets you maintain and update the software without using the installation disc	Included with the Typical installation

## Modifying and repairing installations

You can also use the installation wizard to do the following:

- modify the current installation by adding or deleting components
- repair the current installation by fixing errors such as missing or corrupt files as well as inaccurate shortcuts and registry entries

### To modify or repair a CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 installation

- 1 Close all applications.
- 2 On the Windows Control Panel, click **Uninstall a program**.
- 3 Double-click **CorelDRAW Graphics Suite** on the **Uninstall or change a program** page.
- 4 Enable the **Modify** option or the **Repair** option in the wizard that appears, and follow the instructions.



Components that are already installed do not appear in the wizard, or their check boxes appear disabled.

Certain features, such as **Copy installation files** and **Install desktop shortcuts**, cannot be added by modifying your installation.

## Uninstalling CorelDRAW Graphics Suite

You can uninstall CorelDRAW Graphics Suite from the Control Panel.

### To uninstall CorelDRAW Graphics Suite

- 1 On the Windows Control Panel, click **Uninstall a program**.
- 2 Double-click **CorelDRAW Graphics Suite** on the **Uninstall or change a program** page.
- 3 Enable the **Remove** option in the wizard that appears, and follow the instructions.  
To completely uninstall the product by removing user files, such as presets, user-created fills, and customized files, enable the **Remove user files** check box.



Any additional components and applications that you installed with the suite, such as the CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 - Windows Shell Extension or Microsoft Visual Studio Tools for Applications (VSTA), must be uninstalled separately.

## Frequently Asked Questions

If your question is not included in the list below, visit [Corel® Support Services](#), and search the [Corel® Knowledge Base](#).

- “I am upgrading my version of the software. Do I need to uninstall the previous version?” (page 7)
- “What is the difference between an upgrade and an update?” (page 7)
- “What if I lost my serial number and need to reinstall the software?” (page 7)
- “What is the difference between Typical and Custom installation? Which type of installation is suitable for me?” (page 7)
- “How do I deploy CorelDRAW Graphics Suite to my organization’s network?” (page 7)

I am upgrading my version of the software. Do I need to uninstall the previous version?

No, you don’t need to uninstall the previous version. By default, the new version is installed to a separate folder, which ensures that you can work with both versions. Do not change the installation folder to install the upgrade and the previous version to the same folder.

What is the difference between an upgrade and an update?

An upgrade lets you install the latest major version of the software. After a major version is released, updates usually follow to offer defect fixes, performance and stability improvements as well as new features for premium members. Updates have the name of the major version with a number appended — for example, .1. By default, the application notifies you when a product update is available, but you can also check for updates by clicking **Help ► Updates**.

What if I lost my serial number and need to reinstall the software?

For download versions, check the email you received from Corel when you purchased the product.

If you are a standard or a premium member, check your **My accounts** page on corel.com.

If you purchased a box, check the cover of the installation disk.

What is the difference between Typical and Custom installation? Which type of installation is suitable for me?

See “Installation options” on page 4.

How do I deploy CorelDRAW Graphics Suite to my organization’s network?

If you purchased multiple licenses of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite, you have the option of deploying the applications to your organization’s network. The *CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 Deployment Guide* provides more information about network installations. To purchase a volume license of the software and obtain its deployment guide, please contact Corel Support Services.





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Corel memberships and services

This section contains the following topics:

- “CorelDRAW memberships” (page 9)
- “Using your account” (page 10)
- “Updating Corel products” (page 10)
- “Corel Support Services” (page 10)
- “About Corel” (page 11)

### CorelDRAW memberships

CorelDRAW memberships provide cloud-based access to product updates, digital content, new product features, and online services. Two membership options are available: Standard and Premium.

#### CorelDRAW Standard Membership

Included with your product purchase, this free membership provides access to:

- performance and stability updates
- online library of content such as clipart, photos, templates, and pattern fills
- extensive online selection of fonts

#### CorelDRAW Premium Membership

This paid membership lets you enrich your product experience with:

- exclusive online content such as clipart, photos, and pattern fills
- exclusive online selection of professional fonts
- early access to new features and services as they become available
- upgrades to the latest versions of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite

#### Signing up and signing in

To sign up for a membership and take full advantage of its benefits, you must have a corel.com account and sign in. The **Sign in/Sign out** button shows your sign-in and membership status.

## Button state



## Indicates that...

You have not signed in.



You have signed in as a standard member.



You have signed in as a premium member.

## Using your account

You can check your account settings from within CorelDRAW and Corel PHOTO-PAINT at any time, and you can download any utilities or applications provided with your membership from your Accounts page.

### To become a member

- 1 Click **Help** ► **About CorelDRAW memberships**.
- 2 Follow the instructions.

If you don't have a corel.com account, you must create one first.

### To sign in

- Click **Help** ► **Sign in**.

### To check your corel.com account

- In CorelDRAW or Corel PHOTO-PAINT, click **Help** ► **Account settings**.

## Updating Corel products

During product installation, you can choose the option to download product updates and service packs. After installing the product, you can view information about product updates by clicking **Help** ► **Updates**.

By default, you are automatically notified when product updates and news become available. In addition, with the default installation, the application automatically downloads new product updates and asks you for permission to install them. However, you can change the update settings at any time.

### To change the update settings

- 1 Click **Help** ► **Welcome screen**.
- 2 Click **Settings** at the top of the **Updates** page.
- 3 In the **Update settings** window, enable or disable either of the following check boxes:
  - **Notify me of available product updates, news, and tutorials.**
  - **Automatically download product updates and ask me before installing.**

## Corel Support Services

Corel Support Services can provide you with prompt and accurate information about product features, specifications, pricing, availability, services, and technical support. For the most current information on support services available for your Corel product, please visit [www.corel.com/support](http://www.corel.com/support).

## About Corel

Corel is one of the world's top software companies providing some of the industry's best-known graphics, productivity and digital media products. Boasting the most comprehensive portfolio of innovative software, we've built a reputation for delivering solutions that are easy to learn and use, helping people achieve new levels of creativity and productivity. The industry has responded with hundreds of awards for innovation, design and value.

Used by millions of people around the world, our product lines include CorelDRAW Graphics Suite, Corel® Painter®, Corel® PaintShop® Pro, Corel® VideoStudio® and Corel® WordPerfect® Office. For more information on Corel, please visit [www.corel.com](http://www.corel.com).





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## What's new in CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7?

The new and enhanced features of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 are described in the following topics:

- [“Get up and running easily”](#) (page 13)
- [“Work faster and more efficiently”](#) (page 16)
- [“Design with creativity and confidence”](#) (page 20)
- [“Share and expand your experience”](#) (page 24)

For information about features and tools that were introduced or improved in earlier versions of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite, see [“Finding out what was new in previous versions”](#) on page 25.

### Get up and running easily

From a redesigned Welcome screen and workspaces that suit your needs to a wealth of content such as clipart and photos, CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 helps you to get started and become productive quickly.

#### New! Welcome Screen navigation

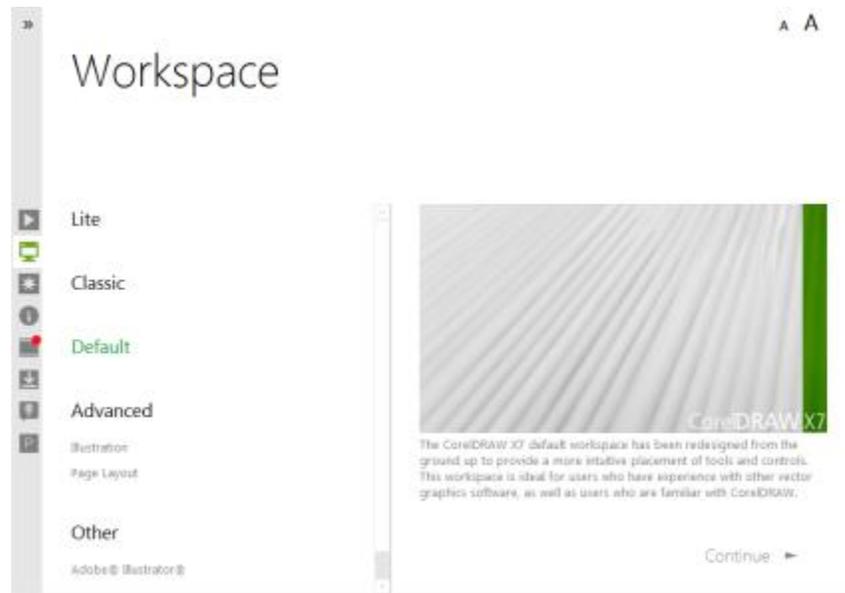
The Welcome Screen has been completely redesigned, making it easier to navigate and discover the abundance of available resources, including Workspace selection, What's New, a Gallery of inspiring user creations, application updates, Tips and Tricks, video tutorials, CorelDRAW.com, as well as Membership and Subscription information.

#### New! Workspace selection

The revamped Welcome Screen now includes a Workspace tab, which lets you choose from a variety of workspaces that were designed for different proficiency levels and specific tasks.

#### New! Workspaces

A variety of tailor-made, workflow-specific workspaces have been introduced to help new users get accustomed to the suite faster and easier. We've worked with professional industry experts who use the suite routinely to arrange tools and features for specific tasks, such as page layout and illustration. For more information, see [“Choosing a workspace”](#) on page 38.



*You can choose from a variety of workspaces.*

### **New! Lite workspaces**

Designed to help new users get acclimated to the suite more quickly, new Lite workspaces for both CoreDRAW X7 and Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7 provide exploration-friendly, scaled-down options in the toolboxes and property bars. The Lite workspaces were designed to make each application's most commonly used tools more readily accessible and easier to find.

### **New! Default workspaces and Classic**

The new default workspaces for CoreDRAW X7 and Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7 have been refashioned to offer a more intuitive and efficient configuration of tools, menus, status bar, property bars, and dialog boxes. Plus, the classic workspaces are still included for longtime users who may prefer the suite's legacy appearance.

### **New! Advanced workspaces**

With CoreDRAW X7, the new Page Layout and Illustration workspaces have been designed in consultation with industry professionals to better expose specific application functionality. For example, the Illustration workspace provides a toolbox loaded with drawing tools and a readily accessible Color Styles docker.

### **New! Simple customization**

The toolbox, dockers, and property bars contain handy new **Quick customize** buttons which will help you tailor the interface to suit your workflow. Available in both CoreDRAW X7 and Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7, these buttons offer a faster and more convenient way to add dockers to your workspace, add or remove tools from the toolbox, and add or remove items from a property bar.

For more information, see ["Customizing the toolbox"](#) on page 466 and ["To add or remove a toolbar item on the property bar"](#) on page 467.

### **New! Font embedding**

You can now embed fonts when you save CoreDRAW documents so that shared recipients can view, print, and edit the document exactly as designed. This is especially useful when sending a CoreDRAW file to a print shop, ensuring that the document can be viewed and printed accurately.

CoreDRAW X7 respects any restrictions encoded with each font, so a font must support embedding to be saved with the document. While some fonts cannot be embedded, most will support embedding for either print and preview, or for editing.

### New! Lens corrections

The new **Correct lens distortion** slider in the **Straighten image** dialog box helps you preview and adjust your image to quickly and easily remove pincushion and barrel distortions. Pincushion distortions make photos appear pinched in from the center, while barrel distortions make photos appear pushed out from the center. By dragging the slider to the right, you can reduce pincushion distortions; conversely, dragging the slider to the left will reduce barrel distortions. There's also a customizable grid for the preview window that you can use to help realign the distortion.

For more information, see ["Correcting camera lens distortions"](#) on page 115.

### New! Multi-Seat license

You can now purchase a single serial number for use by several registered users, which includes access to Corel membership benefits such as online content and application updates.

### New! Overflow buttons

For tablet and mobile device users, new overflow buttons have been added to the toolbox, property bar, dockers, and color palettes to indicate the presence of additional controls that do not fit within the workspace. You simply click an overflow button to instantly access the hidden tools or controls.

### New & Enhanced! Content

CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 includes a wealth of project-ready content that you can use to enhance your artwork. The suite's content library includes:

- more than 13,000 high-quality clipart images
- 2,000 photos
- more than 600 professionally designed templates
- more than 1,200 objects
- 75 interactive text frames
- 75 interactive PowerClip™ frames
- more than 100 image lists
- more than 400 Artistic Media
- 75 content-ready photo frames
- more than 1000 fonts
- more than 400 pattern fills



*You can access a wealth of content.*

## Work faster and more efficiently

Become more efficient and productive by taking advantage of a wide array of new and enhanced features — from fills, transparencies, brush selection, and text enhancements to improved multiple document and automation workflows.

### New & Enhanced! Fountain fills

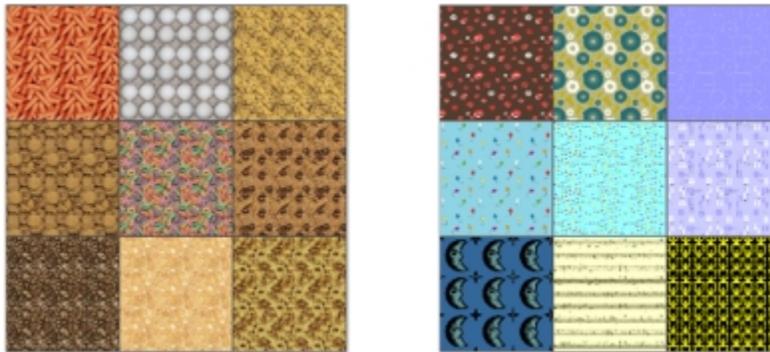
You can now create elliptical and rectangular fountain fills, apply transparency to individual fill color nodes, repeat a fill within a filled object, adjust a fill's angle of rotation, and smooth the blend transition of a fountain fill.

With CorelDRAW X7, you can apply and adjust fountain fills more quickly, accurately, and creatively by using the new interactive controls in the **Object properties** docker. In Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7, the enhanced **Edit fill** dialog box provides quick access to all available controls for adjusting fountain fills.

For more information, see [“Applying fountain fills” on page 202](#).

### New & Enhanced! Vector and bitmap pattern fills

With CorelDRAW X7, you can efficiently preview, apply, and interactively transform both vector pattern and bitmap pattern fills by using the enhanced controls in the **Object properties** docker. You can also save personally created or modified fills, and the new FILL format is supported by Patterns™, a new iOS app that makes it easy to create bitmap patterns from photos.



*Examples of pattern fills*

### New! Edit Fill dialog box

In both CorelDRAW X7 and Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7, the new **Edit fill** dialog box gives you more efficient access to all available controls for uniform, fountain, vector pattern, bitmap pattern, two-color pattern, texture, and PostScript fills. With CorelDRAW X7, the **Edit fill** dialog box also provides a real-time preview as you make adjustments.

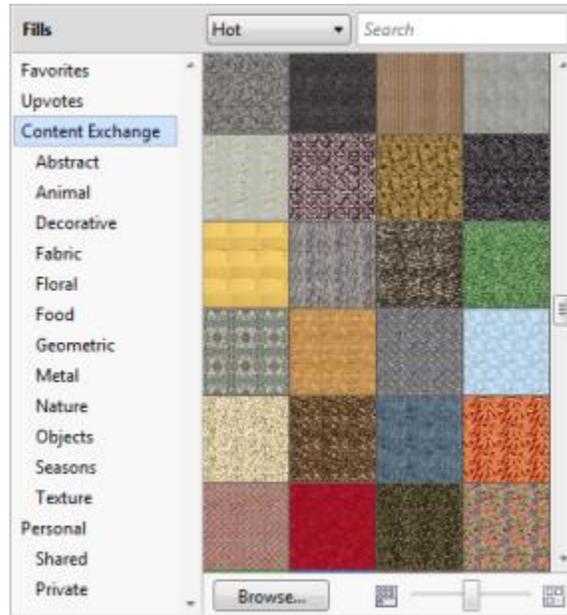
### New & Enhanced! Custom fills

Both CorelDRAW X7 and Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7 introduce new options that make it easy to save and share your custom fills. With CorelDRAW, the **Save as new** button appears in the **Object properties** docker and the **Edit fill** dialog box. The button also appears in the **Edit fill** dialog box in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. Plus, the new FILL format preserves and exposes all fill settings, making it quick and simple to modify both saved fills and fills downloaded from the Content Exchange.

For more information, see [“Saving and sharing fills and transparencies” on page 219](#).

### New! Fill picker

With both CorelDRAW X7 and Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7, a new **Fill** picker makes searching, previewing, and selecting fills quick and easy. The **Fill** picker also provides access to both locally stored fills and those available in the Content Exchange.



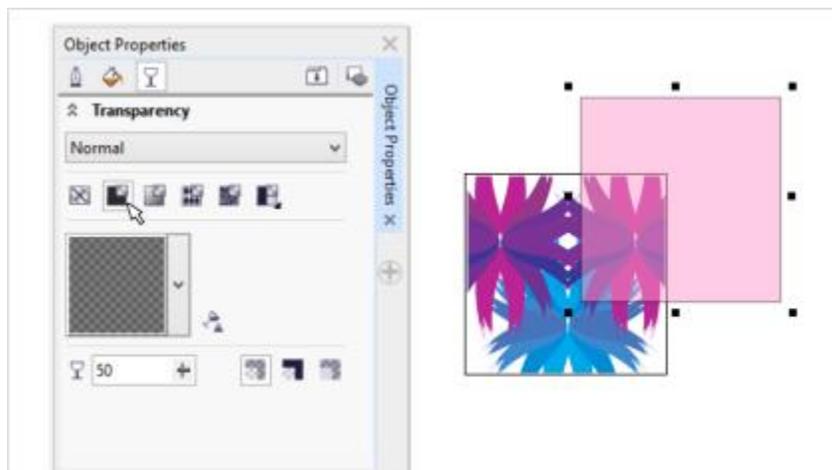
*The new Fill picker makes searching, previewing, and selecting fills quick and easy.*

### New! Fill creation

In CoreDRAW X7, you can now instantly create new bitmap pattern and vector pattern fills from selected objects in your workspace. When you click the **New from document** button in the **Object properties** docker, the cursor changes to the **Crop** tool so that you can define an area of your workspace to use as a pattern.

### Enhanced! Transparency

Transparency settings have been added to the **Object properties** docker in CoreDRAW X7, making it faster and easier to apply and adjust object transparency. New options help you to quickly specify whether transparency is applied to an object's outline, fill, or both. Plus, you can instantly save transparency settings as a style to enable effortless reuse of your favorite effects. For more information, see ["Working with transparency"](#) on page 209.



*It is faster and easier to apply and adjust object transparency.*

### New! Outline Position

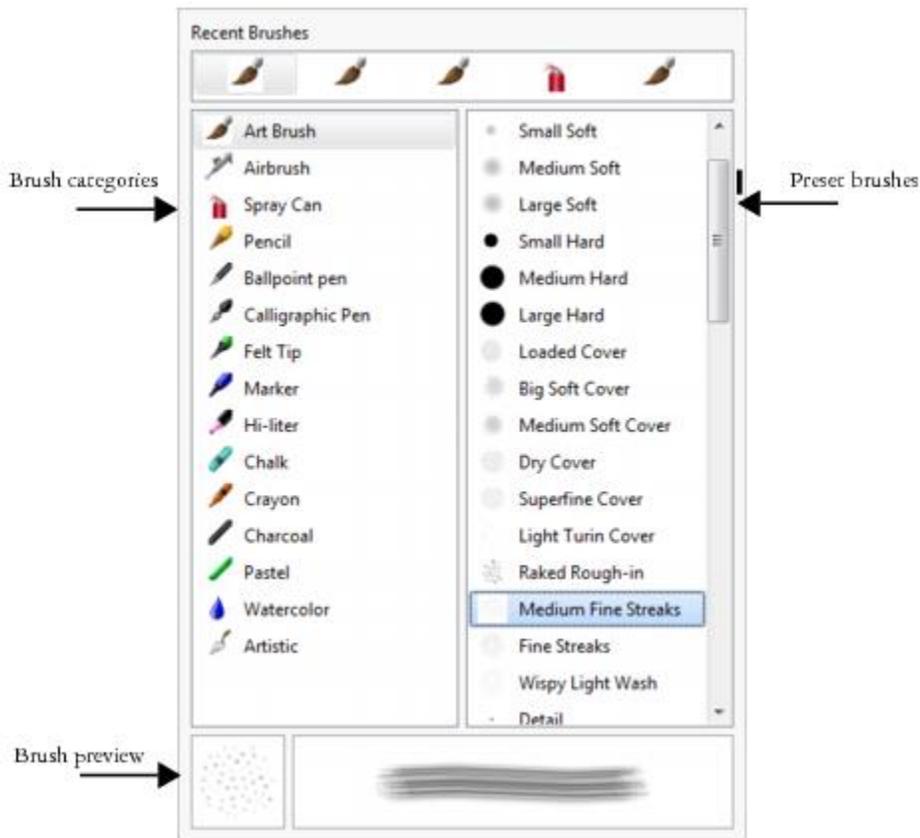
With CorelDRAW X7, the new Outline Position options help you create objects with more precise sizes. The **Outside outline**, **Centered outline**, and **Inside outline** buttons let you specify whether an outline is positioned inside the object, outside the object, or an equal combination of both. By positioning an outline inside an object, you can more easily create layouts with specific sizes because the outline will be rendered within the object's original measurements.

### Enhanced! Object Properties docker

With CorelDRAW X7, the redesigned **Object properties** docker has a new tab option that can help new users gain efficiency by reducing congestion. The Scroll/Tab mode button sets the docker to present only one group of formatting controls at a time, making it easier to focus on the task at hand.

### New! Brush picker

With Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7, the new **Brush** picker helps you find the brush you're seeking by combining all brush categories and brush types in one location. Available for the **Paint**, **Effect**, and **Clone** tools, the new **Brush** picker provides nib and brush stroke previews as you hover over each preset. It also stores the settings for the last five brushes you've used, which makes it easier to reuse a favorite combination.



*The new Brush picker helps you find and choose brushes.*

### New! Microsoft Visual Studio Tools for Applications 2012

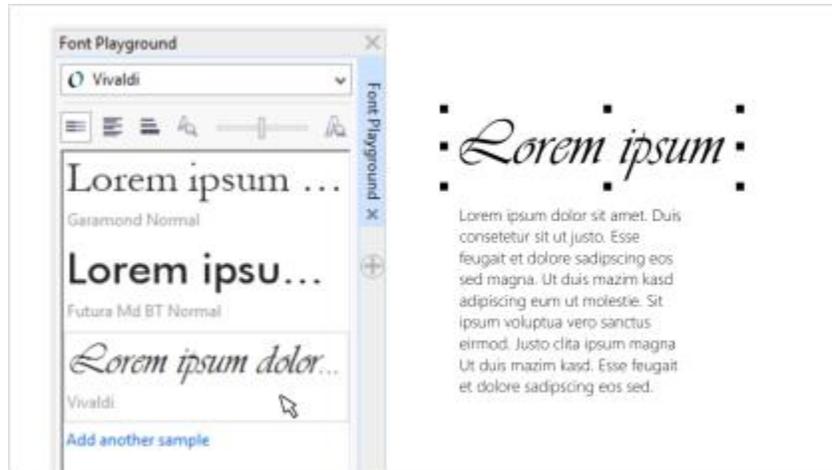
The inclusion of Microsoft Visual Studio Tools for Applications 2012 provides access to the latest development tools, making it easy for developers to create VSTA automations for all applications in the suite.

### New! Font Playground

In CorelDRAW X7 and Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7, the new Font Playground docker introduces an easier way to browse, experiment with, and choose the perfect font. You can easily add sample text to view its appearance in different fonts, and a handy Zoom slider lets you quickly

adjust the size of sample text. With a single click, you can also choose whether the sample text appears as a single line, multiple lines, or a cascading series of increased sizes.

The Font Playground also provides access to advanced features within OpenType fonts. If a text sample uses an OpenType font, you simply select the text to display the Interactive OpenType arrow and then choose which features to apply. For more information, see [“Choosing fonts with Font Playground”](#) on page 358.



*Font Playground lets you experiment with and preview fonts easily so that you can choose the perfect font for your project.*

### Enhanced! Special characters, symbols, and glyphs

The revamped **Insert character** docker presents all characters, symbols, and glyphs associated with a selected font, making it easier than ever to find these items and then insert them into your documents. Available in both CorelDRAW X7 and Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7, the docker includes a filtering option that lets you display only the character subsets that you want. For example, you can choose to display only the Cyrillic characters and symbols for a selected font. For more information, see [“Inserting special characters, symbols, and glyphs”](#) on page 351.

### New! Object Styles previews

A new pop-up now appears when you hover over a style in the **Object styles** docker, offering a quick preview of the style before it's applied.

### New! Welcome Screen - content notification

The redesigned Welcome Screen now provides update notifications directly in the navigation pane, so that you will be immediately informed of any available new content. This makes it easier to stay current with CorelDRAW Graphics Suite application updates, content, learning resources, and more.

### New! Welcome Screen docking

You can now keep the Welcome Screen open as a docked tab in the workspace or as a separate floating window, providing constant access to its wealth of versatile resources.

### New! Multiple document interface

You can now work with multiple documents in a tabbed view, which helps you stay organized and quickly switch between several active documents. For more information, see [“Working with multiple images”](#) on page 59.

### New! Undocking documents

When working with multiple documents, you can now drag a document outside of the application window to undock it, which is especially useful for dual-monitor workflows.

## New! Support for high-resolution monitors

The suite's applications have been optimized for high DPI resolutions, ensuring that user interface elements appear crisp and legible when displayed on high-resolution monitors.

## Design with creativity and confidence

New and enhanced features such as Liquid tools, special effects, alignment and dynamic guides, and QR codes help you design with creativity and confidence.

### New! Liquid tools

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7, four new, pressure-sensitive Liquid tools — **Smear**, **Attract**, **Repel**, and **Twirl** — offer fresh creative options for retouching photos. You can use these tools to reshape specific image areas to produce unique artistic effects. Each tool responds to the pressure of your digital pen or stylus, and provides options that help you control the intensity of the effect.

With the **Liquid smear** tool, you can push pixels around an image area to produce distortion effects. You can set the size of the brush nib, specify the amount of the effect to apply, and choose between a rounded or pointy smear. The **Liquid twirl** tool produces twirl effects from image areas. You can set the size of the brush nib, the speed of the twirl effect, and the direction of the twirl from the center of the brush. The **Liquid attract** and **Liquid repel** tools pull pixels toward or push pixels away from an image area. You can set the size of the brush nib and the speed at which the pixels move.

For more information, see [“Reshaping image areas by pulling or pushing away pixels”](#) on page 155.



*With the new Liquid tools, you can retouch photos and create unique artistic effects.*

### New! Align and Distribute docker

The new **Align and distribute** docker provides quick and easy access to all available alignment options so that you can position objects with precision. Docking the alignment options keeps the drawing window uncluttered, so you can instantly view the effects of any align and distribute modifications. There are also new options that you can use to align and distribute objects from the edge of their outlines. Plus, you can align objects with a reference point by specifying its exact x and y coordinates. For more information, see [“Aligning and distributing objects”](#) on page 318.

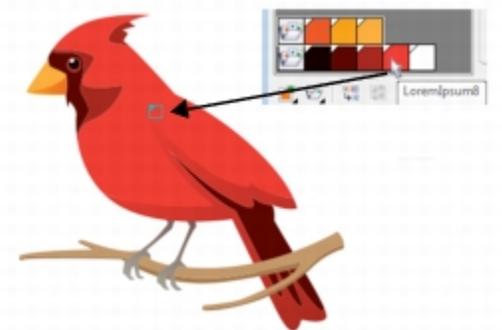
### New! Finding complementary colors

With new harmony rules, you can snap all colors in a color harmony to a rule-based system, which lets you modify those colors while preserving the color harmony. You can also use harmony rules to create a new color harmony from scratch. There are six harmony rules that produce five-color harmonies based on a selected color swatch.

## Enhanced! Color Styles docker

The enhanced **Color styles** docker makes it easier to view, arrange, and edit color styles and color harmonies. You can now specify the brightness value for a color, and constrain the Harmony Editor's selector ring which preserves saturation and hue while you adjust the color.

The **Color styles** docker now offers convenient view options, including **Hint** view which provides a visual indication of all document objects that use a specific color style, and **Page sorter**, which displays thumbnails of all pages in a document and previews changes as you adjust colors. You can also click **View ▶ Page sorter** to access thumbnails of all pages in a document, with live previews of changes you make to the document's color styles.



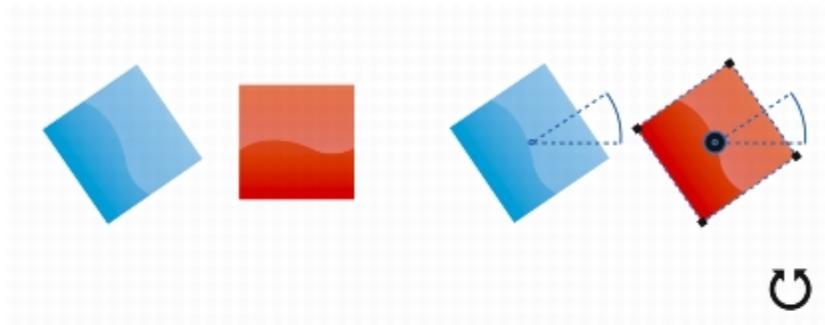
*Hint view helps you identify objects that use specific color styles.*

## New! OpenType support for Asian text

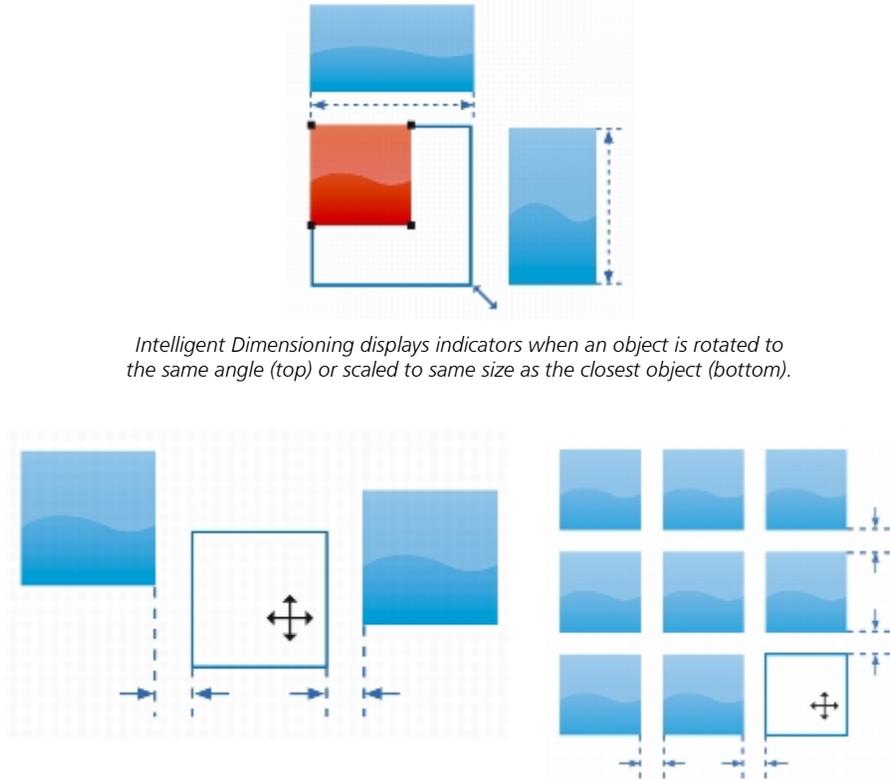
While working with Asian text, you can now use advanced OpenType typography features, such as widths, forms, vertical metrics, kana glyph alternatives, and vertical alternates and rotation. For more information, see ["OpenType support for Asian text" on page 363](#).

## New! Alignment and Dynamic Guides docker

You can use the new **Alignment and Dynamic Guides** docker to access and modify the configuration of these guides more quickly. With alignment guides, the new Intelligent Spacing guides make it easier to precisely position objects with the same spacing as nearby objects. Plus, the new Intelligent Dimensioning guides help you scale or rotate an object in relation to the dimensions or rotation angle of nearby objects.



*Intelligent Dimensioning displays indicators when an object is rotated to the same angle (top) or scaled to same size as the closest object (bottom).*



*Intelligent Spacing displays indicators when an object is equidistant between two other objects (left) or has the same spacing as the closest onscreen objects (right).*

### New! Guidelines docker

With the new **Guidelines** docker in both CorelDRAW X7 and Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7, it's never been easier to add, manage, and modify guidelines. You can position guidelines with precision by using x and y coordinates, alter the line style and color, set objects and editable areas to snap to guidelines, and lock guidelines to avoid accidental changes. Plus, you can set up angled guidelines and specify their angle of rotation. For more information, see ["Setting up guidelines" on page 67](#).

### New! Alignment Guides

The new alignment guides in Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7 help you position objects more quickly, appearing on the fly with suggested alignments to other nearby objects. You can use the new **Alignment guides** docker to view, set up, and modify alignment guides. And with new margin alignment guides, you can now specify inset and offset values when aligning an object relative to another object. For more information, see ["Using alignment guides" on page 320](#).

## New! QR codes

With CorelDRAW X7, you can now create unique, artistic, and scalable QR codes by adding text, colors, and images. Popular in consumer advertising and packaging, QR codes give smartphone users quick access to a brand's website which can offer additional product information. The **Object properties** docker makes it easy to customize a QR code, and you can create a style that saves a fixed appearance for the QR code to enable quick and easy reuse.

You can change the shape, outline width, color, and fill type of the QR code pixels, change the background color and fill type, and more. You can also choose which information to include in the QR code, such as URL, email address, phone number, SMS, Contact, Calendar event, and Geo location. There's also a Validate option, which analyzes the QR code to ensure it can be read by QR code readers, smartphones, and scanners.

## New! Smoothing objects

CorelDRAW X7 provides a new **Smooth** tool that you can use to remove jagged edges and reduce nodes in curve objects. You can control the smoothing effect by varying the size of the brush nib, the speed at which the effect is applied, and by using the pressure of your digital pen or stylus.

## New! Special effects

Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7 introduces new camera effects, such as Bokeh blur, Colorize, Sepia Toning, and Time Machine to help you recreate historic photographic styles and give your images unique visual appearances.

With the Bokeh blur effect, you can define an area of focus and leave the rest of the image out of focus. You can create a duotone image by using the Colorize effect to replace all colors in an image with a single hue. The Sepia Toning effect simulates a photo taken with sepia film, which is similar to grayscale except with brown tones. And with the Time Machine, you can choose from seven historic photography styles ranging from 1839 to the 1960s. For more information, see ["Applying the Bokeh Blur effect"](#) on page 293 and ["Camera special effects"](#) on page 288.



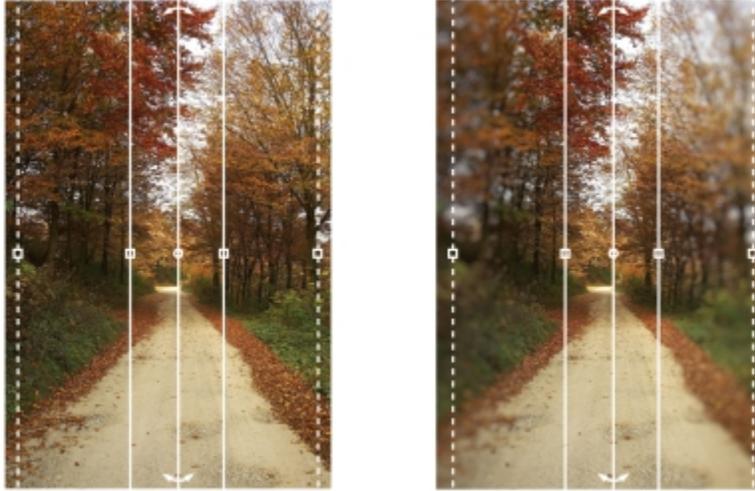
*Examples of special effects. From left to right: Original image, Sepia Toning, Time Machine, Colorize.*

## New! Unsharp Mask Lens

With Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7, the new Unsharp Mask Lens helps you sharpen photos without having to apply the effect directly to an object. This lens increases the contrast of adjacent pixels while preserving both high- and low-frequency details, like edges and large structures. You can have the lens cover the entire image, or you can create a lens from an editable area that you define. Plus, you can easily edit the lens by adding or removing areas, and by adjusting the lens transparency. For more information about lenses, see ["Creating lenses"](#) on page 147.

## New! Planar Mask tool

You can use the new **Planar mask** tool in Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7 to define a feathered editable area along parallel lines. When combined with a blur effect, you can simulate depth of field, giving focus to a particular object while blurring areas outside the planar mask. You can modify the effect of the planar mask by moving or rotating the lines, and you can also use mask modes with the **Planar mask** tool. For more information, see ["To define an editable area by using the Planar Mask tool"](#) on page 227.



*Example of a planar mask in combination with a blur effect*

### **New! Interactive brushstroke transparency and feathering**

With Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7, you can now use modifier keys to interactively adjust the transparency and feathering of brushstrokes. This lets you apply transparency and feathering on the fly, and works with the **Eraser**, **Red-eye removal**, **Clone**, **Touch-up brush**, **Paint**, **Effect**, **Image sprayer**, **Undo brush**, and **Replace color brush** tools.

## **Share and expand your experience**

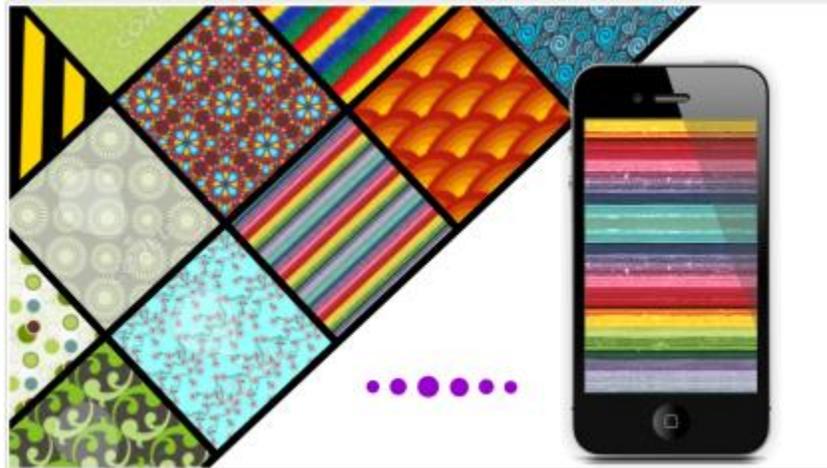
Access and share assets, and learn from a community of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite users.

### **New! Content Exchange**

The new Content Exchange is an online repository that integrates with Corel CONNECT and the suite's applications, making it quick and effortless to access and share vector fills, bitmap fills, and fountain fills with a community of other users. For more information, see ["Using the Content Exchange"](#) on page 88.

### **New! Sharing fountain and pattern fills**

You can now save personal fountain, vector pattern, and bitmap pattern fills and share them in the new Content Exchange, an online repository of community content that can be downloaded and is accessible to anyone with a corel.com account. You can also instantly share personally created or modified bitmap pattern fills to the new Patterns iOS app. For more information, see ["Saving and sharing fills and transparencies"](#) on page 219.



*You can share your custom pattern fills in the new Content Exchange.*

### **New! Content Exchange - Vote up and Vote down**

A pop-up appears when you click an asset in the Content Exchange, which gives you the opportunity to vote up or vote down the asset. You can sort assets in the Content Exchange based on the results of user voting.

### **New! Content Exchange - Favorites**

You can instantly set any asset that catches your eye in the Content Exchange as a favorite, which is a quick and convenient way to keep a list of content that you might want to download later.

### **New! Syncing trays with Microsoft OneDrive**

You can now sync Corel CONNECT trays with Microsoft OneDrive, which provides cloud-based access to your tray contents on other computers or mobile devices.

## **Finding out what was new in previous versions**

You can easily identify what features have been improved or introduced since the last version of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite that you used.

### **To find out what was new in previous versions of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite**

- Click **Help** ► **Highlight what's new**, and click one of the following commands:
  - **Since version X6**— highlights menu commands and tools for features introduced or improved in version X7
  - **Since version X5** — highlights menu commands and tools for features introduced or improved in version X6 and X7
  - **No highlight** — removes highlighting from menu commands and tools in the toolbox





# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Learning resources

You can learn to use the product in various ways: by reading the *Quick Start Guide*; by accessing the Help, Hints, and tooltips, by viewing video tutorials; and by exploring the resources on the Corel website ([www.corel.com](http://www.corel.com)). On the website, you can access tips, additional tutorials, and training and integration resources. You can also check the Readme file ([readme.html](#)), which is installed with the software.

This section contains the following topics:

- [“Getting help”](#) (page 27)
- [“Using the Help and tooltips”](#) (page 28)
- [“Quick Start Guide”](#) (page 29)
- [“Insights from the Experts”](#) (page 29)
- [“Video learning resources”](#) (page 29)
- [“Using Hints”](#) (page 30)
- [“Welcome screen”](#) (page 30)
- [“Tips and Tricks”](#) (page 31)
- [“Macro programming guide”](#) (page 31)
- [“Network deployment guide”](#) (page 31)
- [“Web-based resources”](#) (page 31)
- [“Customized training and integration resources”](#) (page 32)

### Getting help

Various learning resources are available. The following table can help you decide what learning resources to consult when you need assistance. You can access more information about some resources by clicking the corresponding links.

To	See
Start learning the applications	<a href="#">“Video learning resources”</a> (page 29) <a href="#">“Quick Start Guide”</a> (page 29)
Learn about new and enhanced features	<a href="#">“Video learning resources”</a> (page 29)
Obtain additional information about product tools and features	Help <a href="#">“Web-based resources”</a> (page 31) <a href="#">“Using Hints”</a> (page 30)

To	See
Advance your knowledge of the suite by learning from graphics design experts	"Insights from the Experts" (page 29) "Web-based resources" (page 31)
Learn to automate tasks by using macros	"Macro programming guide" (page 31)
Find information about deploying the suite on a network	"Network deployment guide" (page 31)
Find information about customized training and workflow solutions	"Customized training and integration resources" (page 32)
Find specific information about the latest version of the suite	Readme file, which is accessible from the installation wizard

## Using the Help and tooltips

The Help provides comprehensive information about product features from within the application. If you are connected to the Internet, the application displays the web-based Help, which contains the latest updates. If no Internet connection is available, the application displays the local Help, which was copied to your computer during product installation.

You can browse through the entire list of topics, look up tools and topics in the index, or search for specific words. You can also access the [Corel Knowledge Base](#) on the Corel website and other online resources from the Help window.

Tooltips provide helpful information about application controls when you position the pointer over icons, buttons, and other user interface elements.

### Documentation conventions

The following table describes important conventions used in the documentation.

Convention	Description	Examples
Menu ► Menu command	A menu item and menu command that you need to click in sequence	Click <b>File ► Open</b> .
	A note contains important information that is relevant to the preceding steps. It may describe conditions under which the procedure can be performed.	A compound blend cannot be copied or cloned.  If you click the <b>Equal margins</b> button, you must specify values in the <b>Top/left margin</b> boxes.
	A tip contains suggestions for performing the preceding steps. It may present alternatives to the steps, or other benefits or uses of the procedure.	Trimming an object can reduce the drawing file size.  You can change the number of swatches in the color grid by dragging the <b>Size</b> slider.

### To use the Help

- 1 Click **Help ► Product Help**.
- 2 Click one of the following tabs:
  - **Contents** — lets you browse through topics in the Help. To open a topic, click the topic heading in the left pane.
  - **Index** — lets you use the index to find a topic
  - **Search** — lets you search the full text of the Help for a particular word or phrase

### You can also

View context-sensitive Help from within a dialog box Click the **Help** button in the dialog box.

## You can also

Print a specific Help topic

Open a Help topic, click the page that you want to print, and click **Print** at the top of the Help window.



You can also access the Help by pressing F1.

You can also access the Help from the Welcome screen.

## To search the Help

- 1 Click **Help** ► **Product Help**.
- 2 Click the **Search** tab, and type a word or phrase in the search box.  
For example, if you are looking for information about the RGB color mode, you can type “RGB” to display a list of relevant topics. To search for a phrase, type the phrase, and enclose it in quotation marks (for example, type “dynamic guides” or “color mode”).
- 3 Choose a topic from the list that appears.  
If your search results do not include any relevant topics, check whether you spelled the search word or phrase correctly. Note that the English Help uses American spelling (for example, “color,” “favorite,” “center,” and “rasterize”), so searching for British spellings (“colour,” “favourite,” “centre,” and “rasterise”) produces no results.

## Quick Start Guide

The *Quick Start Guide* can help you get started quickly with the suite by introducing you to useful tools and features.

The *Quick Start Guide* is available in PDF format.

### To access the Quick Start Guide

- Click **Help** ► **Quick Start Guide**.

## Insights from the Experts

The *Insights from the Experts* is a series of tutorials by graphic design professionals who use CorelDRAW Graphics Suite in their everyday work. You can access the tutorials as individual PDF files directly from the Help menu.

### To access Insights from the Experts

- Click **Help** ► **Insights from the Experts**.

## Video learning resources

Two types of video learning resources are available: short videos and video tutorials.

The short videos show you how to complete basic tasks such as drawing, shaping, and coloring objects in CorelDRAW, or masking and cropping in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. The videos do not have sound, but they include captions that provide useful tips and help you understand the features that are shown. The length of a short video does not exceed two minutes.

The video tutorials introduce you to the refreshed application interface, and new and enhanced features such as fills and transparencies, Content Exchange, Font Playground, alignment tools, QR codes, photo effects, and more. Whether you are a new or long-time user, you will find useful demos and tips to boost your productivity and expand your experience. The video tutorials include audio and captions.

### To access a short video

- 1 In the **Hints** docker, click the **Videos** tab.

If the **Hints** docker is not open, click **Window ► Dockers ► Hints**.

- 2 Click a video thumbnail.

#### You can also

Pause a video

Click the **Pause** button on the control bar.

Display full screen

Click the **Full screen** button in the lower-right corner of the video window.

Jump to a specific frame in the video

Point to the bottom of the video window, and click the progress bar.

#### To access a video tutorial

- 1 Click **Help ► Video tutorials**.
- 2 Click a title in the **Videos** pane.

## Using Hints

Hints provide information about tools in the toolbox from within the application. When you click a tool, a hint appears, telling you how to use the tool. If you need additional information about a tool, you can access a relevant Help topic by clicking the Help button in the upper-right corner of the Hints docker.

Hints are displayed in the Hints docker on the right side of the application window, but you can hide them when you no longer need them. For information about working with dockers, see [“Dockers” on page 48](#).

#### To use Hints

To

Do the following

Display or hide Hints

Click **Help ► Hints**.

When the **Hints** command is enabled, the **Hints** docker appears and provides information about the active tool in the toolbox.

Display information about a tool

Click the tool, or perform an action with a tool that is already active.

Get additional information about the active tool

Click the **Help** button  in the upper-right corner of the **Hints** docker.

Navigate to previously viewed topics

Click the **Back** and **Forward** buttons at the bottom of the **Hints** docker.

## Welcome screen

The Welcome screen gives you easy access to application resources and lets you quickly complete common tasks, such as opening files and starting files from templates. You can also find out about the new features in CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 and get inspired by graphic designs featured on the Gallery page. In addition, you can access videos and tips, receive the latest product updates, and check your membership or subscription.

The Welcome screen appears when you start CorelDRAW or Corel PHOTO-PAINT. You can also access the Welcome screen after starting the application.

## To access the Welcome screen

- Click **Help** ► **Welcome screen**.  
To view and access the available resources, click the buttons on the left side of the Welcome screen.

## Tips and Tricks

Quick tips highlight useful tools and shortcuts, and give you a starting point for exploring some of the CorelDRAW Graphics Suite features.

### To access Tips and Tricks

- 1 Click **Help** ► **Welcome screen**.  
The Welcome screen appears.
- 2 Click the Need Help? button , and click **Tips & tricks**.

## Macro programming guide

The *CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 Macro Programming Guide* provides a streamlined instructional approach to programming macros for CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7. You can use either Microsoft Visual Basic for Applications (VBA) or Microsoft Visual Studio Tools for Applications (VSTA) to create macros that automate tasks and provide customized solutions for CorelDRAW and Corel PHOTO-PAINT.

### To access the macro programming guide

- On the Windows **Start** menu, click **Start** ► **All Programs** ► **CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7** ► **Documentation** ► **Macro Programming Guide PDF**.

## Network deployment guide

The *CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 Deployment Guide* is a step-by-step resource for deploying CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 to a network. This guide is provided to customers who purchase a volume (“multi-seat”) license of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 for their organization. To purchase a volume license of the software and obtain its deployment guide, please contact [Corel Support Services](#).

## Web-based resources

The following web-based resources can help you get the most out of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite:

- [Corel Knowledge Base](#) — articles written by the Corel Technical Support Services Team in response to questions by CorelDRAW Graphics Suite users
- [CorelDRAW.com community](#) — an online environment to share your experience with the product, ask questions, and receive help and suggestions from other users
- [Tips and tricks on the Corel website](#)— valuable information provided by the Corel Documentation Team to help you take full advantage of product features
- [Tutorials on the Corel website](#)— in-depth tutorials in which CorelDRAW Graphics Suite experts share their knowledge and techniques
- [Third-party resources](#) — print and online resources that provide additional information about CorelDRAW Graphics Suite tools and features, as well as various areas of graphic design

An active Internet connection is required to access web-based resources.

## Customized training and integration resources

Corel Corporation has training partnerships with other firms.

### Corel customized training

Corel Training Specialists can provide you with customized training, tailored to your work environment, to help you get the most out of the Corel software that you've installed. These experts will help you develop a curriculum that is practical and relevant to the needs of your organization. For more information, please visit [www.corel.com/customizedtraining](http://www.corel.com/customizedtraining).

### Corel Training Partners

A Corel Training Partner (CTP) is an independent, officially accredited local organization that provides training and training resources for Corel products. CTPs are located worldwide for your convenience. Please visit [www.corel.com/trainingpartners](http://www.corel.com/trainingpartners) to find a partner near you.

### Corel Technology Partners

Corel Technology Partners are businesses that embed Corel technology in their products, develop plug-in applications for Corel software, or integrate standalone applications into Corel technology solutions. This comprehensive program is designed especially for developers and consultants. It includes the components that are necessary to design, develop, test, and market custom solutions related to Corel products.

For more information about Corel Technology Partners, please email Corel Corporation at [techpartner@corel.com](mailto:techpartner@corel.com).



Corel®  
**PHOTO-PAINT® X7**

## Starting and setting up

This section contains the following topics:

- “Starting and quitting Corel PHOTO-PAINT” (page 33)
- “Changing languages” (page 33)
- “Changing startup settings” (page 34)

### Starting and quitting Corel PHOTO-PAINT

You can start Corel PHOTO-PAINT from the Windows taskbar and end a Corel PHOTO-PAINT session from the application window.

#### To start and quit Corel PHOTO-PAINT

To

Start Corel PHOTO-PAINT

Do the following

Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7) From the Windows taskbar, click **Start ▶ Programs ▶ CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 ▶ Corel PHOTO-PAINT**.
- (Windows 8) Click the Corel PHOTO-PAINT tile on your desktop.

Quit Corel PHOTO-PAINT

Click **File ▶ Exit**.

### Changing languages

If an application has been installed in more than one language, you can change the language of the user interface and Help at any time.

#### To change the language of the user interface and Help

- 1 Click **Tools ▶ Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, click **Global**.
- 3 Choose a language from the **Select the language for the user interface** list box.

If you want to change the language of the user interface and Help when you start the application, enable the **Ask me the next time the software starts** check box.

- 4 Restart the application.

## Changing startup settings

You can specify the startup settings for Corel PHOTO-PAINT, which control how the application appears when it's opened. For example, you can start the application with the Welcome screen open or a new blank document.

### To change startup settings

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **General**.
- 3 In the **Getting Started** area, choose an option from the **On start-up** list box.  
If you want to hide the **Create a new image** dialog box when starting images, disable the **Show new image dialog box** check box.



Corel<sup>®</sup>  
PHOTO-PAINT<sup>®</sup> X7

## Corel PHOTO-PAINT workspace tour

Becoming familiar with the terminology and workspace of Corel PHOTO-PAINT will help you follow the concepts and procedures found in the user guide and in the Help.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Corel PHOTO-PAINT terms” (page 35)
- “Corel PHOTO-PAINT application window” (page 36)
- “Choosing a workspace” (page 38)
- “Toolbars” (page 39)
- “Toolbox” (page 41)
- “Property bar” (page 48)
- “Dockers” (page 48)
- “Color palette” (page 50)
- “Status bar” (page 50)

### Corel PHOTO-PAINT terms

Before you get started in Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you should understand the following terms.

Term	Description
Channel	An 8-bit grayscale image that stores color or mask information for an image
Editable area	An editable area of a mask allows paint and effects to be applied to a selected area of an image
Image	A file you open or create in Corel PHOTO-PAINT
Lens	An object layer that protects part or all of an image when you perform color and tonal corrections
Mask	A mask can be applied to an image during image editing to define protected areas and editable areas
Object	An independent bitmap that is layered above the background image

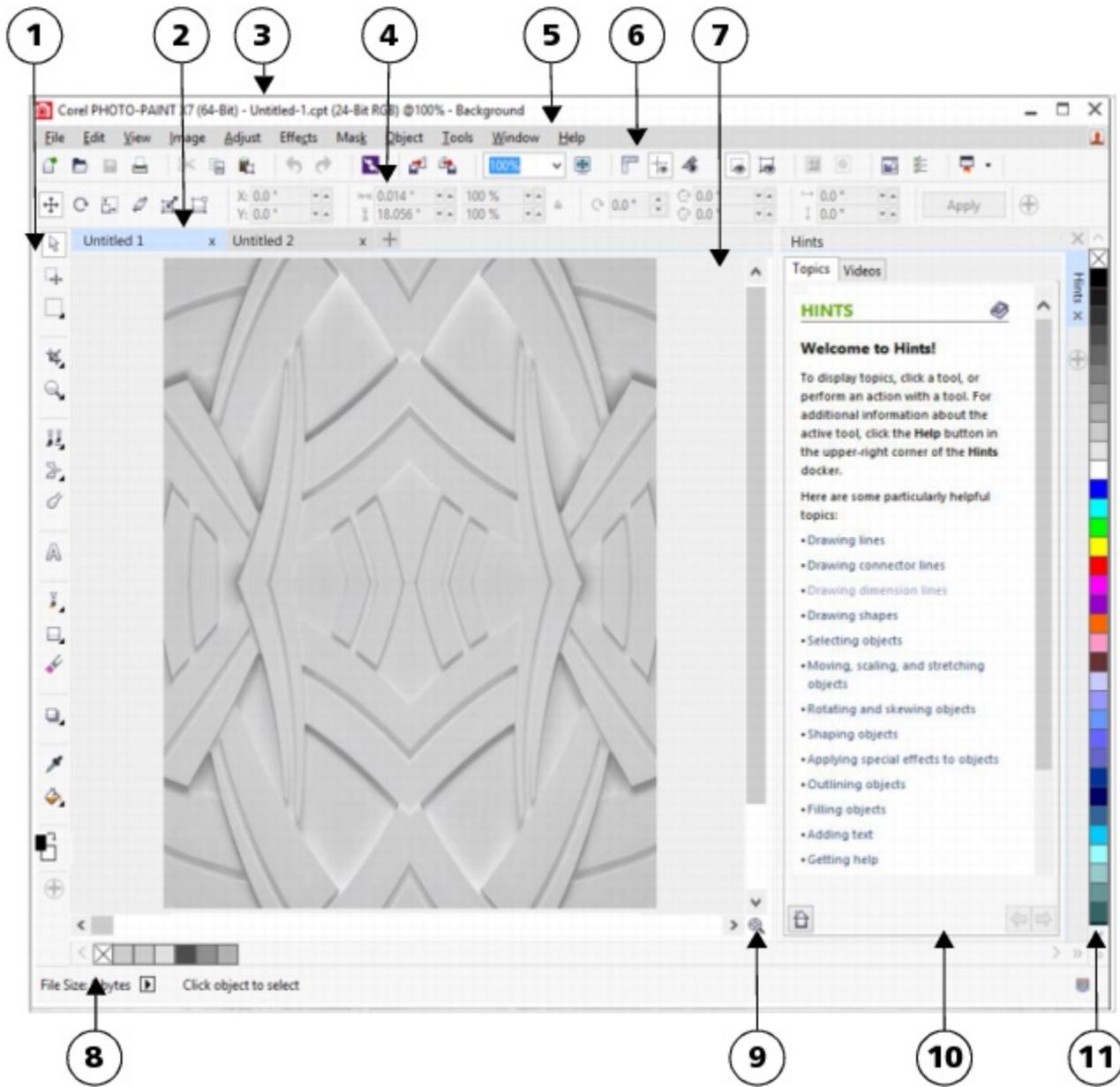
Term	Description
Path	A series of line and curve segments connected by adjustable endpoints called nodes
Thumbnails	A miniature, low-resolution version of an image

For more terms and definitions, see the [“Glossary” on page 487](#).

## Corel PHOTO-PAINT application window

The Corel PHOTO-PAINT application window contains elements that help you access the tools and commands you need to view and edit images. Application commands are accessible through the menu bar, toolbox, property bar, toolbars, or dockers.

The application window appears below.



Circled numbers correspond to the numbers in the following table, which describes the main components of the application window.

Part	Description
1. Toolbox	A bar that contains tools for editing, creating, and viewing images. The toolbox also contains the color control area, which lets you select colors and fills.
2. Document tab	A tab displays for each open document to allow you to quickly move between documents
3. Title bar	The area on the image window displaying the title of the image
4. Property bar	A detachable bar containing commands that change according to the active tool

Part	Description
5. Menu bar	The area containing drop-down menus with commands grouped by category
6. Toolbar (standard)	A bar that contains shortcuts to some menus and other basic commands, such as opening, saving, and printing
7. Image window	The area in which the image appears. Although more than one image window can be open at the same time, you can apply commands to the active image window only.
8. Status bar	An area that displays image information, system information, and tips
9. Navigator	A button that lets you view a thumbnail of the entire image so that you can focus the image window on a specific area. The Navigator is available only when the total image cannot be viewed in the image window.
10. Docker	A window that provides access to additional commands and image information. Some dockers provide a visual display area. The <b>Hints</b> and <b>Object manager</b> dockers are displayed by default.
11. Color palette	A dockable bar that contains color swatches

You can customize many of the elements in the application window to suit your workflow. For information about customizing Corel PHOTO-PAINT, see [“Customizing Corel PHOTO-PAINT” on page 459](#).



To adjust the contrast of the application workspace, click **Tools ► Customization**, and in the **Appearance** area, choose a setting from the **Contrast** list box.

## Choosing a workspace

Corel PHOTO-PAINT includes a collection of workspaces that are designed to help you increase your productivity. A workspace is a configuration of settings that specifies how the various command bars, commands, and buttons are arranged when you open the application. Their purpose is to make more accessible the tools that you use most often. You can choose a workspace from the Welcome Screen that displays when you first launch the application or you can switch to a different workspace from within the application.

The following table describes the available workspaces.

Workspace	Description
Lite	This workspace makes Corel PHOTO-PAINT’s most commonly used tools and features more accessible. If you are new to Corel PHOTO-PAINT, the Lite workspace is ideal for getting started.
Default	This workspace has been redesigned to provide a more intuitive placement of tools and controls. If you have experience using Corel PHOTO-PAINT, or another photo-editing application, the default workspace is a good choice.  Help topics are based on the Default workspace.
Classic	The Classic workspace is almost identical to the default Corel PHOTO-PAINT X6 workspace. It is best suited for experienced Corel PHOTO-PAINT users who are looking for a seamless transition to

## Workspace

### Description

a modern yet familiar environment in Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7. Many elements of the workspace have been optimized for a more streamlined workflow.

Adobe Photoshop

Simulates the Adobe Photoshop workspace by positioning the Corel PHOTO-PAINT features where you would find the equivalent feature in Adobe Photoshop. This workspace is useful if you recently switched from Adobe Photoshop to Corel PHOTO-PAINT and you are not familiar with the Corel PHOTO-PAINT workspace.

If you have a unique workflow, you can create a custom workspace that is optimized for your specific needs. For more information, see “Creating workspaces” on page 459.

### To choose a workspace

- Click **Window** ► **Workspace**, and choose one of the available workspaces.



You can also choose a workspace from the **Welcome Screen** or by clicking **Tools** ► **Customization**, clicking **Workspace** in the list of categories, and then enabling the check box beside a workspace in the **Workspace** list.

## Toolbars

Toolbars consist of buttons that are shortcuts to menu commands. The standard toolbar consists of commonly used commands. The table below outlines the buttons on the standard toolbar.

Press this button



To

Start a new image



Open an image



Save an image



Print an image



Cut selected objects to the Clipboard



Copy selected objects to the Clipboard



Paste the Clipboard contents into an image



Undo the last action

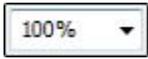


Redo the last action



Display the Connect dock and search for content such as clipart, photos, fonts, and more

Press this button



To

Import an image

Export an image

Change the zoom level

Display a full-screen preview

Show or hide rulers

Show or hide guidelines

Show or hide the image slicing grid

Show or hide the mask marquee

Show or hide the object marquee

Invert a mask

Clear a mask

Open the **Welcome Screen**

Open the **Options** dialog box

Start Corel applications

In addition to the standard toolbar, Corel PHOTO-PAINT has toolbars for specific kinds of tasks. For example, if you frequently work with [masks](#), you can display the **Mask/object** toolbar. Unlike the contents of a property bar, the contents of a toolbar remain the same.

For information about moving and re-sizing toolbars, and changing which toolbars display by default, see [“To customize toolbar position and display” on page 464](#). You can also create a custom toolbar to include the tools and commands you use most often. For information about creating custom toolbars, see [“Customizing toolbars” on page 463](#).

### To hide or display a toolbar

- Click **Window** ► **Toolbars**, and click a toolbar.

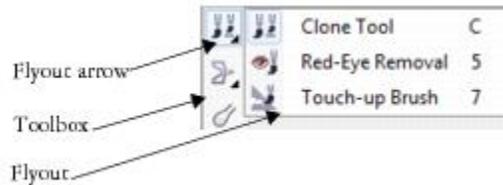
A check mark next to a toolbar name indicates that the toolbar is displayed in the image window.

## Toolbox

The toolbox contains tools for editing, creating, and viewing images. Some of the tools are visible by default, while others are grouped in flyouts. Flyouts open to display a set of related tools.

A small flyout arrow in the bottom-right corner of a toolbox button indicates a flyout. The last tool used in a flyout displays in the toolbox. You can access the tools in a flyout by clicking the small black arrow that appears in the bottom, right corner of a toolbox button. After you open one flyout, you can easily scan the contents of other flyouts by hovering over any of the toolbox buttons that have flyout arrows.

Flyouts function like toolbars when you drag them away from the toolbox. This lets you view all the related tools while you work.



*In the default workspace, clicking the flyout arrow on the Clone tool opens the Touch up flyout.*

In addition to the tools, the color control area appears in the toolbox. The color control area lets you choose colors and fills.



You can hide and display the toolbox by clicking **Window ▶ Toolbars ▶ Toolbox**.

To hide or display tools in the toolbox, click the **Quick customize** button , and enable or disable the corresponding check boxes. For more information, see [“Customizing the toolbox” on page 466](#).

The following tables provide descriptions of the tools and the color control area.

### Tools

#### Pick tools



The **Object pick** tool lets you select, position, and transform objects.



The **Mask transform** tool lets you position, size, and transform editable areas.



## Mask tools



The **Rectangle mask** tool lets you define rectangle editable areas.



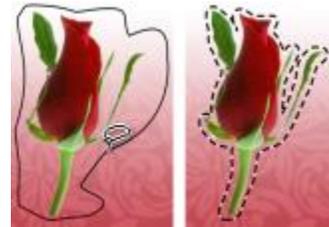
The **Ellipse mask** tool lets you define elliptical editable areas.



The **Magic wand mask** tool lets you define irregularly shaped editable areas that include the first-clicked pixel and all adjacent pixels of similar color.



The **Lasso mask** tool lets you define editable areas that are irregular in shape and surrounded by pixels of similar colors.



The **Magnetic mask** tool lets you snap the mask marquee to the edges of areas that contrast in color with their surroundings.



The **Freehand mask** tool lets you define irregularly shaped or polygonal editable areas.





The **Brush mask** tool lets you define an editable area by brushing an area as if you were painting.



The **Planar mask** tool lets you create feathered masks that are defined by parallel lines.



### Crop tool



The **Crop** tool lets you trim images and straighten crooked images.



The **Image slicing** tool lets you cut a large image into smaller sections to be used in a webpage.



### Zoom tools



The **Zoom** tool lets you change the magnification level in the image window.



The **Pan** tool lets you drag image areas into view when the image is larger than its window.



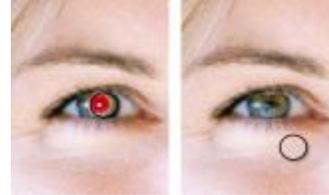
## Touch-up tools



The **Clone** tool lets you duplicate part of an image and apply it to another part of the same image or to another image.



The **Red-eye removal** tool lets you remove the red-eye effect from the eyes of subjects in photos.



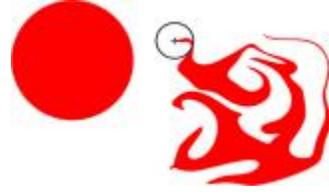
The **Touch-up brush** tool lets you remove imperfections, such as tears, scratch marks, and wrinkles, from an image by blending its textures and colors.



## Liquid tools



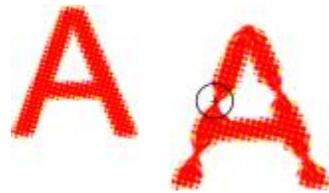
The **Liquid smear** tool lets you create an effect similar to dragging wet paint.



The **Liquid twirl** tool lets you create swirls from specific image areas.



The **Liquid attract** tool lets you reshape image areas by pulling pixels towards the brush center.



The **Liquid repel** tool lets you reshape image areas by pushing pixels away from the brush center.



## Effect tool



The **Effect** tool lets you perform local color and tonal corrections on the image.



## Text tool



The **Text** tool lets you add text to your image and edit existing text.



## Brush tools



The **Paint** tool lets you paint on an image by using the foreground color.



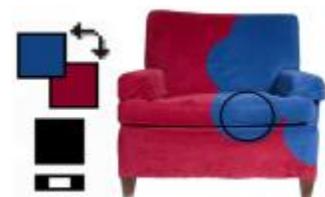
The **Image sprayer** tool lets you load one or more images and paint them on your image.



The **Undo brush** tool lets you restore image areas to how they looked before your last brushstroke.



The **Replace color brush** tool lets you replace the foreground color in your image with the background color.



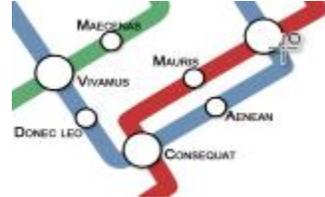
## Shape tools



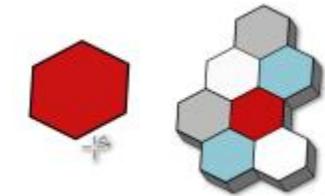
The **Rectangle** tool lets you draw square or rectangular shapes.



The **Ellipse** tool lets you draw circular or elliptical shapes.



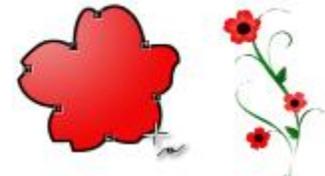
The **Polygon** tool lets you draw polygons.



The **Line** tool lets you draw single or joined straight-line segments using the foreground color.



The **Path** tool lets you create and edit paths.



## Eraser tool



The **Eraser** tool lets you erase image areas or object areas to reveal the object or background underneath.



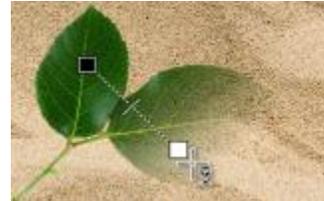
## Interactive/Transparency tools



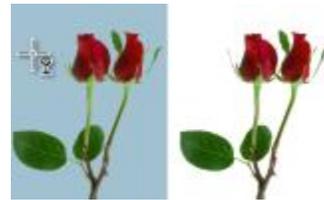
The **Drop shadow** tool lets you add shadows to objects.



The **Object transparency** tool lets you gradually fade the colors of objects to reveal image areas underneath.



The **Color transparency** tool lets you make pixels with a specific color value in an object transparent.



The **Object transparency brush** tool lets you brush areas on an object to make them more transparent.



## Eyedropper tool



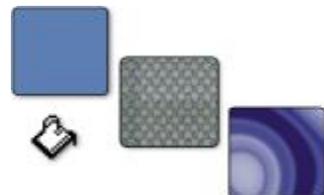
The **Eyedropper** tool lets you choose colors from an image.



## Fill tools



The **Fill** tool lets you fill areas with one of four fill types: uniform, fountain, bitmap, and texture.





The **Interactive fill** tool lets you apply a gradient fill to the entire image, object, or selection.



## Color control area



The **Foreground color** swatch displays the current foreground color, which applies to all paint tools and text.

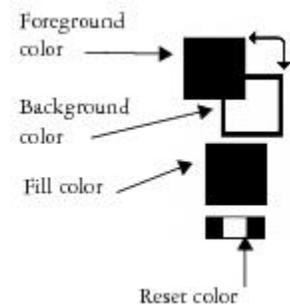
The **Background color** swatch displays the current background color, which is shown when you erase portions of the background or increase the paper size.

The arrow lets you swap the foreground color and background color.

The **Fill color** swatch displays the current fill color, which applies to the shape and fill tools.

You can change the foreground, background, or fill color by double-clicking the respective color swatch.

The **Reset color** icon lets you return to the default colors — black as foreground and fill colors, and white as a background color.



## Property bar

The property bar displays commonly used commands that are relevant to the active tool. Unlike toolbars, the contents of the property bar change depending on which tool is active. For example, when you use the **Text** tool, the contents of the property bar change to display text-related settings such as font type, font size, and alignment. You can also



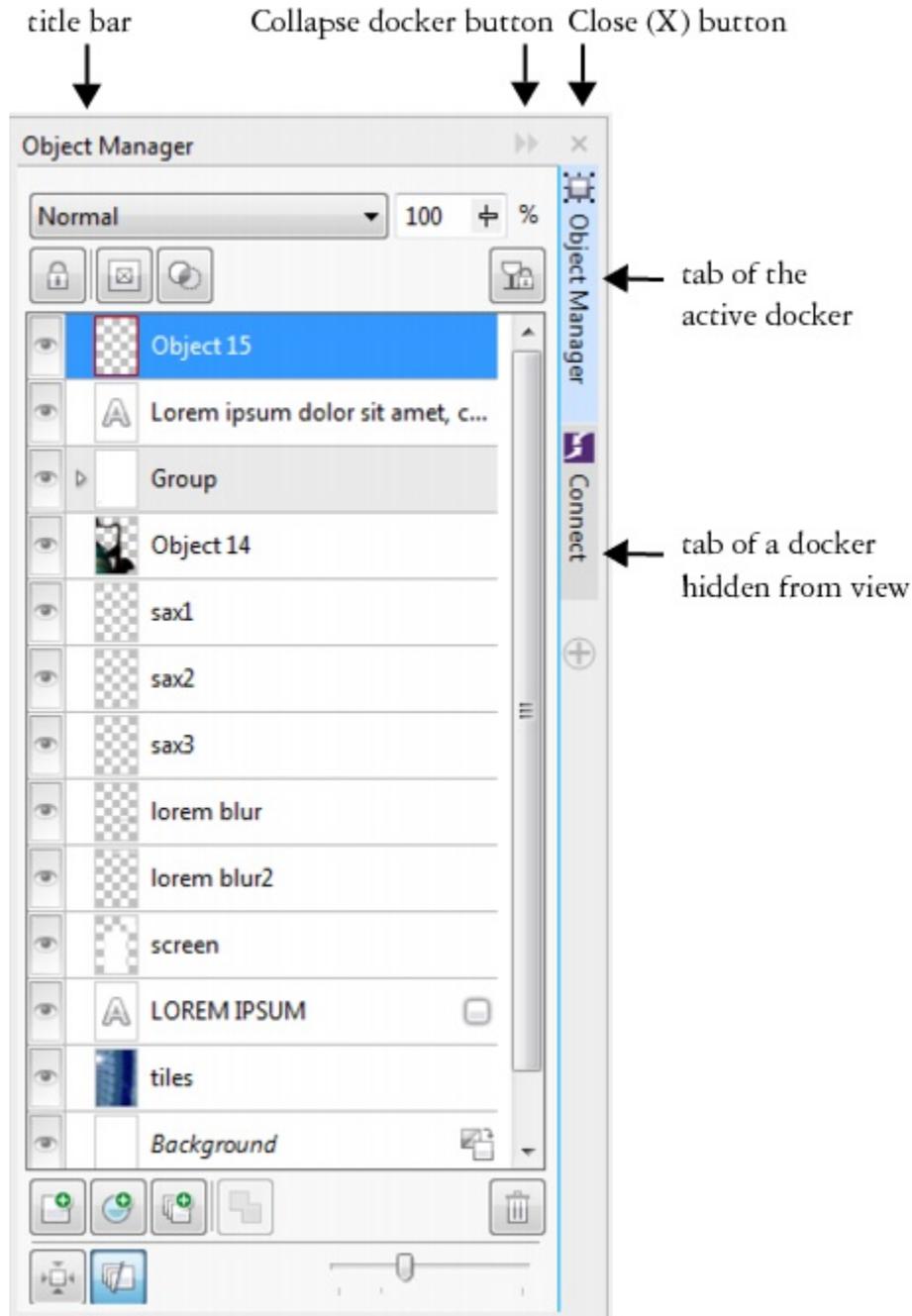
To hide or display tools on the property bar, click the **Quick customize** button , and enable or disable the corresponding check boxes. For more information, see [“Customizing the property bar”](#) on page 466.

## Dockers

Dockers display the same types of controls as a dialog box, such as command buttons, options, and list boxes. Unlike most dialog boxes, you can keep dockers open while working on a document, so you can readily access the commands to experiment with different effects. Dockers have features similar to palettes in other graphics programs.

Dockers can be either docked or floating. A docked docker is attached to the edge of the application window, a toolbar, or a palette. A floating docker is not attached to a workspace element. If you open several dockers, they usually appear nested, with only one docker fully displayed. You can quickly display a docker hidden from view by clicking the docker's tab.

You can move dockers, and you can collapse dockers to save screen space.



An example of a docker is the Object manager docker. The Object manager docker displays thumbnails of the image background and each object layer, as well as command buttons and options related to objects.

### To open or close a docker

- Click **Window** ► **Dockers**, and click a docker.



To open or close dockers, you can also click the **Quick customize** button  on the right side of a docker, and enable or disable the corresponding check boxes.

You can also close a docker by clicking the X button on its title bar. Clicking the X button on the title bar closes all nested dockers in a group. To close only a specific docker, click the X button on the docker's tab.

## To move dockers

### To move

A docker

Multiple nested dockers

### Do the following

Drag the docker's tab to a new location.

Drag the title bar of the active docker to a new location.

## To dock a floating docker

- Drag the docker's title bar or tab to an edge of the drawing window and position the pointer along the edge. When a grey preview of the docker's position appears, release the mouse button.

## To collapse a docker

- Click the **Collapse docker** button  on the docker's title bar.



To expand a collapsed docker, click its tab.

## Color palette

A color palette is a collection of color swatches. You can choose foreground, background, and fill colors by using the default color palette, which contains RGB colors. For more information about choosing colors, see ["Choosing colors" on page 161](#).

## Status bar

The status bar displays information about the image, system memory, and the active tool. It also displays information about the document color and the color proofing status. You can change the type of information that is displayed to help you with your current task. For example, if you are working with images that have different dimensions, you can display the dimension of the current image.

You can also customize the status bar by adding command buttons. For information about customizing the status bar, see ["Customizing the status bar" on page 467](#).

## To change the type of information displayed on the status bar

- Click the arrow  on the status bar, and click one of the following:
  - File size
  - Current tool
  - Document dimensions
  - Document color information
  - Memory



Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Setting options

You can change a variety of settings in Corel PHOTO-PAINT according to your preferences.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Changing workspace options” (page 51)
- “Disabling warning messages” (page 52)

### Changing workspace options

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can change the default workspace settings according to your preferences.

There are two types of workspace options — general and display. General options let you specify settings, such as unit of measure, cursor type, dialog box position.

You can also set the [nudge](#) and [super nudge](#) values. The nudge value defines the distance (in [pixels](#)) that you can move an [object](#), [editable area](#) or [guideline](#) using arrow keys. The super nudge value is a multiple of the value.

Display options let you specify settings such as the color of [paths](#), the [mask](#) tint color, the color of [guidelines](#), [transparency](#) grid patterns, as well as the threshold settings for the mask and object [marquees](#).

#### To set general options

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **General**.
- 3 Specify the settings you want.

#### To set display options

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Display**.
- 3 Specify the settings you want.

## Disabling warning messages

You may encounter warning messages while working in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. Warning messages explain the consequences of an action you are about to perform, and inform you of permanent changes that might result from that action. Although the warnings are helpful, you can disable them so you don't have to view them after you become familiar with the software. Avoid disabling warning messages until you are comfortable with the application and familiar with the results of the commands you use.

### To disable warning messages

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Warnings**.
- 3 Disable one or more of the check boxes.



# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Bringing images into Corel PHOTO-PAINT

You can bring images into Corel PHOTO-PAINT in a variety of ways.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Opening images” (page 53)
- “Importing files” (page 54)
- “Scanning images” (page 57)
- “Creating images” (page 57)
- “Working with multiple images” (page 59)
- “Working with vector graphics” (page 59)

For information about bringing RAW camera files into Corel PHOTO-PAINT, see “Bringing RAW camera files into Corel PHOTO-PAINT” on page 428.

### Opening images

You can open most bitmaps in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. Each image you open appears in its own image window.

You can also import images. Importing allows you to add a new image to the active image window. For more information, see “Importing files” on page 54.

You can use the clipart and photos that are included on the Corel DVD. If you are using Windows 7 or Windows 8, you can search for images by different criteria, such as filename, title, subject, author, keyword, comment, and other properties attached to the file. For more information about searching for files with Windows 7 or Windows 8, see the Windows Help. You can also browse and search for content by using Corel CONNECT. For more information, see “Exploring Corel CONNECT” on page 83.

### Opening earlier versions of multilingual files

You can open or import an image from version 11 or earlier of Corel PHOTO-PAINT that contains text in a language different from the language of your operating system. To do this, you can use [code page](#) settings to ensure that object names and notes saved with the image are displayed correctly in the **Object manager** docker. To ensure that text is correctly displayed in the image window, you need to use encoding settings. For more information, see “[Modifying encoding settings to display text correctly](#)” on page 361.

### To open an image

- 1 Click **File** ► **Open**.
- 2 Locate the folder where the file is stored.

### 3 Click a filename.

If necessary, you can search for an image by using the search box. You can search by filename, title, subject, author, keyword, or comment.

### 4 Click **Open**.

#### You can also

Detect a watermark

Enable the **Check for watermark** check box.

This option is not available for all file formats.

Remove unwanted areas from an image as you open it

In the **Open** list box, click **Crop and load**.

Decrease the dimensions of an image as you open it

In the **Open** list box, click **Resample and load**.

Search for an image (Windows 7 and Windows 8)

Type a word or phrase in the search box.

The search box looks for files only in the current folder and subfolders. To search for an image in another location, you must first navigate to the folder where the image is stored.

Access a previous version of a file (Windows 7 and Windows 8)

Right-click a file, and click **Restore previous versions**.

You can access a previous version of a file only if System Protection is turned on.

For detailed information about accessing previous versions of files, see the Windows Help.

Display object names and notes correctly in an image that was created in an earlier version of Corel PHOTO-PAINT

Choose the corresponding option from the **Select code page** list box.

This option is not available for all file formats.



You can also open an image by clicking the **Open** button  on the standard toolbar. If the standard toolbar is not displayed, click **Window ▶ Toolbars ▶ Standard**.

### To insert a file into an active image

- Drag the image or sound file to the image window.



You can also open a file in a new image window by dragging the file to the application window.

## Importing files

Corel PHOTO-PAINT provides [filters](#) that convert files from one format to another when you import them. You can import a file and place it in the active application window as an [object](#). The imported file becomes part of the active image. You can also bring in a file by opening it in a new application window.

You can use the import filter's default settings or choose the settings you want when you import the file. You can also save a file's embedded International Color Consortium (ICC) profile to a local color folder.

While importing a bitmap, you can [resample](#) it to change the number of [pixels](#), eliminate unusable detail, and reduce the file size. You can also crop a [bitmap](#) to select only the exact area and size of the image you want to import.

You can import the clipart and photos that are included on the Corel DVD. If you are using Windows 7 or Windows 8, you can search for images by different criteria, such as filename, title, subject, author, keyword, comment, and other properties attached to the file. For more information about searching for files with Windows 7 or Windows 8, see the Windows Help. You can also browse and search for content by using Corel CONNECT. For more information, see [“Exploring Corel CONNECT” on page 83](#).

You can also export Corel PHOTO-PAINT images to a variety of file formats. The file format that you choose depends on how you want to use the image in the future. For more information about exporting files, see [“Exporting images to other file formats” on page 81](#).

For information about specific file formats, see [“Supported file formats” on page 435](#).

## To import a file into an active image

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.
- 2 Locate the folder where the file is stored.
- 3 Choose a file format from the list box next to the **File name** box.  
If you are not sure about the format of the file you want to import, choose **All file formats**.
- 4 Click a filename.  
If the file contains text in a language different from the language of your operating system, choose the corresponding option from the **Code page** list box to ensure that notes and object names are displayed correctly. This option is not available for all file formats.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click the image window.

### You can also

Save the embedded International Color Consortium (ICC) [profile](#)

Enable the **Extract embedded ICC profile** check box to save the ICC profile to the color folder in which the application is installed.

Check for watermark or copyright information

Enable the **Check for watermark** check box.

Use the [filter’s](#) default settings without opening its dialog box

Enable the **Do not show filter dialog** check box.

Select the page to import when importing multi-page TIFF documents

In the **Import TIFF** dialog box, enable an option in the **Select the page(s) to import** area.

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can open only one page of a multi-page TIFF at a time.

Search for an image (Windows 7 and Windows 8)

Type a word or phrase in the search box.

The search box looks for files only in the current folder and subfolders. To search for an image in another location, you must first navigate to the folder where the image is stored.



The **Import an Image from Disk** dialog box displays the size of the file you want to import and any annotations associated with the file.



You can also import a file by opening it in a new application window. For more information about opening a file in a new application window, see [“To open an image” on page 53](#).

## To resample an image while importing

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.
- 2 Choose the folder where the file is stored.

(Windows 7 and Windows 8) If necessary, you can search for an image by using the search box. You can search for such things as filename, title, subject, author, keyword, or comment, bitmap names, object names, and so on.

- 3 Choose a file format from the list box that is beside the **File name** box (Windows 7 and Windows 8).  
If you are not sure about what file format the file is, choose **All file formats**.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**, and click **Resample and load**.
- 6 In the **Resample image** dialog box, type values in any of the following boxes:
  - **Width** — specifies the width of the graphic in a chosen unit of measurement or as a percentage of its original width
  - **Height** — specifies the height of the graphic in a chosen unit of measurement or as a percentage of its original height
- 7 In the **Resolution** section, type values in any of the following boxes:
  - **Horizontal** — lets you specify the horizontal resolution of the graphic in pixels or dots per inch (dpi)
  - **Vertical** — lets you specify the vertical resolution of the graphic in pixels or dots per inch (dpi)
- 8 Click the image window.

#### You can also

Maintain the width-to-height ratio of the image

Enable the **Maintain aspect ratio** check box.

Change the units of measurement

Choose a unit type from the **Units** list box.

Maintain equal horizontal and vertical resolution values automatically

Enable the **Identical values** check box.



If a dialog box for the import format opens, specify the options you want. For detailed information about file formats, see [“Supported file formats” on page 435](#).

You cannot increase the resolution of a file when importing.



You can also import a file by opening it in a new application window. For more information about opening a file in a new application window, see [“To open an image” on page 53](#).

#### To crop an image while importing

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.
- 2 Choose the folder where the file is stored.  
(Windows 7 and Windows 8) If necessary, you can search for an image by using the search box. You can search for such things as filename, title, subject, author, keyword, or comment, bitmap names, object names, and so on.
- 3 Choose a file format from the list box that is beside the **File name** box.  
If you are not sure about what file format the file is, choose **All file formats**.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**, and click **Crop and load**.
- 6 Type values in any of the following boxes:
  - **Top** — specifies the area to remove from the top of the graphic
  - **Left** — specifies the area to remove from the left edge of the graphic
  - **Width** — specifies the width of the graphic you want to keep
  - **Height** — specifies the height of the graphic you want to keep
- 7 Click the image window.



When you import 16-color bitmaps, they are automatically converted to 256-color.



You can also resize an image by dragging the [selection box](#) in the preview window.

You can change the units of measurement by choosing a unit type from the **Units** list box, in the **Crop image** dialog box.

## Scanning images

You can scan images in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. Corel PHOTO-PAINT supports scanners that use Microsoft Windows Image Acquisition ([WIA](#)), which provides a standard interface for scanning images.

If your scanner does not support WIA, but has a compatible TWAIN driver, you may be able to use this driver for scanning. TWAIN is supported by both the 32-bit and 64-bit versions of Corel PHOTO-PAINT. However, note that there are very few 64-bit TWAIN drivers available.

The software interfaces and options vary. For information about using your scanner's software, see the manufacturer's documentation.

For more detailed information about bringing in RAW camera files, see "[Bringing RAW camera files into Corel PHOTO-PAINT](#)" on page 428.

### To scan an image

- 1 Click **File** ► **Acquire image**, and click one of the following commands:
  - **Select WIA source** — for a scanner that uses a WIA driver
  - **Select TWAIN source**— for a scanner that uses a TWAIN driverA command appears disabled if a compatible WIA or TWAIN scanner driver is not installed.
- 2 Choose a scanner from the dialog box that appears.
- 3 Click **Select**.
- 4 Click **File** ► **Acquire image** ► **Acquire**.
- 5 Preview the image, and select the area that you want to scan.  
WIA, in combination with some scanners, supports scanning of multiple areas to separate files.
- 6 Click **Scan**.  
On your scanner's interface, this button may have a different name, such as **OK** or **Send**.

## Creating images

You can produce original artwork by creating an image from scratch, or by duplicating an existing image. When creating an image from scratch, Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you specify various image and color management settings. You can choose from a list of preset settings, which are based on how you intend to use the image. For example, you can choose the **Web** option if you are creating an image for the Internet or the **Photos** option if you are creating a photo. However, if the preset settings are not suitable for the image that you want to create, you can also choose custom settings and store them for future use.

In addition, you can create an image by using data copied to the [Clipboard](#) from another image window or another application.

When you create an image from scratch, you can specify the size of the image, its background color, and the color mode you want to use. You can also choose the image [resolution](#), or the number of [pixels](#) per unit of measure.

### To create an image from scratch

- 1 Do one of the following:
  - On the Welcome Page, click **New document**.
  - In the application window, click **File** ► **New**.
- 2 Type a filename in the **Name** text box.

- 3 From the **Preset destination** list box, choose an output destination for the image:
  - **Web** — applies settings for creating images that are destined for the Internet
  - **Photos** — applies settings for creating images that are photos
  - **Default CMYK** — applies settings for creating images that are destined for commercial printing

#### You can also

Change the unit of measurement for the image

Choose a unit of measurement from the **Units** list box.

Change the image size

Choose a image size for the image from the **Size** list box or type values in the **Width** and **Height** boxes.

Change the image orientation

Click one of the following image orientation buttons:

- **Portrait**
- **Landscape**

Change the background color of the image

Open the **Background color** picker, and click on a color.

Change the color mode for the image

Choose a color mode from the **Color mode** list box.

Set the resolution for the image

Choose a resolution from the **Resolution** list box.

Choose a rendering intent that corresponds to the final output of the image

Choose a rendering intent from the **Rendering intent** list box.

For more information about rendering intents, see [“What is a rendering intent?” on page 187](#).

Choose a color profile that corresponds with the selected color mode

Choose a color profile from the corresponding color profile list box.

Create multiple frames for a movie within your file

Type a value in the **Number of frames** box.

Reset the default settings of the **Create a new image** dialog box

From the **Preset destination** list box, choose **PHOTO-PAINT default**.



If you do not want to show the **Create a new image** dialog box and prefer to use the default settings to create new images, enable the **Do not show this dialog again** check box.

You can restore the **Create a new image** dialog box when starting images by clicking **Tools ▶ Options**, then choosing **Workspace ▶ General** from the list of categories, and enabling the **Show new image dialog** check box.

#### To create a custom preset

- 1 In the application window, click **File ▶ New**.
- 2 From the **Create a new image** dialog box, choose the settings that you want to store as a preset destination.
- 3 Click the **Add destination** button.
- 4 In the **Add destination** dialog box, type a name for the new destination preset in the text box.



Higher image [resolution](#) results in a larger file size.



You can delete a destination preset by choosing the preset name from the **Preset destination** list box, and then clicking the **Remove destination** button.

You can specify a custom page size by choosing **Custom** from the **Size** list box and typing values in the **Width** and **Height** boxes.

You can also create an image by clicking the **New** button  on the standard toolbar. If the standard toolbar is not displayed, click **Window ▶ Toolbars ▶ Standard**.

### To create an image from a duplicate

- 1 Click **Image ▶ Duplicate**.
- 2 Type a filename in the **As** box.

If you want to combine the **objects** and background in the new image, enable the **Merge objects with background** check box.

### To create an image by using the Clipboard contents

- Click **File ▶ New from Clipboard**.

## Working with multiple images

Multiple images can be opened in a single image window, making it easy to handle many images simultaneously. You can access each open image from its tab at the top of the image window, and you can start new images.

Open images appear docked, but you can undock any image you want and drag it inside or outside the application window.

### To handle multiple images

#### To

Switch to another open image

Start another image

Undock an image

#### Do the following

At the top of the image window, click the tab that has the filename you want.

Click the **New** button  to the right of the last document tab.

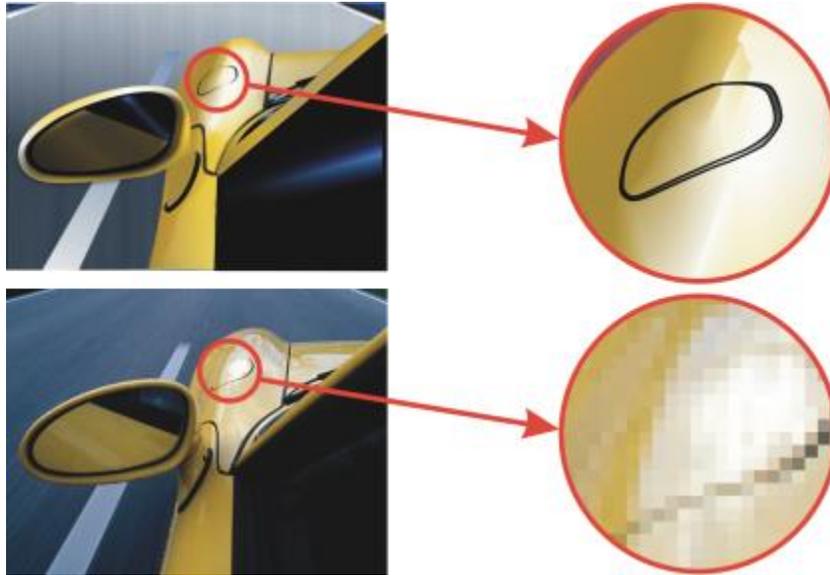
Drag the image tab to a new position inside or outside the application window.

## Working with vector graphics

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you work with **bitmaps**, also called raster images. Bitmaps are composed of tiny squares called **pixels**; each pixel is mapped to a location in an image, and has numerical color values. The location and color value data is stored as bits — hence the name bitmaps.

**Vector graphics** are made up of lines, curves, objects, and fills that are all calculated mathematically. Although you cannot work with vector graphics in Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can convert vector graphics to bitmaps as you open or import them. This conversion process is called **rasterization**. You can also copy vector graphics from CorelDRAW and paste them into Corel PHOTO-PAINT.

Vector graphics usually have a smaller file size than bitmaps, so expect file size to increase when you convert vector graphics to bitmaps.



The top illustration is a vector graphic consisting of lines, objects, and fills. The bottom version is a bitmap made up of pixels.

### To open a vector graphic

- 1 Click **File** ► **Open**.
- 2 Choose the folder where the file is stored.
- 3 From the **Files of type** list box, choose the **vector** file format of the file you want to import.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Open**.
- 6 In the **Convert to bitmap** dialog box, specify the settings you want.



You can copy a vector graphic in CorelDRAW and paste it into Corel PHOTO-PAINT by clicking **File** ► **New from clipboard**.

### To import a vector graphic

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.  
You can also click the **Import** button  on the toolbar.
- 2 Choose the folder where the file is stored.
- 3 From the **Files of type** list box, choose the **vector** file format of the file you want to import.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Open**.
- 6 Click in the image window.
- 7 In the **Convert to bitmap** dialog box, specify the settings you want.



You can copy a vector graphic in CorelDRAW and paste it into Corel PHOTO-PAINT by clicking **File** ► **New from clipboard**.



Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Displaying images and image information

You can change the appearance of windows and the magnification level of an image. Changing the magnification level allows you to view specific image areas and makes image editing easier. You can also obtain relevant image information, such as [color model](#) information, as you edit an image.

Corel PHOTO-PAINT includes the ImageBridge plugin from Digimarc, which allows you to embed and detect digital watermarks in images. These [watermarks](#) contain copyright and authorship information, but they do not interfere significantly with the visual quality of images.

This section contains the following topics:

- [“Viewing images”](#) (page 61)
- [“Zooming”](#) (page 63)
- [“Viewing image information”](#) (page 64)
- [“Refreshing the image window”](#) (page 64)
- [“Detecting and embedding Digimarc watermarks”](#) (page 65)

### Viewing images

Images can be viewed in a number of different ways. You can hide windows, the toolbox and the toolbars, leaving only the menu bar and the image windows visible. You can view a large representation of an image in a full-screen preview. The image is editable when the windows are hidden, but you cannot change the image while using the full-screen preview. You can also maximize or restore the work area.

You can view image areas that fall outside the image window. For example, when you are working at a high magnification level or with large images, you can [pan](#) or jump to a different image area without having to adjust the magnification level. You can use the Quick Pan mode to switch from any active tool to the **Pan** tool.



You can select the image area to be displayed in the image window by using the Navigator pop-up.

### To hide windows, the toolbox, and toolbars

- Click **Window** ► **Hide windows**.

If you want to return to normal view, right-click in the workspace, and click **Show windows**.

### To maximize or restore the work area

- Click **Window** ► **Maximize work area**.



To restore the work area, click **Window** ► **Maximize work area** again.

### To view a full-screen preview of an image

- Click **View** ► **Full-screen preview**.

If you want to return to normal view, press any key or click the screen.

### To view an image area that falls outside the image window

To

Pan to another area of the image

Switch to the QuickPan mode

Jump to another area of the image

Do the following

In the toolbox, click the **Pan** tool . Drag the image until the area you want to view appears in the image window.

Click any tool in the toolbox, and start using it. Hold down the middle mouse button or wheel, and drag in the image window.

Click the **Navigator** pop-up  at the lower-right corner of the image window. Drag the rectangle to the area of the image you want to view.



You can **pan** around an image by clicking the **Pan** tool and pressing the **Arrow** keys.

You can also pan around an image using the scroll bars in the image window.

While moving the wheel on a mouse or another input device, you can scroll vertically by pressing **Alt** or horizontally by pressing **Ctrl**.



*Image areas that fall outside the image window can be dragged into view by using the Pan tool. This photo has been dragged from its original position (top left) toward the right (top right). The inset (bottom) shows the entire image.*

### To establish the default setting for the mouse wheel

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, click **Workspace**, and click **Display**.
- 3 To specify the default action of the mouse wheel, choose **Zoom** or **Scroll** from the **Default action for mouse wheel** menu.
- 4 Click **OK**.

## Zooming

By default, images are displayed at 100% magnification; however, you can **zoom** in to get a closer look at image detail or zoom out to view a larger portion of the image. You can also specify the magnification level at which images open.

### To zoom

- In the toolbox, click the **Zoom** tool .

#### To

Zoom in

Zoom in to a specific area

Zoom out

Switch between the current and previous zoom levels

Zoom in or out by a preset level

#### Do the following

Click the image where you want to magnify it.

Drag across the area you want to magnify.

Right-click in the image window.

Click the **Zoom to previous** button  on the property bar.

Choose a magnification level from the **Zoom** list box on the property bar.



You can also zoom in to or out from the image by using a mouse wheel.

### To set the magnification level at which images are opened

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **General**.  
Choose a magnification level from the **Opening zoom** list box.



The magnification level that you choose is used the next time you open an image.

## Viewing image information

You can view image properties, such as name, file format, and file size. If an image is loaded from a digital camera, you can also view EXIF information about the image, such as the date and time the photo was taken, the exposure, and flash settings.

You can view information about image areas, such as pointer coordinates, as you work. You can view the changes in the x-coordinate (X) or the y-coordinate (Y) as you move the pointer in the image window. You can also make note of the angle (A) and distance (D) that the pointer moves in the image window as you draw a shape or define an editable area. In addition, you can obtain statistics related to the x- and y-coordinates of the center position (C) and the [radius \(R\)](#) when you create or select a circular [editable area](#) or shape.

You can also view color information for an image area that corresponds to the pointer position. By default, the [RGB](#), [Hex](#), and [CMYK](#) values are displayed. You can choose to display color information in two [color models](#) at once. For example, you can view both the [grayscale](#) and [RGB](#) values of a particular image area. For information about color modes and color models, see [“Changing color modes” on page 179](#) and [“Working with color” on page 159](#).

### To view image information

- Click **File** ► **Document properties**.

### To view information about image areas

- Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Info**.

You can also

Choose a new color model

Click the top flyout arrow , choose a color level, and click a color model.

Change the units of measurement used to display image information

Click the bottom flyout arrow, and click a unit of measurement.



By default, the **Image info** palette lists the [RGB](#), [Hex](#), and [CMYK](#) values from top to bottom.



You can also view [color mode](#) information by clicking the **Eyedropper** tool  and pointing to an image area.

## Refreshing the image window

You can refresh the image window at any time. For example, you may find this option useful when displaying large images.

### To refresh the image window

- Click **Window** ► **Refresh window**.



You can also refresh the image window by pressing **Ctrl + W**.

## Detecting and embedding Digimarc watermarks

A Digimarc watermark embeds copyright details, contact information, and image attributes in an image. A watermark makes subtle changes to the **brightness** of **pixels** in an image. These changes cannot be readily seen; however following image processing, you might notice changes in the brightness of some pixels. Digimarc watermarks aren't affected by normal editing, printing, and scanning.

The detecting and embedding of Digimarc watermarks is not supported by the 64-bit version of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite.

### Detecting watermarks

When you open an image in Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can check for a watermark. If a watermark is present, a copyright symbol displays on the title bar. You can find information about the watermarked image by reading the embedded message and by linking to the contact profile in the Digimarc database.

### Embedding watermarks

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can also embed Digimarc watermarks in images. First, you must obtain a unique Creator ID by subscribing to Digimarc's online service. The Creator ID includes contact details, such as name, phone number, address, e-mail and web addresses.

Once you have a Creator ID, you can embed a watermark in an image. You can specify the copyright year, image attributes, and the durability of a watermark. You can also specify the target output method for an image, such as print or web.

Digimarc watermarks do not prevent unauthorized image use or copyright infringement. But the watermarks do communicate copyright claims. They also provide contact information for those who want to use or license an image.

For more information about Digimarc, see [www.digimarc.com](http://www.digimarc.com).

### To detect a watermark

- 1 Click **Effects** ► **Digimarc** ► **Read watermark**.
- 2 Click **Web lookup** to view the webpage with contact details, or call the Digimarc fax-back service at the listed fax number.



This feature is not supported by the 64-bit version of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite.



You can also detect a watermark by enabling the **Check for watermark** option when you open or import an image.

### To get a Creator ID

- 1 Click **Effects** ► **Digimarc** ► **Embed watermark**.
- 2 Click **Personalize**.
- 3 In the **Personalize creator ID** dialog box, click **Register**, and follow the instructions on the Digimarc website.
- 4 In the **Personalize creator ID** dialog box, type your Creator ID in the **Creator ID** box.

### To embed a watermark

- 1 Click **Effects** ► **Digimarc** ► **Embed watermark**.
- 2 In the **Copyright year(s)** box, type a year or years.  
You cannot type a year before 1922 or after the current year. Separate the years with commas.
- 3 In the **Image attributes** area, enable the check boxes for the applicable attributes.
- 4 Choose an option from the **Target output** list box.  
**Monitor** and **Web** require a **DPI** setting of less than 200, while **Print** requires a dpi setting of 300 or higher.
- 5 Type a value in the **Watermark durability** box.

Higher values increase the persistence of the watermark.

If you want to confirm the information available to viewers when they detect the watermark, enable the **Verify** check box.



This feature is not supported by the 64-bit version of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite.

Combine all objects with the background before adding a watermark. For more information about combining objects with the background, see [“Grouping and combining objects” on page 322](#).



# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Using the guidelines, grid, and rulers

The [guidelines](#), [grid](#), and [rulers](#) let you position and size images, [objects](#), and [editable areas](#).

This section contains the following topics:

- “[Setting up guidelines](#)” (page 67)
- “[Setting up the grid](#)” (page 70)
- “[Setting up the rulers](#)” (page 71)

### Setting up guidelines

[Guidelines](#) are vertical or horizontal lines that you can add anywhere in the image window to help you measure, align, and position image components. The guidelines use the same units of measure as the [rulers](#). When you save an image in the Corel PHOTO-PAINT application, the guidelines are saved too.

You can display or hide the guidelines. You can also add, remove, move, and lock guidelines in the image window. You can add angled guidelines and rotate existing guidelines.

You can have [objects](#) and [editable areas](#) snap to guidelines, so that when you move an object or editable area to a guideline, the object or editable area automatically aligns to that guideline. You can set the sensitivity of this feature so that the object or editable area snaps when you move within a specific number of [pixels](#) of a guideline.

You can change the color and line style of the guidelines to make them stand out against the image background. By default, when you select a guideline, it turns red. When you deselect a guideline, it turns blue.

### To display or hide the guidelines

- Click **View** ► **Show guidelines**.

A check mark beside the menu command indicates that the [guidelines](#) are displayed.



You can also display or hide the guidelines by clicking **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Guidelines** and clicking the **Show guidelines** button .



*Guidelines displayed*

### To add a horizontal or vertical guideline

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Guidelines**.
- 2 Choose one of the following options from the **Guideline type** list box:
  - **Horizontal**
  - **Vertical**
- 3 Specify the location of the guideline in the **x** or **y** box.
- 4 Click **Add**.



You can also add a guideline by dragging from the horizontal or vertical ruler to the image window.

### To add an angled guideline

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Guidelines**.
- 2 Choose **Angled** from the **Guideline type** list box
- 3 Specify the location of the guideline in the **x** and **y** boxes.
- 4 Type a value in **Angle of rotation** box.
- 5 Click **Add**.

### To remove a guideline

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Guidelines**.
- 2 Choose a guideline from the list.  
You can choose multiple guidelines by holding down **Ctrl** as you click.
- 3 Click the **Delete guideline** button .



You can also remove individual guidelines by dragging them off the image window.

### To move a guideline

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Object pick** tool .
- 2 Drag a **guideline** to a new position in the image window.



You can also move a guideline by **nudging** it.

To move a guideline by specifying x and y coordinates, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Guidelines**. Select the guideline, type values in the **x** and **y** boxes, and click **Modify**.

### To rotate a guideline

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Pick** tool .
- 2 Perform a task from the following table.

#### To

Rotate a guideline

#### Do the following

Click the guideline twice, and then rotate the guideline when rotation handles  appear.

You can also rotate a guideline by choosing **Angled** from the **Guideline type** list box, typing a value in the **Angle of rotation** box, and clicking **Modify**.

Rotate multiple guidelines

Hold down **Shift**, select the guidelines, click a selected guideline again, and rotate the guidelines when the rotation handles appear.

The center of rotation is determined by the last guideline you selected.

Rotate a guideline by a specific value

Click the guideline twice to display the rotation handles, and type a value in the **Angle of rotation** box on the property bar.

You can also rotate multiple guidelines by a specific value.

Rotate a guideline in 15° increments

Click the guideline twice to display the rotation handles, hold down **Ctrl**, and rotate the guideline.

You can also rotate multiple guidelines in 15° increments.

Change the pivot point

Drag the guideline's center of rotation to a new location or type a value in the **Center of rotation** box on the property bar.

### To lock or unlock the guidelines

- Click **View ▶ Lock guidelines**.

A check mark displays beside the menu command to indicate the **guideline** is locked.



You can also lock a guideline by clicking **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Guidelines** and clicking the **Lock guideline** button .

### To have objects and editable areas snap to the guidelines

- Click **View ▶ Snap to ▶ Guidelines**.



You can also set objects and editable areas to snap to a guideline by clicking **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Guidelines** and clicking the **Snap to guideline** button .

### To set the snap sensitivity of the guidelines

- 1 Click **Tools ▶ Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Display**.
- 3 Type a value in the **Guideline snap tolerance (pixels)** box.

### To set the line style and color of a guideline

- 1 Click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Guidelines**.
- 2 Open the **Guideline color** picker, and choose a color.
- 3 Open the **Guideline style** picker, and choose a line style.



Changing the line style or color affects all existing guidelines and any subsequent guidelines that you add.

## Setting up the grid

The **grid** is a series of non-printing intersecting lines that are superimposed on an image to help you align and position **objects** accurately. You can display or hide the grid at any time.

You can have objects and **editable areas** align automatically with the gridlines. You can customize the look of the grid by changing the grid display and grid spacing. The grid display allows you to change the grid lines to dots or change the grid color. The spacing allows you to set the distance between the grid lines. The spacing options are based on the unit of measure for the ruler. For example, if the ruler unit of measure is set to inches, the spacing options are based on inches.

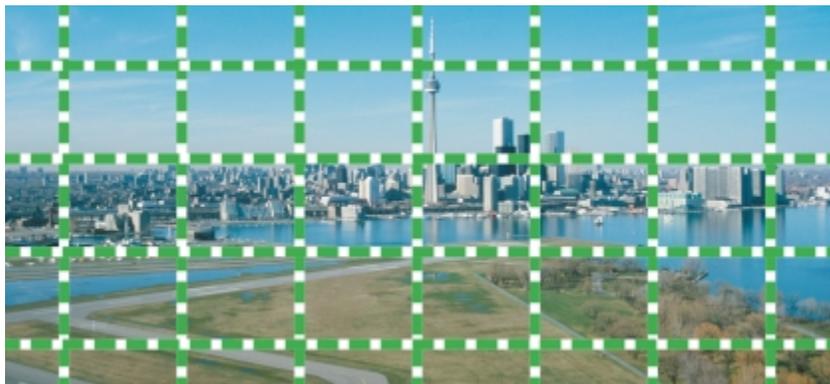
If the ruler unit of measure is set to pixels, you have additional options for customizing the look of the grid. For the pixel grid, you can specify the color and opacity of the grid.

For more precise **pixel** editing at maximum **zoom** level, you can display a grid around each pixel.

### To display or hide the grid

- Click **View ▶ Show grid**.

A check mark beside the menu command indicates that the **grid** is displayed.



*The grid displayed.*

### To have objects and editable areas snap to the grid

- Click **View ▶ Snap to ▶ Grid**.

## To set the spacing of the gridlines

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the **Document** list of categories, click **Grid**.
- 3 In the **Document grid** area, type a value in the **Horizontal** box.  
If you want to change the grid spacing intervals or the number of lines displayed per unit of measure, choose an option from the list box. The options are based on the unit of measure used for the ruler.
- 4 Type a value in the **Vertical** box.

## To change the color and style of the grid

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Display**.
- 3 Open the **Grid color** picker, and click a color.
- 4 Click one of the following **Grid style** buttons:
  - Solid line 
  - Dashed line 
  - Dots 



You can also create a custom [grid](#) color by clicking **More** in the **Grid color** picker.

## To change the color and style of the pixel grid

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the **Document** list of categories, click **Grid**.
- 3 In the **Pixel grid** area, open the **Color** picker, and click a color.
- 4 Move the **Opacity** slider to the right to increase the opacity of the grid.

## To display a pixel grid at the maximum zoom level

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the **Document** list of categories, click **Grid**.
- 3 In the **Pixel grid** area, enable the **Show pixel grid at 800% and higher zoom** check box.

## Setting up the rulers

The on-screen [rulers](#) provide a visual reference to help you size and position images, [objects](#), and [editable areas](#). You can display or hide the rulers at any time. As you move the pointer in the image window, marks on the rulers indicate its position. You can also customize the rulers' zero mark position and specify a unit of measure for the current document.

You can move the rulers anywhere in the image window; however, by default they appear along the top and left sides of the image window. Calibrating the rulers ensures the distances on the screen match real-world distances.

## To display or hide the rulers

- Click **View** ▶ **Show rulers**.  
A check mark beside the menu command indicates that the [rulers](#) are displayed.



*The rulers displayed.*

### To display the rulers by default

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Display**.
- 3 Enable the **Show rulers by default** check box.

### To customize the rulers

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Document** list of categories, click **Ruler**.
- 3 In the **Units** area, choose a unit of measure from the following list boxes:

- **Horizontal**
- **Vertical**

If you want to use the same unit of measure for both the horizontal and vertical rulers, enable the **Same units for horizontal and vertical rulers** check box.

- 4 In the **Origin** area, type values in the following boxes:

- **Horizontal**
- **Vertical**

The origin value indicates the distance, in the units of measure you specify, between the zero mark of the ruler and the point of origin of the ruler. For example, an origin value of 4 for the horizontal ruler moves the zero mark of that ruler four units away from the origin — the point where the ruler begins.

- 5 Type a value in the **Tick divisions** box.

If you want to display fractions on the rulers, enable the **Show fractions** check box.

### To move a ruler

- Hold down **Shift**, and drag a ruler to a new position.

#### You can also

Return the rulers to their original positions

Hold down **Shift**, and double-click a ruler.

Move both rulers at the same time

Hold down **Shift**, and drag the intersection point of the two rulers.

### To calibrate the rulers

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Document** list of categories, click **Ruler**.

- 3 Click **Calibrate rulers**.
- 4 Hold a clear plastic ruler next to the horizontal and vertical **rulers** displayed on your screen.
- 5 Type values in the following boxes so that one inch on each ruler corresponds exactly to one inch on the plastic ruler:
  - **Horizontal**
  - **Vertical**





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Undoing, redoing, repeating, and fading actions

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you undo, redo, repeat, and fade actions. You can also restore an image or part of an image to a previously saved version.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Undoing and redoing actions” (page 75)
- “Reverting to an earlier image state” (page 76)
- “Repeating and fading actions” (page 77)

### Undoing and redoing actions

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you undo actions you apply to an image, starting with the most recent action. If you don't like the result of undoing actions, you can redo them. You can undo or redo actions applied to an image, such as a brushstroke, an effect, or a transformation; however, you cannot undo or redo actions applied to the workspace, such as changing preferences.

The undo settings can be customized, allowing you to increase or decrease the number of actions you can undo and redo.

Keep in mind that the higher the number of actions in the undo list, the more memory is required to maintain the undo list. You can free memory by permanently clearing all actions from the undo list.

You can also restore parts of an image by erasing the last action. For more information, see “Erasing image areas” on page 126.



*Left to right: Original image; cropped image; undoing the cropping action restores the dimensions of the image.*

## To undo or redo actions

### To

Undo the last action

Redo the last action

Undo or redo a series of actions

### Do the following

Click **Edit** ► **Undo** [last action].

Click **Edit** ► **Redo** [last action].

In the **Undo manager** docker, choose an action from the list. All actions listed below the action you choose will be undone. If the **Undo manager** docker is not open, click **Edit** ► **Undo manager** or **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Undo manager**.

Remove all actions in the **Undo manager** docker to free memory

Click **Edit** ► **Purge** ► **Undo list**.



When you undo a series of actions, the action you choose and all actions listed below it are undone.

When you redo a series of actions, the action you choose and all actions listed between it and the last undone action are redone.

## To customize undo settings

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **General**.
- 3 In the **Memory** area, type a value in the **Undo levels** box.



You can specify up to 99 undo levels; however, the number of undo levels affects the size of the **swap disk**. Reduce the number of undo levels if you find that your computer is not operating at the speed you want.

## Reverting to an earlier image state

As you create or edit an image, you can revert to its last-saved version to remove all the changes you made since you saved the image. If you want to remove only some changes, you can restore specific image areas to the way they look in the last-saved version of the image.

You can also create a checkpoint to save the current image temporarily, so that later you can return the image to that state if necessary.

You can also create a workspace that lets you save automatically using a checkpoint. For more information, see ["To specify auto-save settings" on page 80](#).

## To revert to the last saved version of an image

- Click **File** ► **Revert to saved**.



You can also revert to the last saved image by clicking the **Revert to last saved** button  in the **Undo manager** docker.

## To restore image areas

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Clone** tool .
- 2 On the property bar, open the **Brush** picker, choose the **Clone from saved** brush category , and choose a preset brush type.
- 3 Drag in the image window.



If you are creating an image from scratch, you must save it before using the **Clone from saved** tool. For more information about saving images, see [“Saving and closing”](#) on page 79.

### To create or return to a checkpoint

To	Do the following
Create a checkpoint	Click <b>Edit ▶ Checkpoint</b> .
Return to a checkpoint	Click <b>Edit ▶ Restore to checkpoint</b> .

### Repeating and fading actions

You can repeat or fade actions. When you repeat an action, it is reapplied to the image, producing a stronger visual effect. When you fade an action, it is gradually removed. You can also use a [merge mode](#) to modify the fade effects. For more information about merge modes, see [“Understanding merge modes”](#) on page 280.



*You can repeat the last action to intensify the effect. The image on the left is the original, a wind effect is applied to the image in the middle, and the effect is repeated in the image on the right.*



*You can fade the last action by a specified amount. The original image is on the left, the center image is blurred, and the blur effect is faded in the right image.*

## To repeat or fade actions

### To

Repeat the last action

Fade the last action

### Do the following

Click **Edit** ► **Repeat** [last action].

Click **Edit** ► **Fade last command**. Move the **Percent** slider to set the fade level. If you want to modify the fade effect, choose a merge mode from the **Merge** list box.



To repeat or fade an action, you must first apply an action, such as an effect, a brushstroke, or a transformation, to an image. Actions performed on the work area, such as changing preferences, cannot be repeated or faded.



When you have maximized the settings for a special effect, you can repeat the effect to exaggerate it. For more information about special effects, see [“Applying special effects” on page 283](#).



Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Saving and closing

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can save your work as you create an image and before you close it. You can also save images to many different file formats.

This section contains the following topics:

- [“Saving images”](#) (page 79)
- [“Exporting images to other file formats”](#) (page 81)
- [“Working with locked files”](#) (page 82)
- [“Closing images”](#) (page 82)

### Saving images

You can save an image to preserve it. You can also save images automatically at regular intervals and save backup copies of the file.

#### Saving images

When you save an image, you can specify a file format, a file name, and a folder where you want to save the file. Images are automatically saved using the currently selected file format, name, and location. The default format is the native Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT) file format. Saving to the Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT) file format retains all image properties — [objects](#), the most recently created [mask](#), [alpha channels](#), [grids](#), [guidelines](#), and color information — so you can edit them later.

You can attach information (metadata) such as comments and notes (Windows 8 and Windows 7) to images so that you can find them and organize them more easily.

You can also export an image to another file format. For more information, see [“Exporting images to other file formats”](#) on page 81.

#### Auto-saving and backing up images

You can specify auto-save settings to save an image automatically at regular intervals as you work. You can choose to save an image temporarily at a particular stage in its development, or you can overwrite the last version of the image.

Specifying backup settings lets you create a copy of an image each time you save. A backup copy is stored in the folder you choose.

You can also create a checkpoint to save a snapshot of the current image temporarily, so that you can return the image to that state if necessary. For more information about checkpoints, see [“To create or return to a checkpoint”](#) on page 77.

## To save an image

- 1 Click **File** ► **Save as**.
- 2 Choose the folder where you want to save the file.
- 3 Choose a file format from the **Save as type** list box.
- 4 Type a file name in the **File name** list box.  
The file extension for the file format you choose is appended to the file name automatically, but can be removed.
- 5 Enable any of the following active check boxes:
  - **Selected only** — saves only the **editable areas** defined in your image, when there are no active and selected objects. If there are no editable areas, this option saves only the active and selected objects.
  - **Do not show filter dialog** — suppresses dialog boxes that provide advanced exporting options
- 6 Click **Save**.

## You can also

### Compress a file

Choose a compression type from the **Compression type** list box.

The **Compression type** list box is available only when you are saving an image to a file format that can be compressed.

### Specify information about a file

Type any comments you want in the **Comments** box.

If you don't see this option, drag the lower-right corner to increase the size of the dialog box and display options hidden from view.



When you save an image containing objects to a file format that does not support objects, you can continue working on the original file (which still contains the objects) in the image window. The image and its objects can still be saved to the Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT) format.



You can also save an image by clicking the **Save** button  on the standard toolbar.

You can view notes in the **Notes** box in the **Open** dialog box when you open an image, or in the **Import** dialog box when you import an image. Some file formats do not let you save annotations with an image.

## To specify auto-save settings

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Save**.
- 3 Enable the **Auto-save every** check box, and type a value in the box beside it.  
The value you type specifies the number of minutes between auto-saves.
- 4 Enable one of the following options:
  - **Save to checkpoint** — saves a temporarily copy of the image in its current state without overwriting the version that has been saved to disk
  - **Save to file** — overwrites the last version of the file that you saved to disk

If you want a message displayed at every auto-save, enable the **Warn me before saving** check box.



When you save the image or quit Corel PHOTO-PAINT, the checkpoint version of the image is lost.

## To specify backup settings

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Save**.
- 3 Enable the **Make backup on save** check box.

If you want to change the folder where backup copies are saved, enable the **Back-up to** check box, and click **Browse** to specify a folder.

## To edit document properties

- 1 Click **File** ► **Document properties**.
- 2 In the **Document properties** dialog box, enter words or phrases for any of the following: Title, Subject, Keywords, Notes, or Author. To specify a rating, choose a rating from the **Rating** list box.
- 3 Click **OK**.

## Exporting images to other file formats

You can export Corel PHOTO-PAINT images to a variety of file formats. When you export an image, the original image is left open in the image window in the existing file format.

The file format you choose depends on how you want to use the image in the future. If you export an image to a file format other than Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT), you may lose some image properties; each file format has its own idiosyncrasies and appropriate use. For example, if you want to work on an image in another image-editing application, you can export it to the Adobe Photoshop (PSD) file format. You retain many image properties, such as **objects** and **masks**, so you can continue to edit the image. If you want to share an image, the Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) or the Windows bitmap (BMP) file format are suitable because they are standard formats; images in these formats can be opened in most image viewers and most image-editing and desktop-publishing applications.

You can also export a file so that it is optimized for office productivity applications, such as Microsoft Office or Corel WordPerfect Office.

You can also export images to web-compatible formats, such as the **JPEG** or **GIF** file formats. For more information, see [“Exporting images for the web” on page 375](#).

For more information about supported file formats, see [“Supported file formats” on page 435](#).

## To export an image to another file format

- 1 Click **File** ► **Export**.
- 2 Choose the folder where you want to save the file.
- 3 Choose a file format from the **Save as type** list box.
- 4 Type a file name in the **File name** list box.  
The file extension for the file format you choose is appended to the file name automatically, but it can be removed.
- 5 Enable any of the following active check boxes:
  - **Selected only** — saves only the **editable areas** defined in the image, when there are no active and selected objects. If there are no editable areas, this option saves only the active and selected objects.
  - **Do not show filter dialog** — suppresses dialog boxes that provide advanced exporting options
- 6 Click **Save**.

### You can also

Compress a file

Choose a compression type from the **Compression type** list box.

The **Compression type** list box is available only when you are saving an image to a file format that can be compressed.

## You can also

Specify information about a file

Type any comments you want in the **Comments** box.



If a dialog box for the export format opens, specify the options you want. For detailed information about file formats, see “Supported file formats” on page 435.

## To export an image to Microsoft Office or Corel WordPerfect Office

- 1 Click **File** ► **Export for** ► **Office**.
- 2 From the **Export to** list box, choose one of the following:
  - **Microsoft Office**
  - **WordPerfect Office**
- 3 Click **OK**.
- 4 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 5 Type a file name in the **File name** list box.
- 6 Click **Save**.



Images are exported at 96 dots per inch (dpi) with color management settings unchanged.

Layers in an image are flattened when the image is exported to Microsoft Office or Corel WordPerfect Office.

## Working with locked files

In a corporate environment you may open a locked file that is already being edited by another user. You can save changes that you make to a locked file in one of the following ways:

- If the other user has modified the file or still has the file open, you must save the file with a new name by clicking **File** ► **Save As**.
- If the other user has closed the file without modifying it, you can save the changes by clicking **File** ► **Save**.

## Closing images

You can close one open image or many open images at any time. If you close images without saving them, your work is lost.

### To close an image

To

Close one open image

Close all open images

Do the following

Click **File** ► **Close** or **Window** ► **Close Window**.

Click **File** ► **Close all** or **Window** ► **Close all**.



If you are unable to close a file, you may have a task, such as printing or saving, in progress or it has failed. Please refer to the status bar to view the status of a task.



Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Finding and managing content

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you access, search and browse the Content Exchange, a collection of clipart, photos, fonts, frames, patterns, and image lists. In addition, you can find content located on your computer, local network, or the website of an online content provider. When you find the content that you need, you can import it into your document, open it in its associated application, or collect it in a tray for future reference.

Corel PHOTO-PAINT is fully integrated with the search capabilities that are offered by Windows 7 and Windows 8. By default, the application searches all locations that Windows Search is configured to index. For information about modifying indexing options in Windows Search, see the Windows Help. Windows Search is available as a free download from the Microsoft Download Center. For more information, visit <http://www.microsoft.com/windows/desktopsearch/downloads/default.mspx>. If you are using another third-party computer indexing and search tool (for example, Google Desktop) or you don't have Windows Search installed, the application has limited search capabilities and lets you search only by filename.

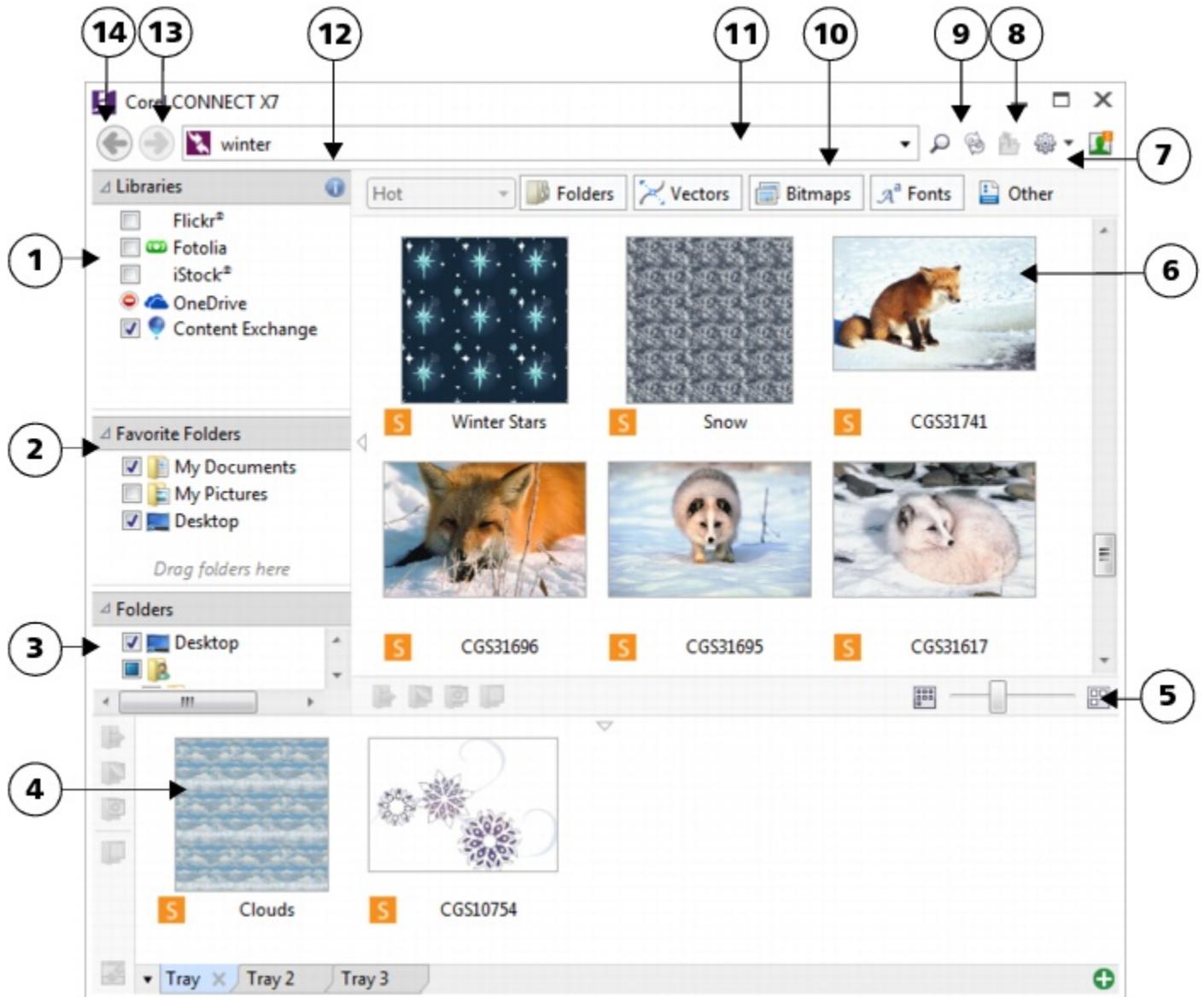
This section contains the following topics:

- "Exploring Corel CONNECT" (page 83)
- "Accessing content" (page 88)
- "Browsing and searching for content" (page 90)
- "Viewing content" (page 92)
- "Using content" (page 93)
- "Installing fonts" (page 95)
- "Managing content" (page 95)
- "Syncing trays with OneDrive" (page 96)
- "Content types" (page 98)

### Exploring Corel CONNECT

You can browse and search for content by using Corel CONNECT. Corel CONNECT is available both as a standalone utility and as a docker. You can choose whichever mode better suits your workflow.

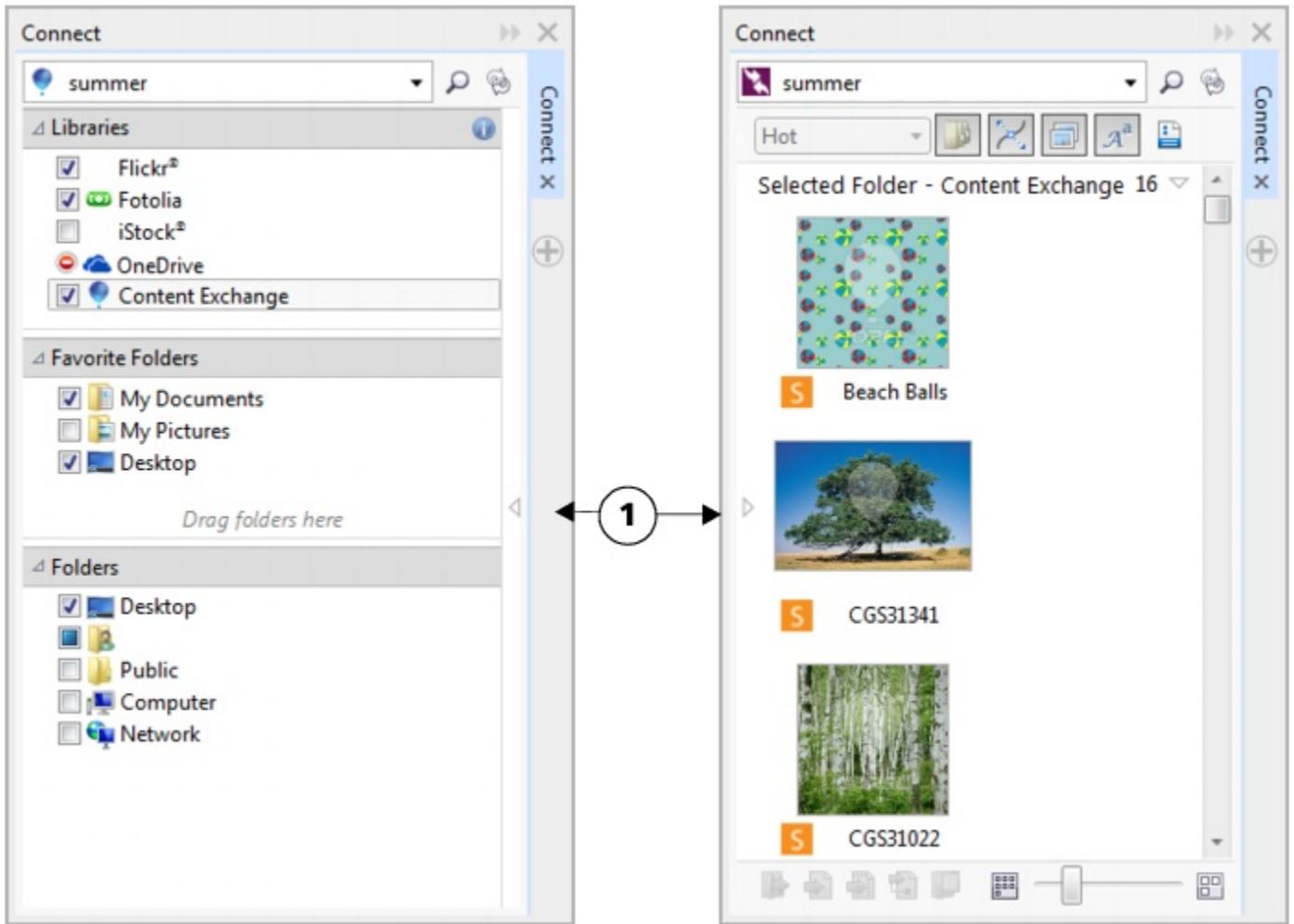
The image below shows the main components of the Corel CONNECT utility:



Part	Description
1. Libraries pane	Lets you access content provided by Corel and Corel partners
2. Favorite folders pane	Provides quick access to frequently used folders
3. Folders pane	Displays a representation of the file structure available on your computer
4. Tray pane	Lets you collect files from one or more folders
5. Zoom slider	Lets you adjust the size of thumbnails in the viewing pane
6. Viewing pane	Lets you view thumbnails of content files
7. Help and options button	Lets you open a menu of commands that allow you to access Help, configure content libraries, set preferences, and view version and license information

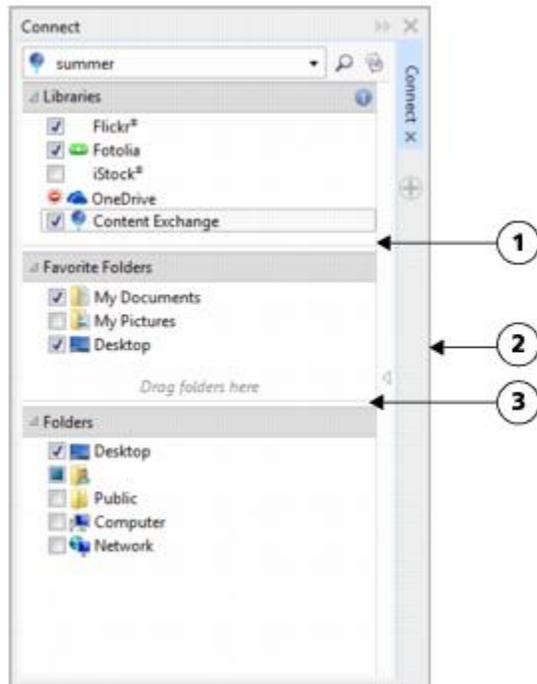
Part	Description
8. Go to parent folder button	Lets you go one level up from the current folder
9. Refresh/Cancel button	Reloads the results from your last search or initiates a new search based on the criteria that you have specified. When a search is in progress, the button changes to the <b>Cancel</b> mode  , which allows you to stop a search at any time.
10. Search and address box	Lets you search for files by using search terms, typing a folder path, or specifying a web address
11. Filter toolbar	Lets you choose which type of content to display in the viewing area: folders, vector images, bitmap images, fonts, or files saved to file formats that are not supported by the suite
12. Configure content libraries button	Lets you activate access to local and online content libraries
13. Navigate forward button	Takes you to the next page of content
14. Navigate back button	Takes you to the previous page of content

In docker mode, the search utility has two components: **Connect** docker and **Tray** docker. The **Connect** docker has two viewing modes: single pane and full view. In full view, all panes are displayed. In single-pane view, either the viewing pane or the **Libraries**, **Favorite folders**, and **Folders** panes are displayed. You can resize the docker to display all panes or toggle between the viewing pane and the **Libraries**, **Favorite folders**, and **Folders** panes.



The Connect dock with the viewing pane hidden (left) and the navigation pane hidden (right).  
Click the toggle arrow (1) to display or hide panes. Resize the dock to display both panes.

You can also customize the size and display of individual panes.



The grab area (1, 2, 3) lets you resize a pane.

You can use the **Favorite folders** pane to create shortcuts to folders that you visit frequently. You can add locations to and remove locations from the **Favorite folders** pane.

## To start Corel CONNECT

### To

Start the standalone utility

### Do the following

Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7) On the **Windows** taskbar, click **Start** ► **All Programs** ► **CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7** ► **Corel CONNECT X7**.
- (Windows 8) Click the **Corel CONNECT** tile on your desktop.

Display or hide the **Connect** dock

In **Corel PHOTO-PAINT**, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Connect**.

Display or hide the **Tray** dock

In **Corel PHOTO-PAINT**, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Tray**.

## To resize a pane

- Point to the pane's grab area, and when the cursor changes to a two-directional arrow, drag the edge of the pane.

## To display or hide a pane

- Click the arrow to toggle between displaying and hiding the pane.

## To add a location to the Favorite Folders pane

- Drag a folder from the **Libraries**, **Folders**, or viewing pane to the **Favorite folders** pane.



You can also add locations to the **Favorite folders** pane by right-clicking a folder in the **Libraries** or **Folders** pane, and clicking **Add to favorites**.

## To remove a location from the Favorite Folders pane

- Right-click a location in the **Favorite folders** pane, and click **Remove from favorites**.

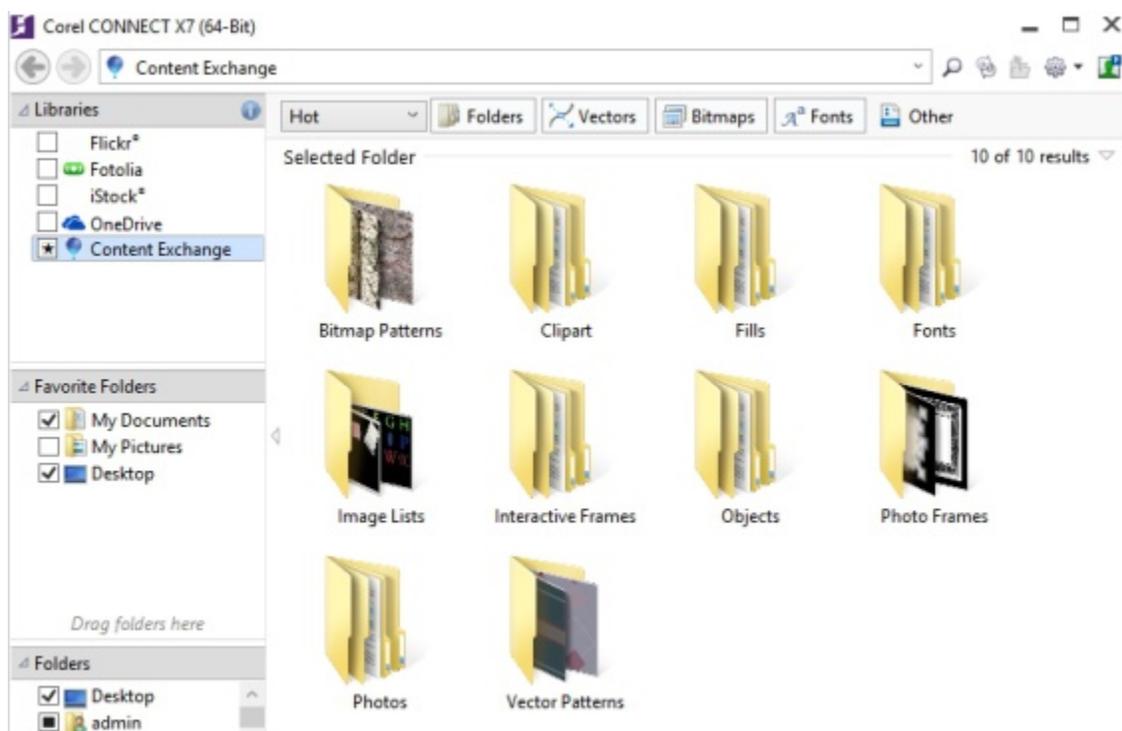
## Accessing content

You can access content available on the Content Exchange or on the websites of online content providers. You can also access content from previous versions of the software that is stored on a CD or DVD.

### Using the Content Exchange

The Content Exchange provides a collection of clipart, photos, fonts, frames, vector and bitmap patterns, and image lists that you can access. You can browse the available content, or you can search by keywords, mark your favorites, vote for content that you like, or copy content from the Content Exchange to your personal folder.

You must sign in to your corel.com account to use content from the Content Exchange.



*You can browse the content available on the Content Exchange.*

### Using content from online content providers

You can find content on the websites of online content providers such as Flickr®, Fotolia, and iStock®. The images that you find online are often subject to usage restrictions and may be watermarked or low-resolution. For information about using such images, see [“Using content” on page 93](#).

Note that online content is unavailable in workplaces with restricted Internet access.

### Using content stored on a CD or DVD

To access clipart and other content included on a CD or DVD from a previous version of the software, you must insert the CD or DVD, or browse to the folder to which you have copied the content.

## To use the Content Exchange

- 1 In the **Libraries** pane, click **Content Exchange**.  
The available folders appear in the viewing pane.
- 2 Double-click a folder to access its content.  
Thumbnail versions of the files appear in the viewing pane.
- 3 Point to a thumbnail to view more information about a file.
- 4 Click a thumbnail.  
A pop-up window appears.
- 5 In the pop-up window, perform an action from the following table.

### To

Search content by keyword

### Do the following

Click one of the keywords associated with a file to perform a search based on that keyword.

Search results include all types of content in the Content Exchange that is tagged with this keyword. To narrow down search results to specific types of content (such as bitmaps, vectors, or fonts), click the corresponding button on the **Filter** toolbar.

Copy fills, pattern, image lists, and photo frames from the Content Exchange to your personal folder

Click the **More options** button , and click the **Copy to personal** button .

The content is copied in the respective folder in the **My Documents \Core\Core Content** folder.

Mark as a favorite

Click the **Favorite** button .

To remove content from your favorites, click the **Unfavorite** button .

Vote to rank content higher or lower

Click the **Vote up**  or the **Vote down** button .

Report inappropriate content

Click the **More options** button , and click the **Flag** button .

Prevent a file from appearing in future searches

Click the **More options** button , and click the **Hide** button .



You must sign in to your corel.com account to use content from the Content Exchange.

## To access a content library stored on a CD or DVD

- Insert the content CD or DVD.

The content library appears in the **Libraries** pane.

## To access a CD or DVD content library that was copied to your computer

- 1 In the **Libraries** pane, click the **Configure content libraries** button .

A warning sign next to a content library shows that it needs to be configured.

2 Click a content library, click **Locate**, and browse to the folder where the library is stored.

The content library appears in the **Libraries** pane.

## Browsing and searching for content

With the Corel CONNECT docker, you can browse for content, or you can search for content by using keywords.

You can browse and search for content in one or multiple locations on your computer or local network as well as online. You can also navigate to previously viewed content.

### Searching for content

You can search by the name, category (for example, clipart, photo images, or fonts), or reference information (for example, tags or notes) associated with a file. When you type a term in the **Search and address** box and initiate a search, all matching files are displayed as thumbnail images in the viewing pane. For example, if you type **flower**, the application automatically filters out all files that do not match and displays only the files that have the word **flower** in the filename, category, or tags assigned to the file. You can also type phrases and multiple words, and you can fine-tune your search by using Boolean operators such as AND, NOT, and OR. For example, you can find content that contains both flower and sun images by typing **flowers AND sun**. For information about adding tags and reference information, see [“To edit document properties” on page 81](#).

To increase the search speed for local content and improve results, you can adjust the Windows Search options by adding more locations to the index.

You can also find all images on a webpage by typing the web address. For example, typing **www.corel.com** displays all the images that appear on the Corel website.

### Refining your search

By default, your search results include all relevant content such as vector graphics, bitmaps, and fonts. You can narrow down the search results by excluding content. For example, if you are searching for graphics, you can display only vector graphics or only bitmaps. If you want to choose a font for your project, you can display only fonts.

You can widen the scope of a search, and you can cancel a search at any time.

### To browse for content

- Click a location in one of the following panes:
  - **Libraries** — lets you browse online and local content
  - **Favorite folders** — lets you browse your favorite locations
  - **Folders** — lets you browse the folder structure available on your computer



You can browse the contents of only one folder at a time.



To specify the location where you want to browse for content, type or paste a path in the **Search and address** box, and press **Enter**. The **Search and address** bar keeps track only of the locations that you enter manually. To delete all locations, click the drop-down arrow, and click **Clear list**.

### To search for content

- 1 Click a location in any of the following panes:
  - **Libraries** — lets you search for online and local content as well as content on a CD or DVD
  - **Favorite folders** — lets you search for content in your favorite locations
  - **Folders** — lets you search for content in the folder structure available on your computer

- 2 Type a word or multiple words in the **Search and address** box, and press **Enter**.  
Files that match the search terms appear in the viewing pane.

If you want to search for a phrase, enclose the phrase with quotation marks.

**You can also**

Search for content in multiple locations

Enable the check boxes for the libraries and folders that you want to search, and click the **Refresh** button .

Show or hide search results for a location

In the viewing pane, click the **Show/Hide** arrow to the right of the location.

Specify how many online search results to display

Click an online content provider in the **Libraries** pane, and choose a number from the **Search results** list box. This number determines the initial number of search results that are displayed in the viewing pane, as well as the additional results that are displayed each time you click **More from**.

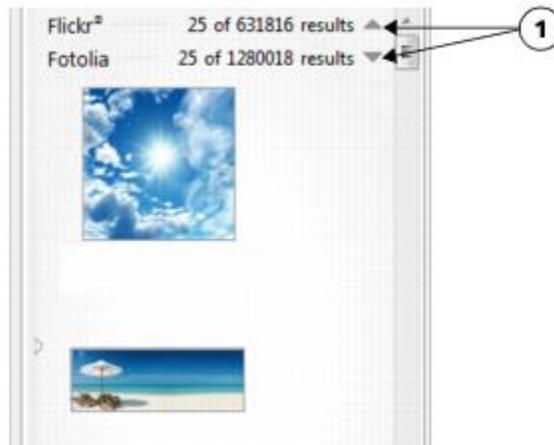
Fine-tune a search by using Boolean operators

Type one of the following Boolean operators between the search terms:

**AND** — lets you find content that contains all search terms in the **Search and address** box. Instead of **AND**, you can also use the plus sign (+).

**NOT** — lets you exclude content that contains the search term after **NOT**. Instead of **NOT**, you can also use the minus sign (-).

**OR** — lets you find content that contains at least one of the search terms



Clicking a **Show/Hide** arrow (1) lets you show or hide the search results for a specific location.



When you search for online content, only vector files and bitmaps are included in the search results.



If you want to browse the folder where a file is stored or access the source webpage of an image, right-click the file, and click **Open source location**.

## To find all images on a webpage

- Type a web address (for example, [www.corel.com](http://www.corel.com)) in the **Search and address** box.

## To refine your search

- On the **Filter** toolbar, click one of the following buttons:
  - **Folders**  — to hide or display folders in selected folders
  - **Vector drawing files**  — to hide or display vector graphics that are supported by the suite
  - **Bitmap files**  — to hide or display bitmaps that are supported by the suite
  - **Font files**  — to hide or display TrueType (TTF), OpenType (OTF), and PostScript fonts (PFB and PFM)
  - **Other files**  — to hide or display file formats that are not supported by the suite



A category is included in the search results if the button appears pressed.

## To navigate to previously viewed content

- Click the **Navigate back**  or **Navigate forward**  button.



You can also go back to the previous search results by pressing **Backspace**.

You can also navigate to previously viewed content by clicking the **Search and address** bar drop-down arrow and choosing a location from the list. The **Search and address** bar keeps track only of the locations that you enter manually.

## To stop a search

- Click the **Cancel search** button .

## Viewing content

Clipart, photos, and fonts appear in the viewing pane as thumbnail images. You can select individual, multiple, or all thumbnails.

By positioning your pointer over a thumbnail, you can display a larger preview. You can also display file information such as filename, file size, image resolution, and color mode for content that was not provided by an online content provider. You can also preview the fonts that you find. Thumbnail zooming makes recognizing a particular file easier and faster.

### To select a thumbnail

- Click a thumbnail.

### You can also

Select multiple thumbnails

Do one of the following:

- Drag around the thumbnails that you want to select.
- Hold down **Ctrl**, and in the viewing pane click the thumbnails that you want to select.
- Click a thumbnail, and holding down **Shift**, click the last thumbnail in the range that you want to select.

Select all thumbnails

Press **Ctrl + A**.

## To view file information

- Hover over a thumbnail.

## To preview a font

- Double-click a font thumbnail.



You can also preview a font by right-clicking a font thumbnail and clicking **Open**.

## To adjust the size of thumbnails

- Drag the **Zoom** slider to the left to decrease the size of the thumbnails, or to the right to increase the size of the thumbnails.

## Using content

If you want to view or edit a file before you incorporate it into your project, you can open it in CorelDRAW, Corel PHOTO-PAINT, or its associated application.

You can insert and place content in your document. Images that are obtained from online sources, such as iStock and Fotolia, may be subject to copyright and usage restrictions. Such images, also referred to as “comp images,” are often low-resolution or watermarked. To use comp images, you must first check with the owner if you have rights to use them and purchase them if necessary. Then, you can replace the comp images in your document with the purchased images. You can view a list of all comp images in a document.

In addition, in Corel CONNECT, you can perform many tasks (such as renaming, printing, compressing, emailing, and faxing files) that are available through the Windows operating system. Right-click a file in the viewing pane, and choose a command.

## To open a file

- Select a thumbnail, and perform an action from the following table.

### To

Open a file by using the Corel CONNECT utility

### Do the following

Click one of the following buttons:

- **Open**  — lets you open a file in the application it is associated with or navigate to the source webpage of an online image
- **Open in CorelDRAW** or **Import in CorelDRAW**  — lets you open or import a file in CorelDRAW
- **Open in Corel PHOTO-PAINT**  — lets you open a file in Corel PHOTO-PAINT

Open a file by using the **Connect** docker

Do one of the following:

- In full view, click the **Open** button .
- In single pane view, click the **File commands** button , and click **Open**.

Open a file by using the **Tray** docker

Click the **Open** button .



You can also open a file by right-clicking it and choosing the option that you want.

You can also open multiple selected files.

## To insert a file into an active document

### To

Insert a file into an active document by using the Corel CONNECT utility

Insert a file into an active document by using the **Connect** docker

### Do the following

Drag a file from the **Tray** or viewing pane to the active document.

Do one of the following:

- Drag a file from the viewing pane of the **Connect** docker to the active document.
- In single-pane view, select a file in the viewing pane, click the **File commands** button , click **Import**, and click in your document.
- In full view, select a file in the viewing pane, click the **Import** button , and click in your document.

Insert a file into an active document by using the **Tray** docker

Select the file and click the **Import**  button in the **Tray** docker.

Insert and place a vector graphic in a document

- Drag to place and resize the graphic.
- Press **Enter** to center the graphic on page.
- Press **Spacebar** to place the vector graphic at the original position where it was created relative to the page.



You can also insert a file into an active document by dragging the file from the viewing pane or the **Tray** docker to the active document.

You can also insert a file into an active document by right-clicking the file in the viewing pane and choosing an import command.

You can also insert multiple selected files.

## To check, purchase, and replace a comp image

- 1 In your document, right-click a comp image, and click **Open comp source**.
- 2 On the website of the online content provider, check the copyright and usage restrictions for the image, and purchase it if necessary.
- 3 In your document, right-click a comp image, and click **Replace comp**.
- 4 Navigate to the purchased image, and click **Import**.



Transformations, such as scaling, rotating, and resizing, that were applied to the comp image are preserved in the final image. However, special effects and image adjustments are not preserved.



You can also access the **Open comp source** and **Replace comp** commands by right-clicking a comp image.

## To view a list of all comp images in a document

- Open a document, and do one of the following:
  - Click **File** ► **Print**, click the **Preflight (Issues)** tab, and click **Some images may be subject to copyright and usage restrictions**.
  - Click **File** ► **Document properties**.



You can also view a list of all comp images in the preflight summaries when you export a document as a PDF file.

## Installing fonts

You can install the fonts that you find.

For information about finding fonts, see [“To browse for content” on page 90](#) and [“To search for content” on page 90](#).

### To install a font

- 1 In Corel CONNECT or the **Connect** docker, browse to or search for the font that you want to install.
- 2 In the viewing pane, right-click the font thumbnail, and click **Install**.

A check mark appears in the lower-right corner of the font thumbnail to show that the font is installed.



To install a font from the Content Exchange collection, you must have a CorelDRAW membership and sign in to your corel.com account. To install a Premium font, you must have a Premium membership.



To uninstall a font, right-click the font thumbnail, and click **Uninstall**.

## Managing content

You can organize your content by using trays or by adding content files to specific folders on your computer.

A tray is useful for gathering content from various folders. While the files are referenced in the tray, they actually remain in their original location. You can add and remove content from the tray. The tray is shared between CorelDRAW, Corel PHOTO-PAINT, and Corel CONNECT. You can also open files from the tray to preview them more easily.

You can create trays so that you can organize your content. Trays are saved to the **My Documents\Coreel\Coreel Content\Trays** folder, but you can change the default folder to which trays are saved.

You can rename trays to give them meaningful names. When working with multiple trays, you can close some trays temporarily to avoid clutter. You can easily reopen a tray when you need it. In addition, you can load a tray file that is not listed among the available trays. You can delete a tray at any time.

### To add content to a tray

- Select one or more thumbnails in the viewing pane, and drag them to the tray.

If you want to open a file from the tray, double-click its thumbnail.



You can also drag content from a folder on your computer to the tray.

### To add content to a folder

- Select one or more thumbnails in the viewing area, and drag them to a folder in the **Favorite folders** or **Folders** pane, or any other folder on your computer.



You can drag content from the tray to a folder.

## To remove content from a tray

- Select one or more thumbnails in the tray, and click the **Remove from tray** button .

## To create a tray

- Click the **Add new tray** button  in the lower-right corner of the tray pane.

By default, trays are saved to the **My Documents\Corel\Corel Content\Trays** folder.



You can email trays that contain only online content.

## To change the folder to which trays are saved

- 1 In the standalone utility, click the arrow on the **Help and options** button, and click **Options**.
- 2 Type a path in the **Default tray location** box.



To browse to a folder, click the **Browse** button next to the **Default tray location** box.

## To work with trays

To	Do the following
Select a tray	Click the tray tab.
Rename a tray	Right-click the tray tab, click <b>Rename</b> , and type a new name.
Open a tray	Click the <b>All trays</b> arrow, and click a tray. An open tray has a check mark beside its name.
Close a tray	Right-click the tray tab, and click <b>Close</b> .
Load a tray file	Click the <b>All trays</b> arrow, click <b>Open tray file</b> , and navigate to the tray file.
Navigate through multiple trays	Holding down <b>Ctrl</b> , press <b>Tab</b> .
Delete a tray	Right-click the tray tab, and click <b>Delete</b> .

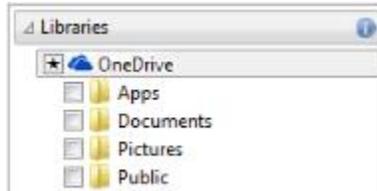


You can also close and delete a selected tray from the **All trays** menu.

## Syncing trays with OneDrive

You can sync your trays with OneDrive and have access to your content from other computers or mobile devices. You must have a OneDrive account to use this feature. After you sign in, you can see all your OneDrive folders in the **Libraries** pane in Corel CONNECT and view their content in the viewing pane.

When you delete files from the trays, the files are also deleted from OneDrive when the trays are synced.



After you sign in, your OneDrive folders appear in the Libraries pane.

Trays are stored in **My Documents\Coreel\Coreel Content\Trays**. Each tray is stored as a separate folder. If the trays have never been synced with OneDrive, each tray folder contains shortcuts to the files that have been added to the tray, while the actual files remain in their original location. However, when you sync the trays with OneDrive, all files added to the trays are copied from their original location to the respective tray folder.

When you sync trays with OneDrive, the synced files appear in the following OneDrive folder: **OneDrive\Apps\Coreel\Trays**.

### To sync trays with OneDrive

- 1 In Corel CONNECT or the **Connect** docker, click **OneDrive** in the **Libraries** pane.
- 2 Sign in when prompted.  
The first time you sign in, you are asked to grant Corel Cloud Service access to your account. You can always change this setting by logging into OneDrive online and specifying which applications have access to your account.
- 3 When asked whether you want to enable Tray Sync, click **Yes**.
- 4 Make sure that the **Enable Tray Sync with OneDrive on this computer** check box is enabled, and choose an option from the **Sync frequency** list box.

Your OneDrive folders and content appear in the viewing pane.

### You can also

Upload files to OneDrive

Drag the files from the viewing pane or from the desktop to a OneDrive folder.

You can also drag files to a tray. If the trays are synced, the files in the tray are automatically uploaded to OneDrive.

Import files from OneDrive into your document

Select the file in the viewing pane, and click the **Import** button , or drag the file to an open CorelDRAW or Corel PHOTO-PAINT document.

Remove files from a synced OneDrive folder

Select the file in the tray, and click the **Remove from tray** button .

When the tray is synced, the file is removed from the synced location in OneDrive.

If you delete a file from a synced OneDrive folder, the file from the local tray folder is moved to the Recycle Bin when the trays are synced.

Access OneDrive online

In the viewing pane, right-click a OneDrive file or folder, and choose **Open source location** from the context menu.

OneDrive opens in a browser, where you can manage your OneDrive files and folders.

View the properties of a file in a OneDrive folder

Right-click the file, and then click **Properties**.

## You can also

View the properties of a OneDrive folder

Right-click an empty space in the viewing pane, and then click **Properties**.

Sign out of OneDrive

In the **Libraries** pane, click the **Configure content libraries** button , and click **Sign out** in the **OneDrive** area.



If trays are syncing and there is a conflict between two files with the same name, both files are kept, and a number is appended to the name of the second file.

If you do not enable Tray Sync, you can still see your OneDrive folders in Corel CONNECT and upload or download files.



The tray tab icons indicate the sync status of the tray: offline , error , syncing , or synced .

You can enable and disable Tray Sync directly from the Tray docker by clicking the **All trays** arrow in the lower-left corner and then clicking **Synchronize with** ► **OneDrive**.

## Content types

Content types include fonts, clipart, photos, interactive frames, vector patterns, bitmap patterns, photo frames, image lists, and others.

### Sample fonts

Lorem ipsum

Loren ipsum

### Sample clipart



### Sample photos



### Sample interactive frames



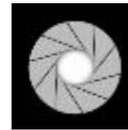
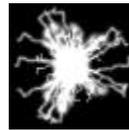
Sample vector patterns



Sample bitmap patterns



Sample photo frames



Sample image lists







Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Collaborating

You can share designs and ideas with clients and co-workers in a web-based environment by using ConceptShare™. You can create multiple workspaces, upload your designs, and invite others to post comments.

### Using ConceptShare

You can access ConceptShare from Corel PHOTO-PAINT by opening a ConceptShare account. After you log into your account and create one or more workspaces, you can upload your document to one of the workspaces you have created. Each workspace can contain multiple documents or designs. You can then invite others to one or more of your workspaces. Each workspace has separate user permissions, and the people who have access to a workspace have access to all documents within that workspace.

Each person who has permission to enter your workspace can view and mark up elements of the design you have posted. Users can also write comments, or respond to previous comments posted by others. If multiple users are logged in at the same time, they can interact in real time, providing instant feedback. For more information, visit the ConceptShare website.

#### To open a ConceptShare account

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **ConceptShare**.  
The **ConceptShare** docker opens.
- 2 Click the **Sign up** button.
- 3 Follow the instructions.



The ConceptShare online content may not be available in all languages. Some languages that are currently unavailable may become available in the future.

#### To log into ConceptShare

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **ConceptShare**.  
The **ConceptShare** docker opens.
- 2 Type your email address and password in the text boxes.
- 3 Click the **Submit** button.



The ConceptShare online content may not be available in all languages. Some languages that are currently unavailable may become available in the future.



You can also access your ConceptShare account online at the ConceptShare website.

### To publish the current image to a ConceptShare workspace

- 1 Make sure you are logged into your ConceptShare account.  
If you have logged in from a browser and you want to publish a document from Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you must log in again from Corel PHOTO-PAINT.
- 2 Click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ ConceptShare**.  
The **ConceptShare** docker opens.
- 3 Choose a workspace, and click the **Publish image** link.



You can also publish the current document to a workspace by clicking **File ▶ Publish image to ConceptShare**.

## Editing images

Changing image dimensions, resolution, and paper size.....	105
Cropping, stitching, scaling, and changing orientation.....	109
Retouching.....	119
Adjusting color and tone.....	131
Working with lenses.....	147
Reshaping image areas.....	153





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Changing image dimensions, resolution, and paper size

You can change the dimensions and [resolution](#) of an image. You can also change the size of the paper border that surrounds an image.

This section contains the following topics:

- “[Changing image dimensions](#)” (page 105)
- “[Changing image resolution](#)” (page 106)
- “[Changing paper size](#)” (page 107)

You can also change the size of an image by removing unwanted areas, or by joining multiple images. For more information, see “[Cropping, stitching, scaling, and changing orientation](#)” on page 109.

### Changing image dimensions

You can change the physical dimensions of images by increasing or decreasing their height and width. When you increase image dimensions, the application inserts new [pixels](#) between existing pixels, and their colors are based on the colors of adjacent pixels. If you increase image dimensions significantly, images may appear stretched and [pixelated](#).

The size of the image on your screen depends on the pixel height and width of the image, on the [zoom](#) level, and on your monitor settings. As a result, an image may display as a different size on your screen than when it is printed.



You can change the height and width of an image without changing the resolution. Left to right: image with smaller dimensions, original image, image with larger dimensions.

## To change the dimensions of an image

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Resample**.
- 2 Enable any of the following check boxes:
  - **Anti-alias** — smooths the edges in the image
  - **Maintain aspect ratio** — avoids distortion by maintaining the width-to-height ratio of the image
- 3 In the **Image size** area, type values in one of the following pairs of boxes:
  - **Width** and **Height** — let you specify the image dimensions
  - **Width %** and **Height %** — let you resize the image to a percentage of its original size



When you change the dimensions of an image, you produce better results using width and height values that are factors of the original values. For example, reducing image size by 50% produces a better-looking image than reducing image size by 77%. When reducing an image by 50%, the application removes every other pixel; to reduce an image by 77%, the application must remove pixels irregularly.

## Changing image resolution

You can change the **resolution** of an image to increase or decrease its file size. Resolution is measured by the number of dots per inch (dpi) when the image is printed. The resolution you choose depends on how the image is output. Typically, images created only for display on computer monitors are 96 or 72 dpi and images created for the web are 72 dpi. Images created for printing on desktop printers are generally 150 dpi, while professionally printed images are usually 300 dpi or higher.

### Increasing resolution

Higher-resolution images contain smaller and more densely packed pixels than lower-resolution images. Upsampling increases the resolution of an image by adding more pixels per unit of measure. Image quality may be reduced because the new pixels are interpolated based on the colors of neighboring pixels; the original pixel information is simply spread out. You cannot use upsampling to create detail and subtle color gradations where none existed in the original image. When you increase image resolution, the image size increases on your screen; by default the image maintains its original size when printed.

You can also use the PhotoZoom plug-in to upsample digital images, which lets you create sharper and clearer image magnifications.

### Decreasing resolution

Downsampling decreases the resolution of an image by removing a specific number of pixels per unit of measure. This method produces better results than upsampling. Best results are usually achieved when downsampling is done after correcting an image's color and tone but before sharpening. For more information about correcting and sharpening images, see [“Adjusting color and tone” on page 131](#) and [“Retouching” on page 119](#).



You can change the resolution and size of an image at the same time.  
Left to right: downsampled image, original image, upsampled image.

## To change the resolution of an image

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Resample**.
- 2 Enable any of the following check boxes:
  - **Identical values** — sets the same value in the **Horizontal** and **Vertical** boxes
  - **Anti-alias** — smooths the edges in the image
  - **Maintain original size** — maintains the size of the file on your hard disk when you change the resolution of the image
- 3 In the **Resolution** area, type values in the following boxes:
  - **Horizontal**
  - **Vertical**



If you **resample** an image using **pixels** as the unit of measure, the size of the image also changes.

The **Identical values** check box is grayed if the **Maintain aspect ratio** check box is enabled.

## To access PhotoZoom

- 1 Click **File** ► **Export for** ► **PhotoZoom Pro 2**.
- 2 Follow the instructions in the PhotoZoom Pro 2 - Unlock dialog box.



For more detailed information about using PhotoZoom, consult the PhotoZoom help.

## Changing paper size

Changing the paper size lets you modify the dimensions of the printable area, which contains both the image and the paper. When you resize the paper, you increase or decrease the paper-colored border, but not the dimensions of the original image. However, if you reduce the paper size so that its height and width are smaller than the dimensions of the original image, the original image will be **cropped**.



*You can change the size of the paper that surrounds the original image.*

### To change the paper size

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Paper size**.
- 2 Choose a unit of measure from the list box beside the **Width** box.
- 3 Type values in the following boxes:
  - **Width**
  - **Height**

If you want to lock the paper size ratio, click **Lock** .



# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Cropping, stitching, scaling, and changing orientation

You can [crop](#) an image to remove unwanted areas or combine multiple images to create a single, large image. You can also scale an image by using Smart Carver™, or change the orientation of an image by flipping or rotating it.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Cropping images” (page 109)
- “Stitching images together” (page 111)
- “Scaling images by using Smart Carver” (page 112)
- “Straightening images” (page 114)
- “Rotating and flipping images” (page 116)

### Cropping images

You can [crop](#) an image to remove unwanted areas and improve its composition. You can select a rectangular area that you want to keep, and then you can discard the rest. As a result, you reduce the file size of an image without affecting its [resolution](#).



*Cropping lets you remove unwanted image areas.*

You can also easily crop a single-color border surrounding an image, such as a white edge surrounding an old photograph.

Corel PHOTO-PAINT also lets you crop around the [editable area](#) of a [mask](#); however, the resulting image is always rectangular. For information about masks, see “[Working with masks](#)” on page 223.

You can also change the size of an image without removing or adding image areas by changing the image dimensions and [resolution](#). For more information, see “[Changing image dimensions, resolution, and paper size](#)” on page 105.

## To crop an image

- 1 Click the **Crop** tool .
- 2 Drag to select an area on the image.
- 3 Double-click inside the cropping area.

### You can also

Enlarge or reduce the cropping area

Drag the cropping handles.

Move the cropping area

Click and drag inside the cropping area to reposition it.

Rotate the cropping area to straighten it

Click inside the cropping area to display the rotation handles .  
Drag the rotation handles to align the cropping area with the image area you want to crop.

Expand the cropping area outside the original image

Click **Image** ▶ **Crop** ▶ **Expand cropping area**, and drag a cropping handle outside the image.

Change the resolution of the cropping area

Choose a value from the **Crop resolution** list box on the property bar.

This setting lets you set a new resolution for the cropped image. For example, you can crop a high-quality photo to the size you want and change the resolution to 96 dpi so that the cropped photo is ready for web use.

Change the orientation of the cropping area

Click the **Change orientation** button  on the property bar.



You can hide the [crop](#) overlay to view the image you are cropping more clearly by clicking **Image** ▶ **Crop** ▶ **Crop overlay**.

You can also crop an image area by clicking the **Crop** tool and typing values in the **Size** and **Position** boxes on the property bar.

## To crop a border color from an image

- 1 Click **Image** ▶ **Crop** ▶ **Crop border color**.
- 2 Enable one of the following options:
  - **Background**— crops the color specified in the **Background** color swatch  in the color control area of the toolbox
  - **Foreground** — crops the color specified in the **Foreground** color swatch  in the color control area of the toolbox
  - **Other** — crops the color you choose using the color picker or the **Eyedropper** tool 
- 3 In the **Tolerance** area, enable one of the following options:
  - **Normal** — determines the [color tolerance](#) based on the similarity of [hue](#) values between adjacent [pixels](#)
  - **HSB mode** — determines the color tolerance based on the similarity of hue, saturation, and brightness levels between adjacent pixels
- 4 Move the **Tolerance** slider to set the tolerance for the color that you want to crop.

You may need to experiment with different **Tolerance** slider positions to successfully remove the border color.

## To crop to an editable area of a mask

- 1 Define an [editable area](#) on an image.
- 2 Click **Image** ▶ **Crop** ▶ **Crop Image to mask**.



For more information about defining [editable areas](#), see [“Working with masks”](#) on page 223.

## Stitching images together

Image stitching allows you to seamlessly join 2D images. For instance, you can scan a large image in smaller, overlapping pieces and reassemble them.



*You can stitch images together to create a single, large image. This image has been scanned in four sections and stitched.*

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can stitch multiple images interactively. You can select, move, and rotate the images, as well as change your view of them to allow more precise positioning. As you position the images, overlapping areas will turn black to signal that you have aligned the edges correctly. You can then save the stitched images as a single, flattened image, or as [objects](#) that you can continue to edit individually.

You can stitch images in all [color modes](#) except [black-and-white](#), [duotone](#), 16-bit [grayscale](#), 48-bit [RGB](#), and [multichannel](#). If the selected images use the same color mode, except [paletted](#) color mode, the new file will use that color mode as well. If the selected files use a different color mode, or are all [paletted](#) color mode, the new file uses [RGB](#) color mode. For more information about color modes, see [“Changing color modes”](#) on page 179.

## To stitch images together

- 1 Open the images you want to stitch together.
- 2 Click **Image** ▶ **Stitch**.
- 3 Choose a filename from the **Source files** list, and click **Add**.  
If you want to select all open images, click **Add all**.
- 4 To change the position of an image in the **Selected files** list, click a filename, and click one of the following buttons:
  - **Up** button 
  - **Down** button 
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 In the **Image stitch** dialog box, click the **Selection** tool .
- 7 In the image stitch window, drag an image to align it with another image.  
Repeat to align all images.

- 8 Type a value in the **Blend image** list box to define the number of overlapping **pixels** used to blend images together.
- 9 Enable one of the following options:
  - **Combine to background** — creates a single, flattened image
  - **Create objects from images**— creates a stitched image in which each source image becomes a separate object. You can later adjust the **brightness** and **contrast** of each **object** so they match.

**You can also**

View image alignment

Click the **Difference** tool . Overlapping image areas are highlighted; correctly aligned image edges display as black.

Rotate one or more selected images

Click the **Rotate** tool , and drag an image. If you want to rotate an image by a precise angle, type a value in the **Rotate image** box.

Zoom in to inspect an area where images join

Click the **Zoom in** tool , and click where you want a close-up view.

Zoom out

Click the **Zoom out** tool , and click the image.

View areas outside the image stitch window

Click the **Pan** tool , and drag an image.



Stitched images that are flattened have a smaller file size than stitched images containing separate objects.



Use the **Arrow** keys with the **Selection** tool, the **Rotate** tool, and the **Pan** tool to move, rotate and view images precisely in the image stitch window.

## Scaling images by using Smart Carver

Smart Carver lets you make an image narrower, wider, shorter, or longer without distorting the content. By automatically detecting and removing image areas that have little structural detail, or by inserting background pixels, this feature lets you change the aspect ratio without noticeably changing the image. You can also specify which image areas are to be preserved or removed, regardless of their level of detail.



*Smart Carver lets you selectively remove or protect areas when you scale an image.*

You can also scale an image by using the Resample feature. For more information, see [“Changing image dimensions, resolution, and paper size” on page 105](#).

### To scale an image by using Smart Carver

- 1 Choose **Image** ► **Smart Carver**.

2 In the **Smart carving** area, perform one or more tasks from the following table, and click **OK**.

The preview window displays the results of your actions.

**To**

Set the image width, in pixels

**Do the following**

Specify a value in the **Width** box.

The minimum width is 10% of the width of the original image. The maximum width is double the width of the original image.

Set the image height, in pixels

Specify a value in the **Height** box.

The minimum height is 10% of the height of the original image. The maximum height is double the height of the original image.

Reduce the image width in small increments

Click the **Contract the image horizontally** button  until the image is the desired width.

Reduce the image height in small increments

Click the **Contract the image vertically** button  until the image is the desired height.

Increase the image width in small increments

Click the **Expand the image horizontally** button  until the image is the desired width.

Increase the image height in small increments

Click the **Expand the image vertically** button  until the image is the desired height.



You can also save the current settings in the **Smart carver** dialog box by clicking the **Save preset** button , and specifying a name in the **Setting name** box.

**To remove an area as you scale an image**

1 Choose **Image** ► **Smart carver**.

2 In the **Object removal** area, click the **Remove** button , and specify the brush size in the **Nib size** box.

3 In the preview window, paint over the image areas that you want to remove.  
A red overlay appears over the selected areas.

4 Click the **Auto-contract horizontally**  or the **Auto-contract vertically**  button to scale the image and simultaneously remove the area covered by the red overlay.

5 Click the **Background fusion** button to smooth over the region where the area was cut out and the remaining parts merged.

**You can also**

Protect an image area

Click the **Preserve** button , and paint over the image area that you want to protect. A green overlay appears over the selected area.

Adjust the area to be protected or removed by deleting parts of the selection overlay

Click the **Eraser** button , and drag over those parts of the selection overlay that you want to delete.

Hide the selection overlay in the preview window

Enable the **Hide mask** check box.

Discard changes to the image and start all over

Click **Reset**.

You can also

Undo the last brush stroke or eraser stroke

Reverse the last Undo operation

Zoom in or out

View an area that falls outside the preview window

Display an image at its actual size

Fit an image in the preview window

Click the **Undo** button .

Click the **Redo** button .

Click the **Zoom in**  or **Zoom out**  buttons, and click in the preview window.

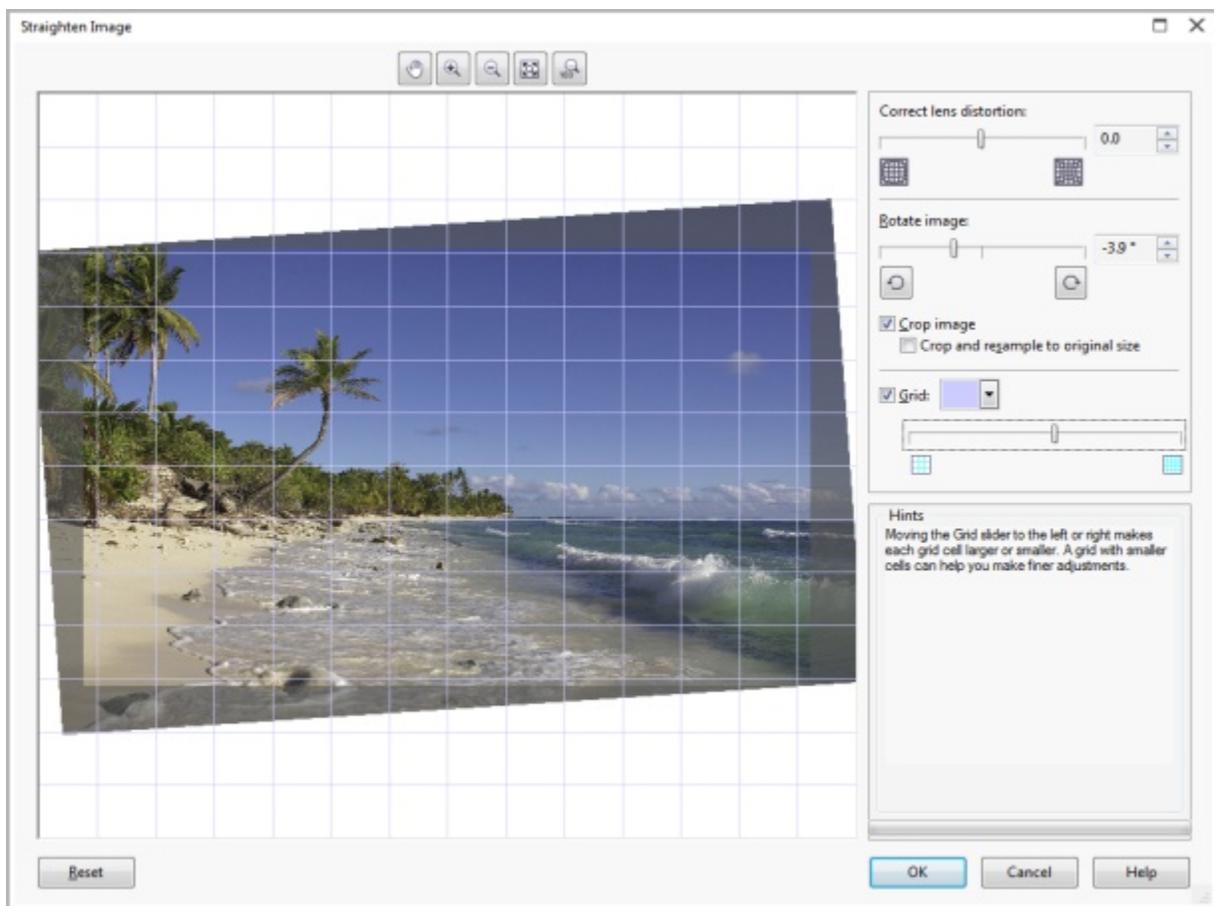
Click the **Pan** button , and drag in the preview window.

Click the **Zoom to 100%** button .

Click the **Zoom to fit** button .

## Straightening images

The **Straighten image** dialog box lets you correct lens distortions and straighten bitmap images quickly. This feature is useful for straightening photos that were taken or scanned at an angle or contain lens distortions.



*Straighten image dialog box*

## Correcting camera lens distortions

With photos that contain camera lens distortions, it is recommended that you start with correcting the lens distortion. You can correct two types of lens distortions, which make straight lines in photos appear curved: barrel and pincushion. Barrel distortions make photos appear pushed out at the center. Pincushion distortions make photos appear pushed in at the center.

## Rotating and previewing

The **Straighten image** dialog box lets you rotate an image by moving a slider, typing a rotation angle, or using the arrow keys. You can specify a custom rotation angle from -15 to 15 degrees.

You can use the preview window to dynamically preview the adjustments that you are making. If you want to change the orientation of the image before straightening it, you can start by rotating the image 90 degrees clockwise and 90 degrees counterclockwise.

A grid is displayed in the preview window to help you straighten the image. You can make more precise adjustments by controlling the cell size of the grid. To heighten the contrast of the grid against the colors of the image, you can change the grid's color. You can also hide the grid if you want to preview the final result without the gridlines. In addition, you can zoom in and out, and pan the image in the preview window to evaluate the results.

## Cropping

By default, the straightened image is cropped to the cropping area that is displayed in the preview window. The final image has the same aspect ratio as the original image, but it has smaller dimensions. However, you can preserve the original width and height of the image by cropping and resampling the image.

You can also produce an image at an angle by disabling cropping and then using the **Crop** tool to crop the image in the drawing window. When cropping is disabled, the straightened image appears against the background color.

## To straighten an image

- 1 Click **Adjust ▶ Straighten image**.

If the image has a lens distortion, move the **Correct lens distortion** slider to the left to correct a barrel distortion or to the right to correct a pincushion distortion.

- 2 Move the **Rotate image** slider, or type a value between **15** and **-15** in the **Rotate image** box.

- 3 If necessary, move the **Grid** slider to adjust the size of the grid cells.

- 4 To crop and straighten the image, enable the **Crop image** check box.

The image is cropped to preserve the aspect ratio of the original image, which means that the final image is smaller than the original image.

If you want to preserve the width and height of the original image, enable the **Crop and resample to original size** check box. The final image is resampled.

## You can also

Change the grid color

Choose a color from the **Grid** color picker.

Align an image area with a gridline

Using the **Pan** tool , drag the image until the area is aligned with the gridline.

You can use the **Pan** tool only after you zoom in on the image.

Rotate the image 90 degrees in either direction

Click the **Rotate counterclockwise**  button or the **Rotate clockwise** button .

Hide or display the grid

Disable or enable the **Grid** check box.

## You can also

Adjust the rotation angle by 0.1-degree increments

Reset the image to its original orientation

Zoom in or out

Fit an image in the preview window

Display an image at its actual size

Click in the **Rotate image** box, and press the **Up arrow** or **Down arrow** key.

Click **Reset**.

Using the **Zoom in**  or **Zoom out**  tool, click in the preview window.

Click the **Zoom to fit**  button.

Click the **100%**  button.



Although a duotone image is displayed as a grayscale image in the preview window of the **Straighten image** dialog box, the final image is duotone.

## Rotating and flipping images

You can change the orientation of an image by flipping or rotating it in the image window. You can flip an image horizontally or vertically to reposition a scanned image or to create unique effects.

When you rotate an image, you can specify the angle and direction of rotation, as well as the paper color that is visible after the image is rotated.



*You can mirror an image by flipping it.*

### To flip an image

- Click **Image** ► **Flip**, and click one of the following:
  - **Horizontally**
  - **Vertically**

### To rotate an image

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Rotate** ► **Custom**.
- 2 Type a value in the **Angle** box.
- 3 Enable one of the following options:
  - **Clockwise**
  - **Counterclockwise**
- 4 Enable any of the following check boxes:
  - **Maintain original image size** — maintains the size of the original image

- **Anti-aliasing** — smooths the edges in the image

5 Open the **Background** color picker, and click a color.



You can rotate an image by clicking **Image ▶ Rotate**, and clicking **90° Clockwise**, **90° Counterclockwise**, or **180°**.



*You can rotate an image to change its orientation.*





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Retouching

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you retouch images to improve their quality or modify their contents.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Improving scanned images” (page 119)
- “Removing red-eye” (page 120)
- “Removing dust and scratch marks” (page 121)
- “Cloning image areas” (page 123)
- “Sharpening images” (page 125)
- “Removing artifacts and noise from JPEG images” (page 126)
- “Erasing image areas” (page 126)
- “Smearing, smudging, and blending colors” (page 128)

### Improving scanned images

You can remove lines from scanned or interlaced video images. These lines can be filled with copies of adjacent lines of [pixels](#), or with colors derived from surrounding pixels. You can also remove [moiré](#) or noise. Moiré is the wave pattern produced when halftone screens of two different frequencies are superimposed on the same image. Noise is the speckled effect produced by scanning or video-capturing.



*You can remove lines from a scanned image using the Deinterlace filter.*

## To improve scanned images

### To

Remove moiré

Remove noise

Remove lines

### Do the following

Click **Effects** ▶ **Noise** ▶ **Remove moire**, and specify the settings you want.

Click **Effects** ▶ **Noise** ▶ **Remove noise**, and specify the settings you want.

Click **Image** ▶ **Transform** ▶ **Deinterlace**.

## Removing red-eye

You can remove the red-eye effect from the eyes of subjects in photos. Red-eye occurs when light from a flash reflects off the back of a person's eye.



*You can remove red-eye from photos.*

### To remove red-eye

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Red-eye removal** tool .
- 2 Type a value in the **Nib size** box to match the brush size to the eye.
- 3 Click the eye to remove the red **pixels**.

### You can also

Change the tolerance level

Change the brush shape

Adjust the transparency of the brushstroke

Adjust the feathering of the brushstroke

Use the pressure of a digital pen to control the amount of the effect

On the property bar, choose a value from the **Tolerance** list box.

On the property bar, choose a brush shape from the **Nib shape** picker.

Hold down **Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a transparency slider.

Hold down **Ctrl + Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a feathering slider.

Click the **Pen pressure** button  on the property bar.



The default **Tolerance** value corrects red-eye in most photos; however, if it is difficult to isolate the eye area, and a subject has red tones in their face, you may want to decrease the **Tolerance** value to differentiate the red in the eye from the skin tone.

You can use the **Red-eye removal** tool on images in the **Paletted**, **Lab**, **RGB**, and **CMYK** color modes.



You can quickly **zoom** to the eye area by clicking the **Zoom** tool  in the toolbox, and dragging in the image window to enclose the eye area in the zooming rectangle.

You can adjust the brush size interactively by holding down **Shift** while dragging in the image window.

## Removing dust and scratch marks

Corel PHOTO-PAINT provides several different ways to improve the appearance of an image that has small dust and scratch marks. You can apply a **filter** to the entire image, or if an image has one or more scratches in a specific area, you can create a **mask** around the scratches and apply the filter to the **editable areas**.

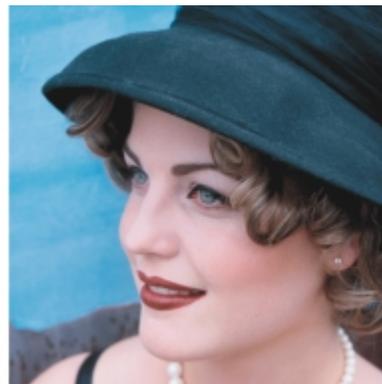
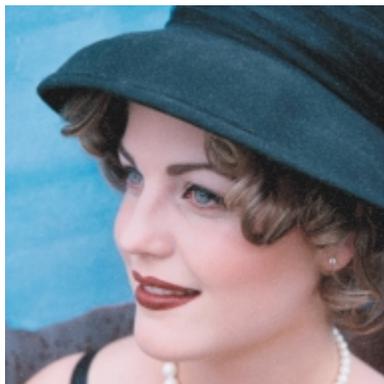
The filter works by eliminating the **contrast** between **pixels** that exceed the contrast threshold you set. You can set a **radius** to determine how many pixels are affected by the changes. The settings you choose depend on the size of the blemish and the area surrounding it. For example, if you have a white scratch that is 1 or 2 pixels wide on a dark background, you can set a radius of 2 or 3 pixels and set the contrast threshold higher than if the same scratch were on a light background.

You can also remove imperfections, such as tears, scratch marks, and wrinkles, from an image by blending its textures and colors. Similar to using a filter, you choose the range of pixels necessary to retouch the image, depending on the size of the correction and the area surrounding it.

If the scratch or blemish is fairly large or in an area of the image that has a varied color and texture, such as leaves on a tree, you can achieve better results by cloning image areas. For information about cloning, see “Cloning image areas” on page 123.

### To remove small dust and scratch marks throughout an image

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Correction** ► **Dust and scratch**.
- 2 Move the following sliders:
  - **Radius** — lets you set the range of **pixels** used to produce the effect. Set the **radius** as low as possible to retain image detail.
  - **Threshold** — lets you set the amount of **noise** reduction. Set the threshold as high as possible to retain image detail.



*You can remove small dust and scratch marks from an image by applying the Dust and scratch filter.*

### To remove scratch marks from part of an image

- 1 Define an **editable area** that includes the scratch marks.

- 2 Click **Image** ► **Correction** ► **Dust and scratch**.
- 3 Move the following sliders:
  - **Radius** — lets you set the range of **pixels** used to produce the effect. Set the **radius** as low as possible to retain image detail.
  - **Threshold** — lets you set the amount of **noise** reduction. Set the threshold as high as possible to retain image detail.



*You can remove a scratch from a specific area by surrounding the scratch with a mask before applying the **Dust and scratch** filter. A dashed line or red-tinted overlay indicates the presence of a mask.*



You can use the **Brush mask** tool  to define an editable area that includes the scratch mark. Choose a nib size that is wider than the scratch mark so you can brush over the scratch easily. For information about the **Brush mask** tool, see [“To define an editable area by using the Freehand Mask tool”](#) on page 227.

[Feathering](#) the edge of the editable area can improve results by softening the transition between the repaired areas and the original image. For information about feathering, see [“To feather the edges of an object”](#) on page 332.

### To remove imperfections from an image by blending textures and colors

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Touch-up brush** tool .
- 2 Choose a nib from the **Nib shape** picker.
- 3 Type a value in the **Nib size** box to specify the nib size.
- 4 Choose an option from the **Strength** list box to set the intensity of the effect.
- 5 Dab the brush in the image window to apply the effect.



You can remove imperfections from an image by blending textures and colors with the Touch-up brush tool.

### You can also

Apply the effect to the object and the background simultaneously

Click the **Merged source** button  on the property bar.

Change the brush size

Hold down **Shift** while dragging in the image window. Release the key when the nib is the size you want.

Adjust the transparency of the brushstroke

Hold down **Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a transparency slider.

Adjust the feathering of the brushstroke

Hold down **Ctrl + Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a feathering slider.

Use the pressure of a digital pen to control the amount of the effect

Click the **Pen pressure** button  on the property bar.



You can use the **Touch-up brush** tool on images in the [grayscale](#), [duotone](#), [Lab](#), [RGB](#), and [CMYK](#) color modes.



You can quickly choose a square or round brush shape by clicking the **Round nib** button  or the **Square nib** button  on the property bar.

## Cloning image areas

You can copy [pixels](#) from one image area to another in order to cover damaged or unwanted elements in an image. For example, you can fix a tear or remove a person from an image by applying cloned pixels over the area you want to remove. You can also clone image elements you like and apply them to another image area or a second image. If you clone an [object](#), the newly cloned areas are added to the active object. You can also create abstract images, based on pixels sampled from the original image.

When you clone, two brushes appear in the image window: a source point brush and a clone brush that applies the copied pixels from the source point. A crosshair pointer is displayed in the source point brush to distinguish it from the clone brush. The source point brush moves relative to the clone brush as you drag across the image.



The Clone tool was used to remove the woman's necklace.

## To clone an image area or object

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Clone** tool .
- 2 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose a clone category, and then choose a clone type.
- 3 Specify the settings you want on the property bar.
- 4 Click the image to set a source point for the clone.  
If you want to reset the source point, right-click the area you want to clone.
- 5 Drag the clone brush in the image window to apply the pixels from the source point.

### You can also

Create abstract image areas based on pixels sampled from the source point

Click **Impressionism clone**  or **Pointillism clone**  categories on the **Brush** picker before dragging in the image window.

Create multiple clones of an object

Click the **Toggle cumulative** button  on the **Stroke attributes** bar that is displayed in the **Brush settings** docker. This option is available only for some of the **Effect** tools and the **Clone** tool. If the **Brush settings** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Brush settings**.

Clone an object and the background simultaneously

Click the **Toggle merge source** button  on the **Dab attributes** bar that is displayed in the **Brush settings** docker. This option is only available when the **Toggle cumulative** button is disabled.

Change the size of the brush nib

Hold down **Shift**, and drag towards or away from the nib center.

Adjust the transparency of the brushstroke

Hold down **Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a transparency slider.

Adjust the feathering of the brushstroke

Hold down **Ctrl + Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a transparency slider.

Use the same source point as the last brushstroke

Hold down **Shift + Alt**, and drag in the image window.

## You can also

Constrain the brushstroke to a straight line

Hold down **Ctrl**, and drag in the image window. To change the direction (from vertical to horizontal or vice versa), hold down **Shift**.

Clone in a straight line between two clicked points

Right-click to set the source point and start cloning. Hold down **Ctrl + Alt + Shift**, and click in the image window to clone in a straight line.

## Sharpening images

You can sharpen images to increase **contrast**, enhance image edges, or reduce shading. To sharpen an image, or an **editable area** of an image, you can use **filters** or brushstrokes. Filters can also be applied using a **lens**. For more information about lenses, see “[Working with lenses](#)” on page 147. Sharpening is usually done after adjusting the color and tone of an image and after **resampling** or resizing.



*You can reveal more image detail by sharpening an image.*

### To sharpen an image by applying a filter

- 1 Click **Image** ▶ **Correction** ▶ **Tune sharpen**.
- 2 Move the **Percentage** slider to set the amount of sharpening that is applied each time you click a thumbnail button.
- 3 Click any of the following thumbnail buttons:
  - **Unsharp mask** — lets you accentuate edge detail and focus blurred areas in the image without removing low-frequency areas.
  - **Adaptive unsharp** — lets you accentuate edge detail by analyzing the values of neighboring **pixels**. This filter preserves most image detail, but its effect is most apparent in high-resolution images.
  - **Sharpen** — lets you accentuate the edges of the image by focusing blurred areas and increasing the **contrast** between neighboring pixels. Move the **Background** slider to set the threshold for the effect. Lower values increase the number of pixels changed by the sharpening effect.
  - **Directional sharpen** — lets you enhance the edges of an image without creating a grainy effect.

## You can also

Remove shading

Click **Effects** ▶ **Sharpen** ▶ **High pass**. The High pass filter removes image detail and shading to give an image a glowing quality by emphasizing its highlights and luminous areas. However, it can also affect the color and tone of the image.



The **Unsharp mask filter** provides best results for most photographs.

Most sharpen filters support all **color modes** except 48-bit **RGB**, 16-bit **grayscale**, **paletted**, and **black-and-white**. The **Sharpen** filter supports all color modes except paletted and black-and-white.



You can access each of the sharpen filters individually by clicking **Effects ▶ Sharpen**, and clicking a filter.

You can use this procedure to sharpen an [editable area](#) of an image.

### To sharpen selected areas by applying brushstrokes

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Effect** tool .
- 2 On the property bar, open the **Brush** picker, click **Sharpen**, and then choose a brush.
- 3 Choose a nib from the **Nib shape** picker.
- 4 Type a value in the **Size** box to specify the nib size.
- 5 Drag across an image area.



You can quickly choose a square or round brush shape by clicking the **Round nib** button  or the **Square nib** button  on the property bar.

## Removing artifacts and noise from JPEG images

You can remove unwanted artifacts and noise from JPEG images by using the Smart blur filter.

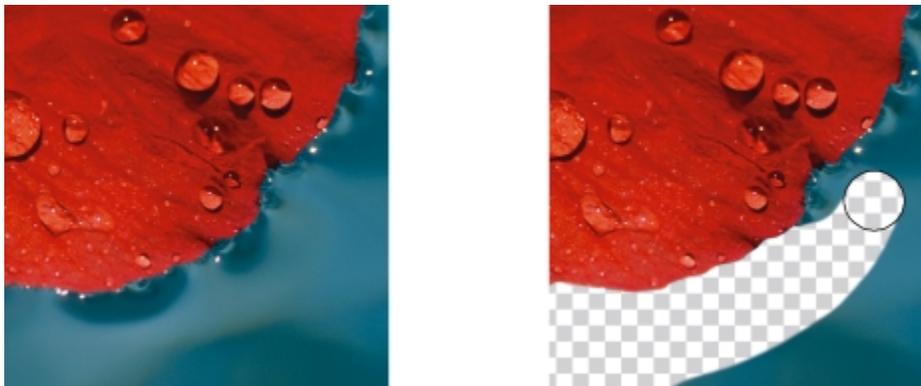
### To remove artifacts and noise from a JPEG image

- 1 Click **Effects ▶ Blur ▶ Smart blur**.
- 2 Move the **Amount** slider.

## Erasing image areas

You can edit images and [objects](#) by erasing areas. For example, you can erase part of an object to change its shape or reveal more of the layer below. You can also erase areas of the image to reveal the background color, or erase part of the last action applied to the image.

The tools used to erase have many of the same settings as brushes, which means you can control the size, shape and transparency to create unique effects. For example, you can apply a [bitmap fill](#) to the entire image, increase the [transparency](#) value of the eraser tool, and create a superimposed effect by partially erasing the fill (the last action performed). You can also erase image areas based on color. The background color replaces the foreground color you erase.



*The Eraser tool was used to erase the background.*

## To erase part of an object

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 Click the Eraser tool .
- 3 Specify the settings you want on the property bar.
- 4 Drag across the area you want to erase.



The erased areas reveal the object below.



To maintain the shape of an object, enable the **Lock object transparency** button  on the **Object manager** docker. If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Object manager**.

To adjust the transparency interactively, hold down **Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a transparency slider.

To adjust the feathering interactively, hold down **Ctrl + Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a feathering slider.

## To erase image areas and reveal the background color

- 1 Click the Eraser tool .
- 2 Specify the settings you want on the property bar.
- 3 Drag across the image area you want to erase.



To adjust the transparency interactively, hold down **Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a transparency slider.

To adjust the feathering interactively, hold down **Ctrl + Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a feathering slider.

## To erase the last action applied to an image

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Undo brush** tool .
- 2 Specify the settings you want on the property bar.
- 3 Drag across the area you want to erase.



If you want to erase the last action completely, click the **Undo** button  on the standard toolbar. For more information about undoing, see “Undoing, redoing, repeating, and fading actions” on page 75.



You can also erase the last action applied to an object, but you must use the **Eraser** tool  to erase the object itself.

To adjust the transparency interactively, hold down **Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a transparency slider.

To adjust the feathering interactively, hold down **Ctrl + Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a feathering slider.

## To replace a foreground color with the background color

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Replace color brush** tool .
- 2 On the property bar, choose a nib shape from the **Nib shape** picker.
- 3 Type a value in the **Tolerance** box to specify the **color tolerance** based on color similarity.
- 4 In the color control area of the toolbox, double-click the **Foreground** color swatch, and choose a color.
- 5 Drag in the image window.



You can select a foreground color from the image by clicking the **Eyedropper** tool , and clicking a color in the image window. The color you select displays in the **Foreground** color swatch.

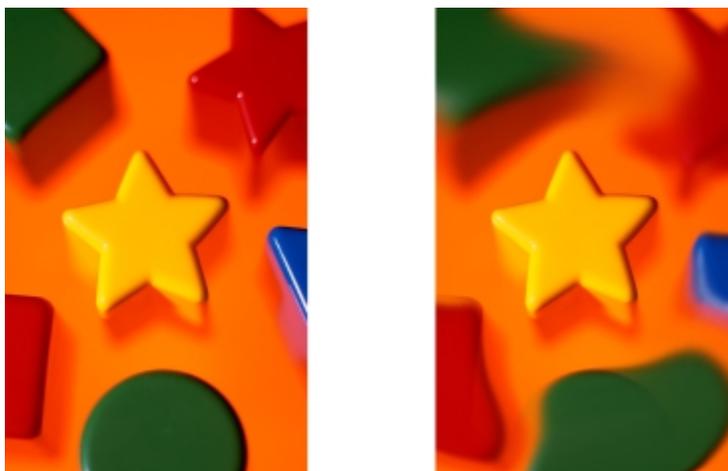
You can quickly choose a square or round brush shape by clicking the **Round nib** button  or the **Square nib** button  on the property bar.

To adjust the transparency interactively, hold down **Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a transparency slider.

To adjust the feathering interactively, hold down **Ctrl + Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a feathering slider.

## Smearing, smudging, and blending colors

You can smear, smudge, or blend the paint in an image. Smearing produces a similar effect to dragging across wet paint. Smudging has the same effect as rubbing across a pastel drawing. Blending softens the transition between colors or hard edges. You can smear, smudge, or blend the colors in an entire image or in an **editable area** you define. For more information about defining an editable area, see “[Working with masks](#)” on page 223.



*The Smear tool was used to alter the shapes surrounding the star.*

## To smear, smudge, or blend colors in an image

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Effect** tool .
- 2 On the property bar, open the **Brush** picker, and click one of the following brush categories:
  - Smear
  - Smudge
  - Blend

- 3 With the **Brush picker** still open, choose a brush.
- 4 Choose a nib from the **Nib shape** picker on the property bar.
- 5 Type a value in the **Nib size** box to specify the nib size.
- 6 Drag in the image window.

#### You can also

Increase the effect of the brush across an area without clicking over the area multiple times

Click the **Cumulative** button  on the **Stroke attributes** bar that displays in the **Brush settings** docker. This option is available only for some of the **Effect** tools and the **Clone** tool. If the **Brush settings** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Brush settings**.

Apply the effect to an object and the background simultaneously

Click the **Merge source** button  on the **Dab attributes** bar that displays in the **Brush settings** docker. This option is only available when the **Cumulative** button is disabled.

Adjust the transparency of the brushstroke

Hold down **Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a transparency slider.

Adjust the feathering of the brushstroke

Hold down **Ctrl + Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a feathering slider.



You can quickly choose a square or round brush shape by clicking the **Round nib** button  or the **Square nib** button  on the property bar.





# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Adjusting color and tone

To improve the quality of an image, you can improve the image's color and **tone**. You can correct **color casts**, balance excessive darkness or lightness, or alter specific colors.

This section contains the following topics:

- "Using the Image Adjustment Lab" (page 131)
- "Using individual color-adjustment effects and tools" (page 135)
- "Exploring adjustment filters" (page 139)
- "Working with color channels" (page 143)

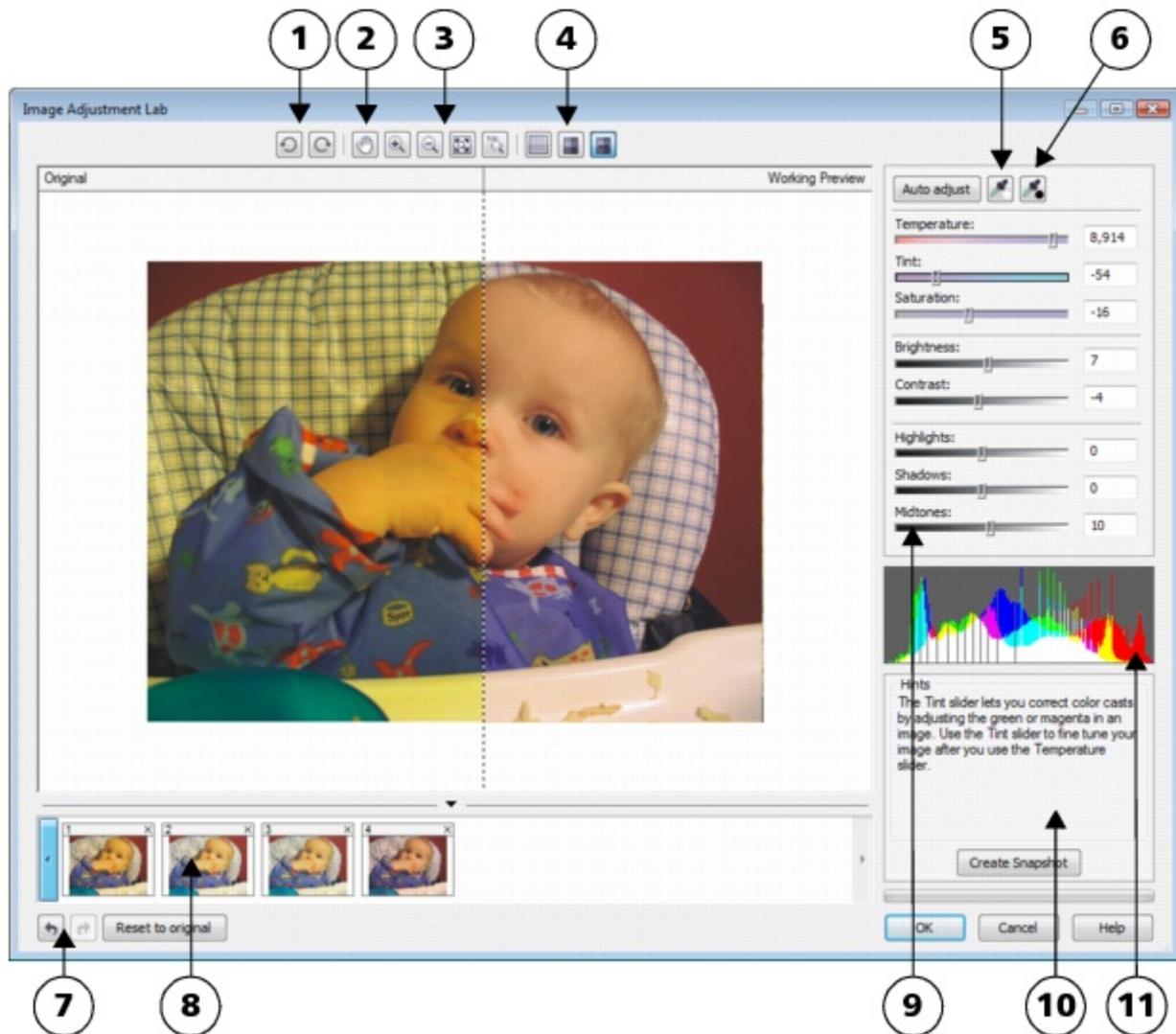
### Using the Image Adjustment Lab

The Image Adjustment Lab lets you correct the color and **tone** of most photos quickly and easily.

The Image Adjustment Lab consists of automatic and manual controls, which are organized in a logical order for image correction. By starting in the upper-right corner and working your way down, you can select the controls you need to correct the problems specific to your image. It is best to crop or retouch any areas of the image before beginning the color and tone corrections. For information about cropping and retouching images, see "[Cropping images](#)" on page 109 and "[Retouching](#)" on page 119.

While you work in the Image Adjustment Lab, you can take advantage of the following features:

- **Create snapshot** — You can capture the corrected version of an image in a "snapshot" at any time. Thumbnails of the snapshots appear in a window below the image. Snapshots make it easy to compare different corrected versions of the image so you can choose the best one.
- **Undo, Redo, and Reset to original** — Image correction can be a trial and error process, so the ability to undo and redo corrections is important. The **Reset to original** command lets you clear all corrections so that you can start again.



1. Rotation tools

5. Select white point

9. Sliders

2. Pan tool

6. Select black point

10. Hint for current tool

3. Zoom tools

7. Undo, Redo, and Reset

11. Histogram

4. Preview Modes

8. Snapshots

### Using automatic controls

You can begin by using the automatic correction controls:

- **Auto adjust** — automatically corrects the **contrast** and color in an image by detecting the lightest and darkest areas and adjusting the **tonal range** for each color channel. In some cases, this control may be all you need to improve an image. In other cases, you can undo the changes and proceed with more precise controls.

- **Select white point** tool — automatically adjusts the contrast in an image according to the white point that you set. For example, you can brighten an image that is too dark by using the **Select white point** tool.
- **Select black point** tool — automatically adjusts the contrast in an image according to the black point that you set. For example, you can darken an image that is too light by using the **Select black point** tool.

### Using color correction controls

After using the automatic controls, you can correct color casts in your image. Color casts are typically caused by the lighting conditions when a photo is taken, and they can be influenced by the processor in your digital camera or scanner.

- **Temperature** slider — lets you correct color casts by “warming” or “cooling” the color in an image to compensate for the lighting conditions at the time the photo was taken. For example, to correct a yellow color cast caused by taking a photo indoors in dim incandescent lighting, you can move the slider toward the blue end to increase the temperature values (based on degrees Kelvin). Lower values correspond to low lighting conditions, such as candlelight or light from an incandescent light bulb; these conditions cause an orange cast. Higher values correspond to intense lighting conditions, such as sunlight; these conditions cause a blue cast.
- **Tint** slider — lets you correct color casts by adjusting the green or magenta in an image. You can add green by moving the slider to the right; you can add magenta by moving the slider to the left. Moving the **Tint** slider after using the **Temperature** slider lets you fine-tune an image.
- **Saturation** slider — lets you adjust the vividness of colors. For example, by moving the slider to the right, you can increase the vividness of a blue sky in an image. By moving the slider to the left, you can reduce the vividness of colors. You can create a black-and-white photo effect by moving the slider all the way to the left, so that all color in the image is removed.



*Correction of a color cast depends on the type of light that caused the cast. The image on the left was taken indoors in incandescent light. The image on the right is the corrected version.*

### Adjusting brightness and contrast across the entire image

You can brighten, darken, or improve the contrast in an image by using the following controls:

- **Brightness** slider — lets you brighten or darken an entire image. This control can correct exposure problems caused by too much light (overexposure) or too little light (underexposure) at the time the photo was taken. If you want to lighten or darken specific areas of an image, you can use the **Highlights**, **Shadows**, and **Midtones** sliders. Adjustment made by the **Brightness** slider is nonlinear, so the current white point and black point values are not affected.
- **Contrast** slider — increases or decreases the difference in tone between the dark and light areas of an image. Moving the slider to the right makes the light areas lighter and the dark areas darker. For example, if the image has a dull, gray tone, you can sharpen the detail by increasing the contrast.



*Adjusting the brightness and contrast of an image can reveal more image detail.*

### Adjusting highlights, shadows, and midtones

You can brighten or darken specific areas of an image. In many cases, the position or strength of the lighting at the time a photo is taken causes some areas to appear too dark and other areas to appear too light.

- **Highlights** slider — lets you adjust brightness in the lightest areas of an image. For example, if you take a photo with a flash, and the flash washes out the foreground subjects, you can move the **Highlights** slider to the left to darken the washed-out areas of the image. You can use the **Highlights** slider in conjunction with the **Shadows** and **Midtones** sliders to balance the lighting.

- **Shadows** slider — lets you adjust the brightness in the darkest areas of an image. For example, a bright light behind a photo subject (backlighting) at the time a photo is taken can cause the subject to appear in shadow. You can correct the photo by moving the **Shadow** slider to the right to lighten the dark areas and reveal more detail. You can use the **Shadows** slider in conjunction with the **Highlights** and **Midtones** sliders to balance the lighting.
- **Midtones** slider — lets you adjust the brightness of the midrange tones in an image. After adjusting the highlights and shadows, you can use the **Midtones** slider to fine-tune the image.



*The Highlights and Shadows sliders can lighten or darken specific areas of an image.*

### Using the histogram

The histogram lets you view the tonal range of an image to help you evaluate and adjust the color and tone. For more information about the histogram, see [“Using histograms” on page 137](#).

### Viewing images in the Image Adjustment Lab

The tools in the Image Adjustment Lab let you view images in various ways, so that you can evaluate the color and tone adjustments you make. For example, you can rotate images, pan to a new area, zoom in or out, and choose how to display the corrected image in the preview window.

### Using other adjustment filters

Although the Image Adjustment Lab lets you correct the color and tone of most images, a specialized adjustment filter is sometimes required. Using the powerful adjustment filters in Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can make precise adjustments to images. For example, you can adjust images by using a histogram or a tone curve. For more information about adjustment filters, see [“Using individual color-adjustment effects and tools” on page 135](#).

### To use the Image Adjustment Lab

- 1 Click **Adjust** ► **Image Adjustment Lab**.
- 2 Click **Auto adjust**.

**Auto adjust** automatically adjusts color and contrast by setting the **white point** and **black point** for an image.

If you want to control the white point and black point setting more precisely, click the **Select white point** tool , and click the lightest area of your image. Then click the **Select black point** tool , and click the darkest area of your image.

- 3 Perform one or more tasks from the following table.

To	Do the following
Correct color in the image	Adjust the <b>Temperature</b> slider to warm or cool the colors, and then fine-tune the color correction by adjusting the <b>Tint</b> slider.
Make colors more vivid or less vivid	Move the <b>Saturation</b> slider to the right to increase the amount of color in the image; move the slider to the left to decrease the amount of color in the image.
Brighten or darken an image	Move the <b>Brightness</b> slider to the right to lighten the image; move the slider to the left to darken the image.
Improve image sharpness by adjusting tone	Move the <b>Contrast</b> slider to the right to make the light areas lighter and the dark areas darker.

## To

Brighten or darken specific areas



The **Image Adjustment Lab** is not available for CMYK images. For CMYK images, you can access the **Auto Adjust** filter and other adjustment filters from the **Adjust** menu.



You can capture the current version of your image by clicking the **Createsnapshot** button. Thumbnails of the snapshots appear in a window below your image. Each snapshot is numbered sequentially and can be deleted by clicking the close button in the upper right corner of the snapshot title bar.

You can undo or redo the last correction you made by clicking the **Undo** button  or **Redo** button . To undo all corrections, click the **Reset to original** button.

## To view images in the Image Adjustment Lab

- 1 Click **Adjust** ► **Image Adjustment Lab**.
- 2 Perform a task from the following table.

### To

Rotate the image

Pan to another area of an image

Zoom in and out

Fit an image in the preview window

Display an image at its actual size

View the corrected image in a single preview window

View the corrected image in one window and the original image in another window

View the image in one window with a divider between the original and corrected versions

### Do the following

Adjust the **Highlights** slider to brighten or darken the lightest areas of the image. Then, adjust the **Shadows** slider to lighten or darken the darkest areas of the image. Finally, adjust the **Midtones** slider to fine-tune the midrange tones in the image.

### Do the following

Click the **Rotate left** button  or **Rotate right** button .

Using the **Pan** tool , drag the image until the area you want to see is visible.

Using the **Zoom in** tool  or **Zoom out** tool , click in the preview window.

Click the **Zoom to fit**  button.

Click the **100%**  button.

Click the **Full preview** button .

Click the **Before and after full preview** button .

Click the **Before and after split preview** button . Move your pointer over the dashed divider line, and drag to move the divider to another area of the image.

## Using individual color-adjustment effects and tools

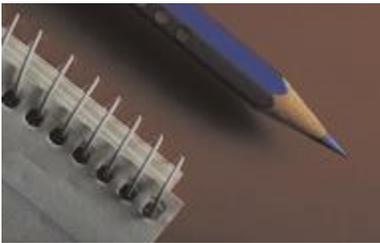
Corel PHOTO-PAINT provides you with **filters (adjustment effects)** and tools to make adjustments to the color and tone of images. When you adjust the color and tone, you adjust elements such as **hue**, saturation, brightness, **contrast**, or **intensity**. If you want to adjust the color and tone of the entire image, you can apply an adjustment filter directly to the image or apply a **lens** that exists on a separate object layer and can be edited without changing the original image. For information about lenses, see “[Working with lenses](#)” on page 147.

You can adjust part of an image by editing the size and shape of a lens or by creating an [editable area](#) before applying an adjustment filter. For information about editable areas, see [“Working with masks” on page 223](#).

Before you start working with individual filters, try using the Image Adjustment Lab. For information about the Image Adjustment Lab, see [“Using the Image Adjustment Lab” on page 131](#).

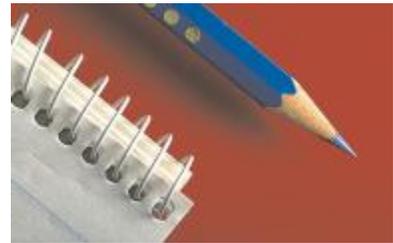
The table below lists the filters that can be used to make adjustments to images.

**To adjust**



Exposure, shadows, midtones, and highlights

**Use the following filters**



Auto adjust, Tone curve, Gamma, Sample/Target balance, Auto balance tone, Histogram equalization



Overall color



Color hue, Color balance, Channel mixer



Specific colors



Selective color, Replace colors

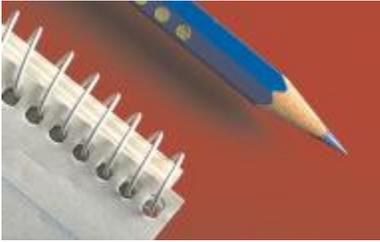


Dull images that lack contrast

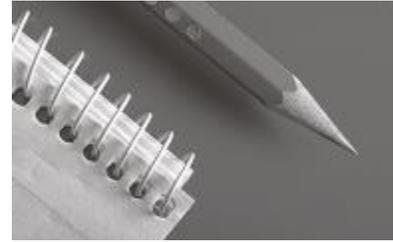


Color tone, Brightness/Contrast/Intensity, Contrast enhancement, Local equalization

To adjust



Use the following filters



Saturation

Hue/Saturation/Lightness, Desaturate

### Choosing color and tone filters

Some [filters](#) adjust an image automatically, while others give you various degrees of control. For example, the **Auto adjust** filter adjusts the tonal range across all color channels automatically, while the **Tone curve** filter lets you use separate [color channels](#) to pinpoint and adjust tone or color. More advanced filters, such as the **Tone curve** filter and the **Contrast enhancement** filter, are precise and can correct many different problems, but using them requires practice.

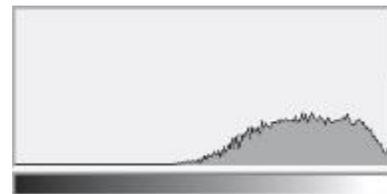
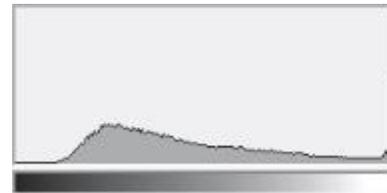
### Using histograms

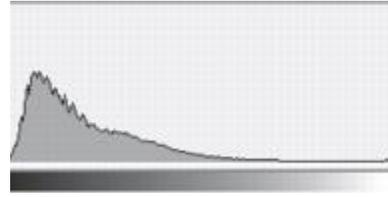
You can view the tonal range of an image by using a histogram to evaluate and adjust the color and tone. For example, a histogram can help you detect hidden detail in a photo that is too dark because of underexposure (a photo taken with insufficient light).

A histogram has a horizontal bar chart that plots the brightness values of the pixels in your image on a scale of 0 (dark) to 255 (light). The left part of the histogram represents the shadows of an image, the middle part represents the midtones, and the right part represents the highlights. The height of the spikes indicates how many pixels are at each brightness level. For example, a large number of pixels in the shadows (the left side of the histogram) indicates the presence of image detail in the dark areas of the image.

A histogram is available with the following filters:

- Contrast enhancement
- Histogram equalization
- Sample/Target balance
- Tone Curve





Each photo above has a different exposure: average (top), overexposed (middle), underexposed (bottom). The histograms for each photo (on the right) show how the pixels are distributed, from dark to light. In a photo with average exposure, pixels are more evenly distributed across the tonal range.

### Adjusting color and tone by using brush effects

You can adjust the brightness, contrast, hue or saturation in part of an image by applying brush effects. For example, if you want to lighten one object in a photo, you can use the **Brightness** tool to lighten the area you want without affecting the surrounding area.

You can use preset brushes or create a custom brush. For more information, see [“Creating custom brushes” on page 276](#).

### To adjust image color and tone

- 1 Click **Adjust**, and click an adjustment filter.
- 2 Specify the settings you want in the dialog box.



For descriptions of adjustment filters, see [“Exploring adjustment filters” on page 139](#).



You can compare the original image with the adjusted image by clicking the **Dual window preview** button  in filter dialog boxes.

You can adjust the color and tone in an [editable area](#) by defining an editable area before you click an adjustment filter.

### To adjust image tone interactively by using a histogram

- 1 Click **Adjust** ▶ **Contrast enhancement**.
- 2 Move the **Input value clipping** arrows  to adjust shadows and highlights.  
The arrow on the left lets you darken shadow areas. Drag the arrow until it points to the area where the histogram starts to spike.  
The arrow on the right lets you lighten highlight areas. Drag the arrow until it points to the area where the histogram stops spiking.
- 3 Move the **Gamma slider** to adjust the midtones.
- 4 Move the **Output range compression** arrows  to fine-tune the contrast.  
To lighten dark areas, move the left arrow to the right.  
To darken light areas, move the right arrow to the left.

### You can also

Adjust image color

Before adjusting the tone, choose a color channel from the **Channel list** box.

Automatically redistribute pixels across the tonal range

Enable the **Auto-adjust** check box.

Set input and output values by sampling pixels in the image

Enable the **Set input values** or **Set output values** option from the **Eyedropper sampling** area. Click the **Shadow eyedropper** button



to sample shadow areas, or click the **Highlight eyedropper**

button  to sample highlight areas.



The histogram displays adjusted values as a black outline and original values as gray shading.



You can compare the original image with the adjusted image by clicking the **Dual window preview** button  in filter dialog boxes.

## To adjust image color and tone by using brush effects

- 1 Select an [object](#) or the background image.
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Effect** tool .
- 3 On the property bar, open the **Brush** picker, and click one of the following brush categories:
  - **Brightness**  — brightens or darkens the image
  - **Contrast**  — increases or decreases the [contrast](#)
  - **Hue**  — shifts all hues along the color wheel by the number of degrees that you specify in the **Amount** box
  - **Hue replacer**  — retains the [brightness](#) and [saturation](#) of the original colors, but replaces all [hues](#) with the current paint color
  - **Sponge**  — saturates or desaturates the colors
  - **Tint**  — uses the current paint color to tint the image
  - **Dodge/Burn**  — brightens (overexposes) or darkens (underexposes) the image. You can choose a Dodge or Burn preset brush from the **Brush type** list box.
- 4 Choose a preset brush from the **Brush** picker.  
If you want to customize the brush, specify the settings you want on the property bar.
- 5 Drag in the image window.

### You can also

Increase the effect of a brush tool without clicking multiple times

In the **Brush settings** docker, click the **Cumulative** button  on the **Stroke attributes** bar. This option is available for only some of the **Effect** tools. If the **Brush settings** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Brush settings**.

Apply the effect to both an object and the background simultaneously

In the **Brush settings** docker, click the **Merge source** button  on the **Dab attributes** bar. This option is available only when the **Cumulative** button is disabled.

## Exploring adjustment filters

Corel PHOTO-PAINT provides you with many [filters](#) to adjust the color and tone of images. Some of these filters offer the same controls that can be found in the Image Adjustment Lab. However, most of these filters are advanced tools that give you greater control over the image correction process or let you change colors for specific effects. Many of these filters are also preset [lens](#) types. For more information about using lenses, see “[Working with lenses](#)” on page 147.

## Auto adjust

The **Auto adjust** filter equalizes the shadows, midtones, and highlights in an image by automatically redistributing the significant pixel values throughout the tonal range. This adjustment is performed on each color channel of the image, resulting in changes to the color and tone of the image.

## Contrast enhancement

The **Contrast enhancement** filter lets you adjust the tone, color, and contrast of an image while preserving shadow and highlight detail that is lost when you adjust the **brightness**, **contrast**, and **intensity** of an image. An interactive histogram lets you shift or compress brightness values to printable limits. The histogram can also be adjusted by sampling values from the image.

## Local equalization

The **Local equalization** filter lets you enhance the contrast near image edges and reveals details in both light and dark regions. The filter uses neighboring **pixels** to create a stylized effect.

## Histogram equalization

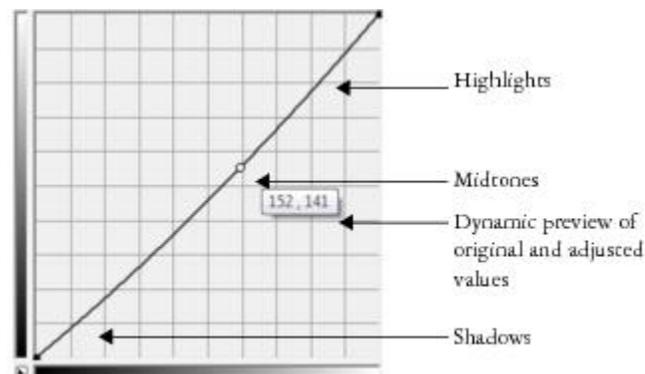
The **Histogram equalization** filter lets you view the **tonal range** of an image and redistribute the balance of shadows, midtones, and highlights in the composite channel or in individual **color channels** according to a preset histogram model.

## Sample/Target balance

The **Sample/Target balance** filter lets you shift the tonal range of an image by sampling specific image areas. You can take samples from shadow, midtone, and highlight areas, and set target tonal values by choosing colors from a **color model**. For example, if you want to increase the tonal range, you can sample a shadow area to set the target color to black, and then sample a highlighted area to set the target color to white. You can also shift the tonal range for a specific color channel. The tonal range is displayed as a histogram.

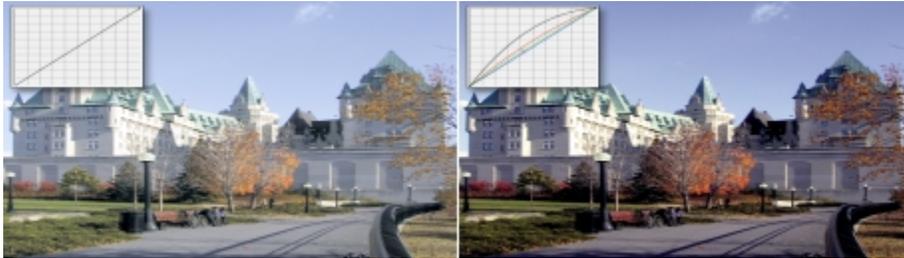
## Tone curve

The **Tone curve** filter lets you perform color and tonal corrections by adjusting either individual color channels or the composite channel (all channels combined). Individual pixel values are plotted along a tone curve that appears in a graph and represents the balance between shadows (bottom of graph), midtones (middle of graph), and highlights (top of graph). The x-axis of the graph represents the tonal values of the original image; the y-axis of the graph represents the adjusted tonal values.



*The tone curve shows the balance between the shadows, midtones, and highlights of an image. The original (x) and adjusted (y) pixel values are displayed side by side when you drag the tone curve. This example shows a small adjustment to the tonal range, in which pixel values of 152 are replaced with pixel values of 141.*

You can fix problem areas by adding nodes to the tone curve and dragging the curve. If you want to adjust specific areas in an image, you can use the **Eyedropper** tool and select the areas in the image window. You can then drag the nodes that appear on the tone curve to achieve the effect you want.



*Original image (left); the image with adjusted tonal range (right)*

The histogram lets you view the adjusted tonal range and evaluate the results. For more information about histograms, see “Using histograms” on page 137.

To fine-tune your adjustments, you can choose a curve style from the **Style** list box. For example, you can redraw the curve by using freehand lines or straight line segments.

You can adjust the color and tone of an image by applying a preset. To access a preset, click the **Open** button to the right of the **Presets** box. You can also save tone settings as presets to use with other images.

In addition, you can equalize the tonal range of an image by clicking **Auto balance tone**. To specify the outlying pixels (clipped pixels) at each end of the tonal range, you can click **Settings** and type values in the **Auto-adjust range** dialog box.

### **Auto Balance tone**

The **Auto balance tone** filter equalizes shadows, midtones, and highlights in an image by automatically redistributing the pixel values throughout the tonal range.

### **Brightness/Contrast/Intensity**

The **Brightness/Contrast/Intensity** filter lets you change the brightness, contrast, and intensity of an image. You can shift pixel values up or down the tonal range. Adjusting the brightness lightens or darkens all colors equally. Contrast and intensity usually work together because increasing the contrast can wash out detail in shadows and highlights; however, increasing the intensity can restore this detail.

### **Gamma**

The **Gamma** filter lets you reveal detail in a low-contrast image without significantly affecting the shadows or highlights. With this filter, the tonal correction of the image is based on the perception of tones relative to the surrounding area. For example, if you place a circle filled with 10 percent gray on a black background, and an identical gray circle on a white background, the circle surrounded by black appears lighter than the circle surrounded by white, even though the brightness values are identical. The **Gamma** filter affects all image values, but it is curve-based; consequently, changes are weighted toward the midtones.

### **Desaturate**

The **Desaturate** filter creates a **grayscale** image without changing the **color mode**. For example, you can apply the **Desaturate** filter to a color photo to create a black-and-white photo effect. It automatically reduces the saturation of each color to zero, removes the hue component, and converts each color to its grayscale equivalent.

## Grayscale

The Grayscale filter lets you produce a black and white image without changing the **color mode**. It also allows you to adjust individual colors for conversion, which modifies the intensity of the gray tones in the image when it's converted. In addition, you can tint the image by modifying the hue and saturation. For example, you can add a tint to an image to produce a Sepia effect.



*A photo before (left) and after (right) applying the Grayscale filter.*

## Hue/Saturation/Lightness

The **Hue/Saturation/Lightness** filter lets you change the hue, saturation, and lightness values of an image or **channel**. Hue represents color; **saturation** represents color depth or richness; and lightness represents the overall percentage of white in an image. Color ribbons display the shift in hue.

## Vibrance

The Vibrance filter allows you to increase the saturation in an RGB image without causing clipping or “blowing out” the image. Clipping occurs when an area of an image is too bright and the color details in the area are lost, which can occur when you increase the saturation in an image indiscriminately. The Vibrance filter adjusts saturation proportionally by increasing the saturation of the less-saturated colors more than that of the saturated colors. This filter is useful for adjusting the saturation of images that include a person in front of a detailed background. For example, it allows you to boost the saturation of the background details without adversely affecting the skin tone of the person in the image.



*A photo before (left) and after (right) applying the Vibrance filter.*

## Selective color

The **Selective color** filter lets you change a color by changing the percentage of the component process colors (**CMYK** values) in a color spectrum (reds, yellows, greens, cyans, blues, and magentas). This filter also lets you add process color to the grayscale tonal component of

an image. Selective color modifications increase and decrease the percentage of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black pixels that make up each primary color in the color spectrum. For example, decreasing the percentage of magenta in the reds spectrum results in a color shift toward yellow. Conversely, increasing the percentage of magenta in the reds spectrum causes a color shift toward magenta and an overall increase in red. The extent of color modification depends on the adjustment percentage method you choose.

### Channel mixer

You can mix color channels to balance the colors of an image. For example, if an image has too much red, you can adjust the red channel in an RGB image to improve image quality. For more information about mixing channels, see [“Working with color channels” on page 143](#).

### Replace colors

The **Replace colors** filter lets you replace one image color with another color. A color mask is created to define the color to be replaced. Depending on the range you set, you can replace one color or shift an entire image from one color range to another. You can set the hue, saturation, and lightness for the new color.

### Color balance

The **Color balance** filter lets you adjust the color balance of an image by shifting the colors between complementary pairs of the primary **RGB** color values and secondary **CMY** color values. This method is useful for correcting color casts. For example, if you want to tone down the red in a photo, you can shift the color values from red to cyan. You can also change the hue values to change the colors used in an image.

### Color hue

The **Color hue** filter lets you change the hue of an image by clicking sample thumbnails. For example, you can remove a yellow cast from an image by clicking a thumbnail that adds blue. The intensity of the effect increases by a specified amount each time you click the thumbnail. The thumbnails also let you preview the color hue adjustment.

### Color tone

The **Color tone** filter lets you change the brightness, saturation, and **contrast** of colors by clicking sample thumbnails. The intensity of the effect increases by a specified amount each time you click the thumbnail. The thumbnails also let you preview the color tone adjustment.

## Working with color channels

You can adjust color and tone by making changes directly to the **color channels** of an image. The number of color channels in an image depends on the number of components in the **color mode** associated with the image. For example, **black-and-white**, **grayscale**, **duotone**, and **paletted** images have only one **color channel**; **RGB** and **Lab** images have three channels; and **CMYK** images have four color channels. For more information about these color models, see [“Understanding color models” on page 159](#). Additional channels can be used to preserve any spot colors in an image. For information about spot color channels, see [“Using spot color channels” on page 175](#).

### Displaying, mixing, and editing color channels

Although color channels represent the colored components of an image, they are displayed by default as grayscale images in the image window. However, you can display these channels in their respective colors so that the red channel is tinted red, the blue channel is tinted blue, and so on.

You can mix color channels to balance the colors of an image. For example, if an image has too much red, you can adjust the red channel in an RGB image to improve image quality.

You can edit color channels the same way that you edit other grayscale images. For example, you can select areas, apply paints and fills, add special effects or filters, and cut and paste objects in the image channel.

## Splitting and combining images by using color channels

You can split an image into a series of 8-bit grayscale image files — one for each color channel of the color mode. Splitting an image into separate channel files lets you edit one channel without affecting the others, save channel information before you convert the image to another mode, or associate channels from one mode with another mode for editing purposes. For example, if you have an [oversaturated](#) RGB image, you can reduce the saturation by splitting the image into the [HSB](#) mode and reducing the saturation of the (S) channel. When you finish editing the images, you can combine them into one image. The images are combined automatically, with equal color values applied.

You can split an image into the following color channels.

Splitting mode	Color channels created
RGB	Red (R), green (G), blue (B)
CMYK	Cyan (C), magenta (M), yellow (Y), black (K)
HSB	Hue (H), saturation (S), brightness (B)
HLS	Hue (H), lightness (L), saturation (S)
YIQ	Luminance (Y), two chromaticity values (I, Q)
Lab	Luminosity (L), green/magenta (a), blue/yellow (b)

## Merging channels or images by using calculations

You can modify an existing image or create a new composite image by combining channel data from one image with the channel data of another image. A [merge mode](#) calculation is performed on the [pixels](#) and applied to a specified channel, an open image, or a new file. You can use calculations to correct images by merging channels from a single image or by merging two images that were created by splitting a single image. You can create a superimposed effect by merging different images. For more information about merge modes, see [“Understanding merge modes” on page 280](#).

## To display color channels

- Do one of the following:
  - Click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Channels**.
  - Click **Image** ▶ **Channels**.



You can display color channels by using their respective colors. Click **Tools** ▶ **Customization**. In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Display**, and enable the **Tint screen color channels** check box.

## To mix color channels

- 1 Click **Adjust** ▶ **Channel mixer**.
- 2 Choose a [color mode](#) from the **Color model** list box.
- 3 Choose an output [channel](#) from the **Output channel** list box.
- 4 Move the sliders in the **Input channels** area.

## To edit a color channel

- 1 In the **Channels** docker, click the [channel](#) that you want to edit.  
If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Channels** or **Image** ▶ **Channels**.
- 2 Edit the image.



You can click the composite channel at the top of the **Channels** docker to view the edited image.

### To split an image by using color channels

- Click **Image** ▶ **Split channels to**, and click a [color mode](#).



Images in the [CMYK](#) and [Lab](#) color modes must be split into their original component [channels](#).

### To combine images by using color channels

- 1 Click **Image** ▶ **Combine channels**.
- 2 In the **Mode** area, choose a [color mode](#) option.
- 3 In the **Channel** area, choose a [channel](#) option and click a filename from the **Images** list to associate the channel with a file.
- 4 Repeat step 3 until all the channels in the **Channel** area have been associated with an image from the **Images** list.

### To merge color channels or images by using calculations

- 1 Click **Image** ▶ **Calculations**.
- 2 In the **Source 1** area, choose a filename from the **Image** list box.
- 3 Choose a [channel](#) type from the **Channel** list box.
- 4 In the **Source 2** area, choose a filename from the **Image** list box.
- 5 Choose a channel type from the **Channel** list box.
- 6 In the **Destination** area, choose a filename from the **Image** list box, and a channel type from the **Channel** list box.
- 7 In the **Method** area, choose a [merge mode](#) from the list box.
- 8 Type a value in the **Opacity** box.



The merge mode determines how colors mix. For more information about merge modes, see [“Understanding merge modes” on page 280](#).

The **Calculations** command is grayed if the image contains [objects](#). All objects in the image must be merged with the image background before you can perform image calculations.





## Working with lenses

**Lenses** let you view special effects, corrections, or adjustments, on a separate object layer before you apply the changes to the image. In some programs, lenses are also known as adjustment layers.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Creating lenses” (page 147)
- “Editing lenses” (page 150)
- “Combining lenses with the image background” (page 152)

### Creating lenses

**Lenses** let you view adjustments and special effects that you want to apply to an image. When you create a lens, the changes you make are not applied to the image **pixels**; instead, they are displayed on the screen through the lens. The lens is created as a separate **object** on a layer above the image background so you can edit the lens and the background image separately. When you achieve the results you want, you can combine the lens with the image background. When you export or print an image, the effects of the lens are applied to the exported or printed image.

You can create a lens to cover the entire image, or you can create a lens from the **editable area** of a **mask**. You can create as many lenses as you want for an image and assign a unique name to each. You can also use multiple lenses to apply successive changes to a specific area in the image.

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you create the following lenses:

Lens type	Description
Add Noise	Lets you create a granular effect that adds texture to a flat or overly blended image. You can specify the type and amount of noise that is added to the image.
Grayscale	Lets you create a black-and-white image from a color photo by adjusting the tonal range of the color channels
Brightness-Contrast-Intensity	Lets you change the brightness, contrast, and intensity of an image by shifting pixel values up or down the tonal range
Channel mixer	Lets you adjust specific color channels in an image to create unique photographic effects

Lens type	Description
Color Balance	Lets you adjust the color balance of an image by shifting the colors between complementary pairs of the primary RGB color values and secondary CMY color values
Contrast Enhancement	Lets you adjust the tone, color, and contrast of an image while preserving shadow and highlight detail
Desaturate	Lets you create a grayscale image without changing the color mode. It automatically reduces the saturation of each color to zero, removes the hue component, and converts each color to its grayscale equivalent.
Gamma	Lets you reveal detail in a low-contrast image without significantly affecting the shadows or highlights. The tonal correction of the image is based on the perception of tones relative to the surrounding area.
Gradient map	Lets you apply color to a black-and-white image or change the colors in a color image
Hue/Saturation/Lightness	Lets you change the hue, saturation, and lightness values of an image or channel. Hue represents color; saturation represents color depth or richness; and lightness represents the overall percentage of white in an image.
Invert	Lets you reverse the colors of an image to create the appearance of a photographic negative
Jaggy Despeckle	Lets you scatter colors in an image to create a soft, blurred effect with minimal distortion. This lens is most effective for removing the jagged edges that can appear in line art or high-contrast images.
Photo filter	Lets you apply a color tint to an image. You can adjust the intensity of the tint, and choose to either preserve or remove the luminosity setting in the image.
Pixelate	Lets you break an image into square, rectangular, or circular cells
Posterize	Lets you reduce the number of tonal values in an image to remove gradations and create larger areas of flat color
Psychedelic	Lets you change the colors in an image to bright, electric colors, such as orange, hot pink, cyan, and lime green
Remove Noise	Lets you remove random pixels on the surface of an image, resembling static on a television screen, by adjusting the color value of pixels based on the minimum color values of neighboring pixels
Replace Colors	Lets you replace one image color with another color. A color mask is created to define the color to be replaced. Depending on the range you set, you can replace one color or shift an entire image from one color range to another. You can set the hue, saturation, and lightness for the new color.
Sample/Target Balance	Lets you shift the tonal range of an image by sampling specific image areas. You can take samples from shadow, midtone, and highlight areas, and set target tonal values by choosing colors from

Lens type	Description
Scatter	a color model. You can also shift the tonal range for a specific color channel. The tonal range is displayed as a histogram.
Selective Color	Lets you distort an image by scattering pixels. You can specify the direction of the scattering.
Sharpen	Lets you change a color by changing the percentage of the component process colors (CMYK values) in a color spectrum (reds, yellows, greens, cyans, blues, and magentas). You can also add process color to the grayscale tonal component of an image. Selective color modifications increase and decrease the percentage of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black pixels that make up each primary color in the color spectrum.
Smooth	Lets you accentuate the edges of the image by focusing blurred areas and increasing the contrast between neighboring pixels
Soften	Lets you mute the differences between adjacent pixels to smooth an image without losing detail. It is especially useful for removing the dithering that is created when you convert an image from the paletted mode to the RGB mode. The Smooth lens produces a more pronounced effect than the Soften lens.
Solarize	Lets you smooth and tone down the harsh edges in an image without losing important image detail. The difference between the Smooth and Soften lenses is subtle but is often apparent when images are viewed at high resolution.
Threshold	Lets you transform colors in an image by reversing image tones
Tone Curve	Lets you specify a brightness value as a threshold. Pixels with a brightness value higher or lower than the threshold will display in white or black, depending on the threshold option you specify.
Unsharp Mask	Lets you perform color and tonal corrections by adjusting individual color channels or the composite channel (all channels combined). For more information, see <a href="#">"Tone curve" on page 140</a> .
Vibrance	Lets you sharpen your photos by increasing the contrast of adjacent pixels. It preserves both high-frequency details, such as edges, and low-frequency details, such as large structures, gradients, and background colors.  For more information about sharpening images, see <a href="#">"Sharpening images" on page 125</a> .
	Lets you increase the saturation in an RGB image proportionally by increasing the saturation of the less-saturated colors more than that of the saturated colors. For more information, see <a href="#">"Vibrance" on page 142</a> .

When you create a lens, you must choose a lens type based on the change that you want to apply. However, the types of lenses are determined by the image's [color mode](#). For example, you cannot use a color lens on a [grayscale](#) image because there are no colors to modify. If you want to correct or adjust image color and tone, choose a lens type that corresponds to the adjustment and transform [filters](#). For more information about using filters, see ["Adjusting color and tone" on page 131](#). If you want to apply a special effect to improve image quality or dramatically transform an image, choose a special effects filter. For more information about special effects, see ["Applying special effects" on page 283](#).



The picture of the man is an image object cut out from a darker image. A lens was applied to brighten the image object without permanently changing the image object or background.

### To create a lens

- 1 Click **Object** ► **Create** ► **New lens**.
- 2 Choose a **lens** from the **Lens type** list.
- 3 Type a name in the **Lens name** box.
- 4 Click **OK**.

If a dialog box displays, specify the lens properties.



You can also create a lens by clicking the **New lens** button  in the **Object manager** docker. If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Object manager**.

### To create a lens from an editable area

- 1 Define an **editable area**.
- 2 Click **Object** ► **Create** ► **New lens**.
- 3 Enable the **Create lens from mask** check box.
- 4 Choose a **lens** from the **Lens type** list.
- 5 Type a name in the **Lens name** box.
- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 In the dialog box, specify the lens properties.



You can also create a lens from an editable area by clicking the **New lens** button  in the **Object manager** docker after defining an editable area. If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Object manager**.

## Editing lenses

After you create a **lens**, you can edit it. For example, you can add areas to it and remove areas from it. You can change the lens properties or change the **transparency** of a lens to fine-tune the changes you want to apply to the image.

Lenses can be selected and transformed in the same way that you select and transform **objects**. For information about selecting and transforming objects, see [“Working with objects” on page 311](#) and [“Modifying objects” on page 327](#). You can also change the shape of a lens using a special effects **filter**. For more information about special effects, see [“Applying special effects” on page 283](#).

### To add an area to a lens

- 1 Click the **Object pick tool** .
- 2 Select a [lens](#).
- 3 Click one of the following:
  - **Paint tool** 
  - **Rectangle tool** 
  - **Ellipse tool** 
  - **Polygon tool** 
  - **Line tool** 
- 4 On the property bar, specify the tool's attributes.  
Ensure the **New object** button  on the property bar is disabled.
- 5 Drag across the areas that you want to add to the lens.



When adding areas to a lens, the [grayscale](#) value of the foreground color or fill color affects the lens [opacity](#). White adds areas to the lens, while black makes lens areas [transparent](#). For more information, see “[Working with transparency](#)” on page 209.

The **Rectangle tool**, **Ellipse tool**, **Polygon tool**, and **Line tool** create new [objects](#) by default.

### To remove an area from a lens

- 1 Click the **Object pick tool** .
- 2 Select a [lens](#).
- 3 Click the **Eraser tool** .
- 4 On the property bar, specify the **Eraser tool's** attributes.
- 5 Drag across the areas that you want to remove from the lens.

### To change the properties of a lens

- 1 Click the **Object pick tool** .
- 2 Select a [lens](#).
- 3 Click **Object** ▶ **Edit lens**.
- 4 Edit the lens properties.



You cannot change the properties of a **Desaturate** lens or an **Invert** lens.

### To change the transparency of a lens

- 1 Click the **Object pick tool** .
- 2 Select a [lens](#).
- 3 In the **Object manager** docker, type a value in the **Opacity** box.

If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Object manager**.



The **Opacity** box is not available for 1-bit black-and-white images.

### To change the shape of a lens by using a special effects filter

- 1 Click the **Object pick** tool .
- 2 Select a **lens**.
- 3 Click **Effects**, and click a special effect.
- 4 Specify the settings of the special effects **filter**.



Only some special effects change the shape of lenses. For example, many special effects from the **3D** and **Distort** special effect categories work well.

## Combining lenses with the image background

To apply a **lens** adjustment and special effects to the **pixels** of an image, you combine the lens with the image background. Combining a lens with the image background reduces the file size of the image and lets you save the image to a non-native file format. If you save an image as a Corel PHOTO-PAINT file, lenses are saved with the image and do not have to be combined. Once a lens is combined with the image background, the lens cannot be selected or modified.

When you combine a lens with the image background, you can choose a **merge mode** to enhance the results. For information about merge modes, see “[Understanding merge modes](#)” on page 280.

### To combine a lens with the image background

- 1 Click the **Object pick** tool .
- 2 Select a **lens**.
- 3 In the **Object manager** docker, choose a merge mode from the **Merge mode** list box.  
If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Object manager**.
- 4 Click **Object** ▶ **Combine**, and click one of the following:
  - **Combine objects with background**— combines the selected lens with the image background
  - **Combine all objects with background** — combines the selected lens and all other **objects** with the image background



# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Reshaping image areas

The Liquid tools let you reshape specific image areas while preserving the rest of the image intact. The reshaping effects can be as subtle or pronounced as you want, which makes the Liquid tools ideal for both retouching images and creating artistic effects.

You can access the Liquid tools from the toolbox and from the **Liquid tools** toolbar (**Window ▶ Toolbars ▶ Liquid tools**).

This section contains the following topics:

- “Smearing image areas” (page 153)
- “Adding twirl effects” (page 154)
- “Reshaping image areas by pulling or pushing away pixels” (page 155)

### Smearing image areas

With the **Liquid smear** tool, you can smear specific image areas while preserving the rest of the image intact. The effect resembles dragging wet paint across an area.

To control the smearing effect, you can set the size of the brush nib and the amount of effect to apply, and you can use the pressure of your digital pen. The smear effect can be pointy or rounded.



*Smearing image areas to produce a subtle (top) and a more pronounced effect (middle)*

## To smear image areas

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Liquid smear** tool .
- 2 Drag across the area that you want to smear.

### You can also

Set the size of the brush nib

Type a value in the **Nib size** box on the property bar.

To change the size of the brush nib, you can also drag in the image window while holding down **Shift**. Drag towards the nib's center to decrease the radius, or away from the nib's center to increase it.

Set the amount of smearing

Type a value in the **Pressure** box on the property bar.

To adjust the amount of smearing, you can also drag in the image window while holding down **Alt**.

Create rounded smear

Click the **Smooth smear** button  on the property bar.

Create pointy smear

Click the **Pointy smear** button  on the property bar.

Use the pressure of a digital pen to control the amount of smearing

Click the **Pen pressure** button  on the property bar.



The difference between a smooth smear and pointy smear is noticeable only with higher **Pressure** values.

## Adding twirl effects

You can create twirls from image areas. To customize the twirl effects, you can change the size of the brush nib, the speed at which the effect is applied, and the twirl direction. You can also use the pressure of your digital pen to change the intensity of the twirl effect.



*Twirl effects with different nib size values and direction*

### To add a twirl effect

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Liquid twirl** tool .
- 2 Click in the image, and hold down the mouse button until the twirl is the size you want.

To position and reshape the twirl, you can drag while holding down the mouse button.

### You can also

Set the size of the brush nib

Type a value in the **Nib size** box on the property bar.

You can also

Set the speed at which the twirl effect is applied

Set the direction of the twirl effect

Use the pressure of a digital pen to control the intensity of the twirl effect

To change the size of the brush nib, you can also drag in the image window while holding down **Shift**. Drag towards the nib's center to decrease the radius, or away from the nib's center to increase it.

Type a value between 1 and 100

in the **Rate** box on the property bar.

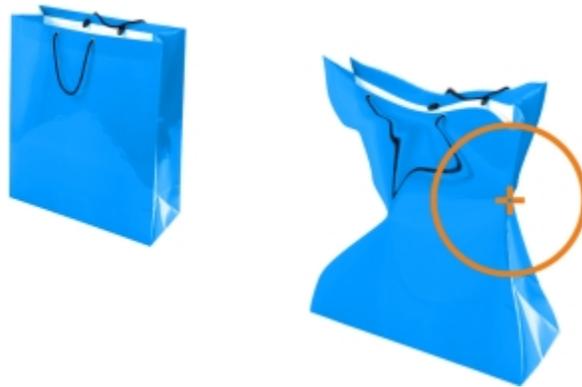
To adjust the speed, you can also drag in the image window while holding down **Alt**.

Click the **Counterclockwise twirl** button  or the **Clockwise twirl** button  on the property bar.

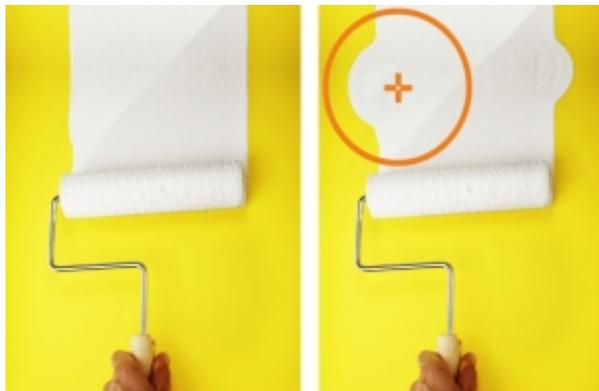
Click the **Pen pressure** button  on the property bar.

## Reshaping image areas by pulling or pushing away pixels

The **Liquid attract** and **Liquid repel** tools let you shape image areas by pulling or pushing away pixels. To control the shaping effect, you can change the size of the brush nib and the speed at which the pixels are attracted or pushed away, and you can use the pressure of your digital pen.



*Using the Liquid attract tool to reshape an image area*



*Using the Liquid repel tool to reshape an image area*

## To reshape an image area by pulling or pushing away pixels

1 In the toolbox, click one of the following tools:

- Liquid attract 
- Liquid repel 

2 Click in the image, and hold down the mouse button.

### You can also

Set the size of the brush nib

Type a value in the **Nib size** box on the property bar.

To change the size of the brush nib, you can also drag in the image window while holding down **Shift**. Drag towards the nib's center to decrease the radius, or away from the nib's center to increase it.

Set the speed of the effect

Type a value in the **Rate** box on the property bar.

To adjust the speed, you can also drag in the image window while holding down **Alt**.

Use the pressure of a digital pen to control the effect

Click the **Pen pressure** button  on the property bar.

## Color, fills, and transparencies

Working with color.....	159
Changing color modes.....	179
Using color management.....	185
Filling images.....	201
Working with transparency.....	209
Managing and sharing fills and transparencies.....	217





# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Working with color

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you choose and create colors by using a wide variety of industry-standard color palettes, color mixers, and [color models](#). You can store frequently used colors for future use by using the Image palette or creating and editing custom [color palettes](#).

You can customize how a color palette appears on your screen by changing the size of [swatches](#), the number of rows, and other properties.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Understanding color models” (page 159)
- “Understanding color depth” (page 161)
- “Choosing colors” (page 161)
- “Using the Image palette” (page 168)
- “Creating and editing custom color palettes” (page 169)
- “Setting the properties of color palettes” (page 174)
- “Using spot color channels” (page 175)

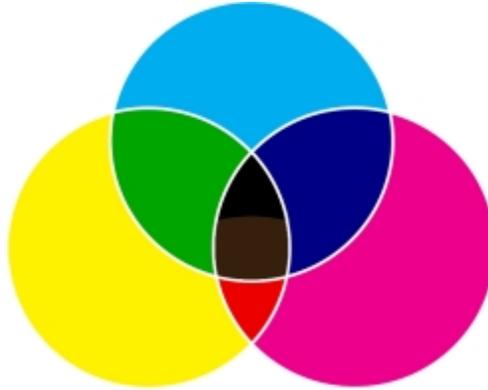
### Understanding color models

[Color models](#) provide a precise method for defining colors, each model defining colors through the use of specific color components. There is a range of color models to choose from when creating graphics.

#### CMYK color model

The [CMYK](#) color model, which is used in printing, uses the components cyan (C), magenta (M), yellow (Y), and black (K) to define color. Values for these components range from 0 to 100 and represent percentages.

In [subtractive](#) color models, such as CMYK, color (that is, ink) is added to a surface, such as white paper. The color then “subtracts” brightness from the surface. When the value of each color component (C,M,Y) is 100, the resulting color is black. When the value of each component is 0, no color is added to the surface, so the surface itself is revealed — in this case, the white paper. Black (K) is included in the color model for printing purposes because black ink is more neutral and darker than blending equal amounts of cyan, magenta, and yellow. Black ink produces sharper results, especially for printed text. In addition, black ink is usually less expensive than using colored ink.

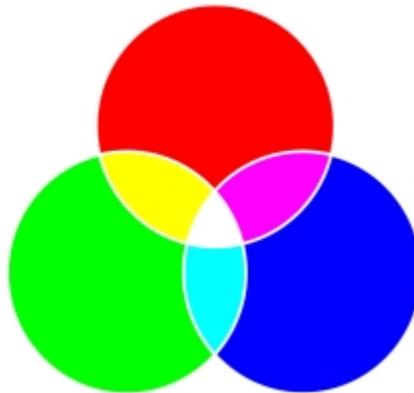


*Black is the result of combining the three CMY colors at their highest intensities.*

### RGB color model

The **RGB** color model uses the components red (R), green (G), and blue (B) to define the amounts of red, green, and blue light in a given color. In a 24-bit image, each component is expressed as a number from 0 to 255. In an image with a higher bit rate, such as a 48-bit image, the value range is greater. The combination of these components defines a single color.

In additive color models, such as RGB, color is produced from transmitted light. RGB is therefore used on monitors, where red, blue, and green lights are blended in various ways to reproduce a wide range of colors. When red, blue, and green lights are combined at their maximum intensities, the eye perceives the resulting color as white. In theory, the colors are still red, green, and blue, but the pixels on a monitor are too close together for the eye to differentiate the three colors. When the value of each component is 0, which signifies an absence of light, the eye perceives the color as black.



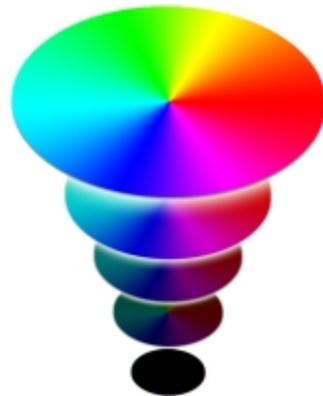
*White is the result of combining the three RGB colors at their maximum intensities.*

RGB is the most commonly used color model, because it allows a broad range of colors to be stored and displayed.

### HSB color model

The **HSB** color model uses **hue** (H), **saturation** (S), and **brightness** (B) as components for defining color. HSB is also known as HSV (with the components hue, saturation, and value). Hue describes the pigment of a color and is expressed in degrees to represent the location on the standard color wheel. For example, red is 0 degrees, yellow is 60 degrees, green is 120 degrees, cyan is 180 degrees, blue is 240 degrees, and magenta is 300 degrees.

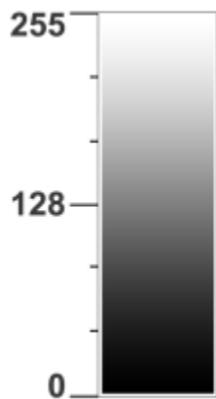
Saturation describes the vividness or dullness of a color. Values of saturation range from 0 to 100 and represent percentages (the higher the value, the more vivid the color). Brightness describes the amount of white in the color. Like saturation values, brightness values range from 0 to 100 and represent percentages (the higher the value, the brighter the color).



*HSB color model*

### Grayscale color model

The [grayscale](#) color model defines color by using only one component, lightness, which is measured in values ranging from 0 to 255. Each grayscale color has equal values of the red, green, and blue components of the RGB color model. Changing a color photo to grayscale creates a black-and-white photo.



*Grayscale color model*

### Understanding color depth

Color depth refers to the maximum number of colors an image can contain. Color depth is determined by the [bit depth](#) of an image (the number of binary bits that define the shade or color of each pixel in a bitmap). For example, a pixel with a bit depth of 1 can have two values: black and white. The greater the bit depth, the more colors an image can contain, and the more accurate the color representation is. For example, an 8-bit GIF image can contain up to 256 colors, but a 24-bit JPEG image can contain approximately 16 million colors.

Usually, RGB, grayscale, and CMYK images contain 8 bits of data per color channel. That is why an RGB image is often referred to as 24-bit RGB (8 bits x 3 channels), a grayscale image is referred to as 8-bit grayscale (8 bits x channel), and a CMYK image is referred to as 32-bit CMYK (8 bits x 4 channels).

Regardless of how many colors an image contains, the image displayed onscreen is limited to the highest number of colors supported by the monitor on which it is viewed. For example, an 8-bit monitor can display only up to 256 colors in a 24-bit image.

### Choosing colors

You can choose background, foreground, and fill colors by selecting a color from the color control area, [color palettes](#), color viewers, color harmonies, or color blends and by sampling colors from an image.

For information about applying the colors you choose, see [“Applying uniform fills” on page 201](#), [“Drawing and painting” on page 265](#), and [“Working with objects” on page 311](#).

### Color control area

In the color control area, you can view the selected foreground, background, and fill colors, and you can choose new colors. The foreground color applies to all the paint tools, and to the color of text when it is first typed. The background color applies to the background of the image window, and the fill color swatch indicates the selected fill type and color.

### Default color palette

A [color palette](#) is a collection of color swatches. In some programs, color palettes are known as “swatch palettes.”

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, the default color palette is based on the color mode of the image. For example, if you open a CMYK image, a CMYK palette appears in the image window, if you open a paletted image, an RGB palette appears in the image window.

You can choose foreground, background, and fill colors by using the default color palette, which contains colors from the [RGB](#) color model.

### Image palette

When you create a new image, the application automatically generates an empty palette, called the Image palette. It helps you keep track of the colors that you use by storing them for future use. For more information, see [“Using the Image palette” on page 168](#).

### Palette libraries and custom color palettes

The color palettes that are found in the Palette libraries cannot be edited directly. Some of them are provided by third-party manufacturers, for example [PANTONE](#), HKS Colors, and TRUMATCH. It may be useful to have on hand a manufacturer’s swatch book, which is a collection of color samples that shows exactly what each color looks like when printed.

Some palettes found in the Palette libraries — [PANTONE](#), HKS Colors, TOYO, DIC, Focoltone, and SpectraMaster — are collections of [spot colors](#). If you create [color separations](#) when you print, each spot color requires a separate printing plate, which can significantly affect the cost of the printing job. If you want to use color separations but would like to avoid using spot colors, you can convert the spot colors to [process colors](#) when printing. For more information, see [“Printing color separations” on page 408](#).

Custom color palettes can include colors from any [color model](#), including palettes found in the Palette libraries, such as a spot color palette. You can save a custom color palette for future use. For more information about working with custom color palettes, see [“Creating and editing custom color palettes” on page 169](#).

### Sampling colors

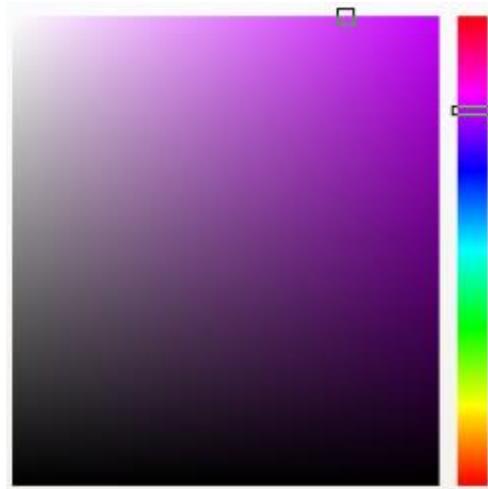
When you want to use a color that already exists in an object or image, you can sample the color to achieve an exact match. By default, you sample a single pixel from the image window.

When you sample a color from a photo, what looks to be a solid-colored area may actually be subtly shaded or [dithered](#). In this case, it is useful to average the colors of [pixels](#) in a larger sample area. You can set the sample area to 3 × 3 pixels, or to 5 × 5 pixels for [high-resolution](#) images. You can also sample pixels in a selected area.

If you want to sample and use numerous colors from the image window, you can store them on a custom color palette. For more information on custom color palettes, see [“Creating and editing custom color palettes” on page 169](#).

### Color viewers

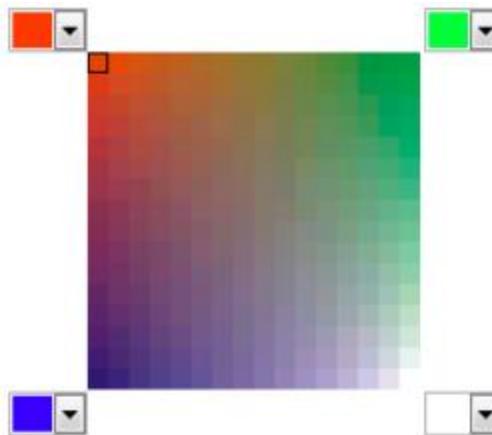
Color viewers provide a representation of a range of colors by using either one-dimensional or three-dimensional shapes. The default color viewer is based on the [HSB](#) color model, but you can use this viewer to choose [CMYK](#), [CMY](#), or [RGB](#) colors. For information about color models, see [“Understanding color models” on page 159](#).



*An example of a color viewer*

### Color blends

When you choose a color by using color blends, you combine base colors to produce the color you want. The color blender displays a grid of colors that it creates from the four base colors you choose.



*An example of color blends*

### Choosing web colors

You can use web colors when you design documents that will be published to the web. With Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can define web colors by using RGB hexadecimal values (for example, #aa003f).

#### To choose a color by using the color control area

- 1 In the color control area of the toolbox, double-click one of the following:
  - **Foreground** color swatch 
  - **Background** color swatch 
- 2 Move the color slider to set the range of colors displayed in the color selection area.
- 3 Click in the color selection area to choose a color.

## You can also

Choose a fill color

Return color swatches to their default colors

Switch the foreground and background colors

Double-click the **Fill color** swatch in the color control area, click the **Uniform fill**  swatch, and click **Edit**.

Click the **Reset color** icon . The foreground and fill colors return to black, and the background color returns to white.

Click the arrow  in the upper-right corner of the color control area.



You can also choose foreground, background, and fill colors by using the Color docker. To open the Color docker, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Color**.

## To choose a color by using the default color palette

### To

Choose a foreground color

Choose a background color

Choose a fill color

### Do the following

Click a color swatch.

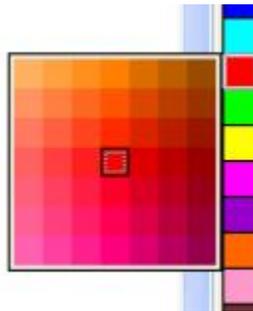
Hold down **Ctrl**, and click a color swatch.

Right-click a color swatch.



You can display color names by pointing to a [swatch](#).

You can also choose foreground, background, and fill colors by using the **Color** docker. To open the **Color** docker, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Color**.



*An example of a pop-up color palette*

## To choose a color by using a color palette

1 In the color control area of the toolbox, double-click one of the following:

- **Foreground color swatch** 
- **Background color swatch** 

2 Click the **Palettes** tab .

3 Choose a color [palette](#) from the **Palette** list box.

4 Move the color slider to set the range of colors displayed in the color selection area.

5 Click a color in the color selection area.

## You can also

Choose a fill color

Double-click the **Fill** color swatch  in the color control area, click the **Uniform fill** button  in the **Select fill** dialog box, and click **Edit**.

Swap colors

Click **Options** ▶ **Swap colors**. This swaps the **Old** color (the current foreground or background color) and the **New** color (which has been chosen in the color selection area).



Each spot **color swatch** on a color palette is marked with a small white square.

You should use the same **color model** for all colors in an image; the colors will be consistent, and you will be able to predict the colors of the final output more accurately. For more information about reproducing colors accurately, see “Using color management” on page 185.



You can also access color palettes in the **Color** docker by clicking the **Show color palettes**  button, and choosing a palette from the list box. If the **Color** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Color**.

## To sample a color

- 1 Click the **Eyedropper** tool .
- 2 Click the image to choose a foreground color.

The default sample size is 1 **pixel**.

## You can also

Increase the sample size

Click the **3 × 3** button  on the property bar.

Increase the sample size for a high-resolution image

Click the **5 × 5** button  on the property bar.

Sample a color from a selected area

Click the **Select sample** button  on the property bar and drag in the image window to select an area.

Choose a background color

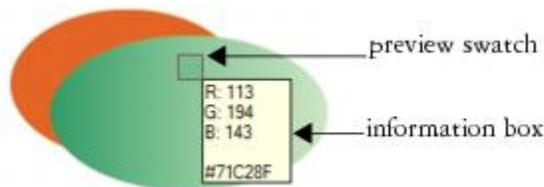
Press **Control**, and click the image.

Choose a fill color

Right-click the image.



In the image window, a preview **swatch** is attached to the **Eyedropper** tool, along with an information box listing the **color model** component values. When you sample an RGB color, the information box also includes the hexadecimal color value.





You can also activate the **Eyedropper** tool by pressing the **E** key. Click the **Spacebar** to return to the previously selected tool.

You can also use the **Image info** docker to view the color model component values for an image pixel, such as the red, green, and blue components of a pixel in an **RGB** image or its hexadecimal color value. If the **Image info** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Info**.

### To choose a color by using a color viewer

- 1 In the color control area of the toolbox, double-click one of the following:
  - **Foreground** color swatch 
  - **Background** color swatch 
- 2 Click the **Models** tab .
- 3 Choose a **color model** from the **Model** list box.
- 4 Click **Options**, choose **Color viewers**, and click a color viewer.
- 5 Move the color slider.
- 6 Click a color in the color selection area.

### You can also

Sample a color from the image

Click the **Eyedropper** tool , and click the image or desktop.

Choose a fill color

Double-click the **Fill color** swatch , in the color control area, click the **Uniform** fill button  in the **Select fill** dialog box, and click **Edit**.

Swap colors

Click **Options**, and choose **Swap colors**. This swaps the **Old** color (the current foreground or background color) and the **New** color (which has been chosen in the color selection area).



If you choose a color that is outside of the printer **gamut**, Corel PHOTO-PAINT allows you to replace it with a similar color that is in the printer's gamut. To replace the color, click the **Bring color into gamut** button, which appears to the left of the **New color** swatch. For information about color correction, see ["Using color management" on page 185](#).

You should use the same color model for all colors in an image; the colors will be consistent and you will be able to predict the colors of the final output more accurately. It is preferable to use the same color model in your drawing that you will be using for the final output.



When you choose a color that is out of the printer's gamut, the **Bring color into gamut** button appears below the Eyedropper button.



You can choose a fill color by double-clicking the **Fill color swatch**  in the color control area. Click the **Uniform fill** button  in the **Select fill** dialog box, and click **Edit**.

You can swap the **Old** color (the current foreground or background color) and the **New** color (which has been chosen in the color selection area) by clicking **Options** ▶ **Swap colors**.

You can also access color models in the **Color** docker by clicking the **Show color viewers** button  and choosing a color model from the list box. If the **Color** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Color**.

### To choose a color by using color blends

- 1 In the color control area of the toolbox, double-click one of the following:
  - **Foreground color swatch** 
  - **Background color swatch** 
- 2 Click the **Mixers** tab.
- 3 Click **Options**, choose **Mixers**, and then click **Color blend**.
- 4 Open each color picker, and click a color.
- 5 Click a color in the color selection area.

### You can also

Sample a color from the image

Click the **Eyedropper** tool , and click the image or desktop.



Only colors that are on the default **color palette** can be blended. To blend other colors, you must change the default color palette.

### To choose a web color

- 1 Click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Color**.
- 2 In the **Color** docker, click the **Fill**, **Background**, or **Foreground** color swatch and choose **Default RGB** palette from the list.
- 3 Type or paste a value in the **Hex value** box.

Whether you use a three-digit (#fff) or six-digit format (#ffffff), the final value is presented in the six-digit format.



You can specify hexadecimal color values only when working with RGB colors.  
If you type an invalid hexadecimal value, the color does not change.

You can view hexadecimal color values on the status bar.

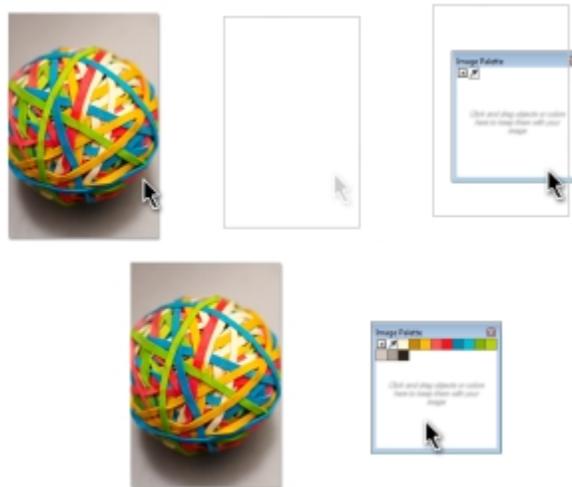


You can also choose web colors from the **Foreground color**, **Background color**, or **Uniform fill** dialog boxes. These dialog boxes also let you view and copy the hexadecimal equivalents of non-RGB colors.

## Using the Image palette

When you start a new image, an empty color palette, named the Image palette, appears docked in the lower-left corner of the image window. Every time you use a color in your image, it's automatically added to the Image palette. However, if you prefer to control which colors are added to the Image palette, you can disable the automatic updates and add colors manually.

You can add colors from a color palette, an external image, a color picker, or a color-related dialog box, such as the Uniform fill color dialog boxes. In addition, you can add colors from an imported image or object.



*Drag an image or object to the Image palette to add colors.*

You can clear the Image palette of any unwanted or unused colors by removing colors individually or resetting the palette to remove all unused colors at once.

When you open an image that was created in a previous version of Corel PHOTO-PAINT, the Image palette does not contain any colors. However, you can easily build the Image palette by adding colors from the entire image, an [editable area](#), or a selected [object](#).

You can also hide the Image palette.

### To disable the automatic adding of color to the Image palette

- In the top left corner of the Image palette, click the flyout button , and click **Automatically update**.



You can also disable the automatic adding of color by clicking **Tools** ► **Options**, clicking **Color palette** in the **Customization** list of categories, and then disabling the **Automatically update the image palette** check box.

## To add a color to the Image palette

### To

Add all colors from an image

Add a color from an image

Add multiple colors from an image

Add the dominant colors from an object or image by dragging

Add colors from an editable area

Add colors from one or multiple objects

Add a color from a color-related dialog box

### Do the following

In the top left corner of the Image palette, click the flyout button, and click **Add colors from image**.

In the Image palette, click the Eyedropper tool, and click the image.

In the Image palette, click the Eyedropper tool, hold down **Ctrl**, and click the image until you add the colors that you want.

With the object or image open in the image window, drag the object or image to the Image palette.

Define an [editable area](#). In the top left corner of the Image palette, click the flyout button, and click **Add colors from visible**.

Select one or more objects. In the top left corner of the Image palette, click the flyout button, and click **Add colors from objects**.

In the dialog box, click a color swatch, then click **Add to palette** ► **Image palette**.



When dragging an image to the Image palette, only the five most dominant colors are added. Colors from PostScript fills are not supported.



You can deselect the **Eyedropper** tool by pressing **Esc**.

You can move a color swatch by dragging a color swatch to a new position.

## To remove a color from the Image palette

- 1 Click a color swatch on the Image palette.
- 2 In the top left corner of the Image palette, click the flyout button , and click **Delete color**.

## To reset the Image palette

- In the top left corner of the Image palette, click the flyout button , and click **Palette** ► **Reset palette**.

## To show or hide the Image palette

- Click **Windows** ► **Color palette** ► **Image palette**.

## Creating and editing custom color palettes

Custom [color palettes](#) are collections of colors or color styles that you save. They can include colors or color styles from any color model, including spot colors, or any color palette found in the Palette libraries. You can create a custom palette to store all colors or color styles that you need in a current, or future, project.

It's easy to share color palettes with others. The custom palettes are accessible from the **My palettes** folder in the Color Palette Manager.

You can create a custom color palette by choosing individual colors, or by using colors in an [object](#), an [editable area](#), or an entire image. You can also add custom spot colors to any custom palette. You can also edit, rename, and delete custom color palettes.

Custom color palettes are saved as XML files and are stored in the **My Documents\My Palettes** folder.

### To create a custom color palette from scratch

- 1 Click **Window ▶ Color palettes ▶ Palette editor**.
- 2 Click the **New palette** button.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Save**.
- 5 In the **Palette editor** dialog box, click **Add color**.
- 6 In the **Select color** dialog box, choose a color, and click **Add to palette**.

#### You can also

Treat the color as a spot color

In the **Selected color** area of the **Palette editor** dialog box, choose **Spot** from the **Treat as** list.

Treat the color as a process color

In the **Selected color** area of the **Palette editor** dialog box, choose **Process** from the **Treat as** list.

Rename a color

In the **Palette editor** dialog box, click a color in the color selection area, and type a name in the **Name** box.

### To add a color to a custom color palette

- 1 Open a custom color palette.
- 2 Perform a task from the following table.

#### To

Add a color from another color palette

#### Do the following

Drag a color from an open color palette to the custom palette.

Add a color from an image

On the custom palette, click the **Eyedropper** button , and click the color that you want to add.

Add multiple colors from an image

On the custom palette, click the **Eyedropper** button , hold down **Ctrl**, and click the image until you add the colors that you want.

Add multiple colors from an image or object

Drag an image or object from the drawing window to the custom palette.

Add a color from a color-related dialog box

In the dialog box, click a color swatch, click the arrow next to **Add to palette**, choose the name of your custom palette from the list, and then click **Add to palette**.

Add all colors from an image

In the top left corner of the custom palette, click the flyout button , and click **Add colors from image**.

Add colors from one or multiple

Select one or more objects. In the top left corner of the Image palette, click the flyout button , and click **Add colors from objects**.

## To

Add colors from an editable area

Move a color swatch



When dragging an image to the Image palette, only the five most dominant colors are added. Colors from PostScript fills are not supported.

## To create a color palette from an editable area

- 1 Define an [editable area](#).
- 2 Click **Window** ► **Color palettes** ► **Create palette from visible**.
- 3 Click **Save palette as** .
- 4 Type a filename.
- 5 Click **Save**.



For information about defining editable areas, see “[Defining editable areas](#)” on page 225.

## To create a color palette from an image

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Color palettes** ► **Create palette from document**.
- 2 Type a filename.
- 3 Click **Save**.

## To edit a custom color palette

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Color palettes** ► **Palette editor**.
- 2 Choose a [palette](#) from the list box.
- 3 Perform a task from the following table.

## To

Add a color

Treat a color as a spot color

Treat a color as a process color

Change a color

Delete a color

Sort colors

## Do the following

Define an [editable area](#). In the top left corner of the custom palette, click the flyout button , and click **Add colors from visible**.

Drag a color swatch to a new position on the palette.

## Do the following

Click **Add color**. In the **Select color** dialog box, click the **Models** tab, click a color in the color selection area, and click **Add to palette**.

In the **Selected color** area of the **Palette editor** dialog box, choose **Spot** from the **Treat as** list.

In the **Selected color** area of the **Palette editor** dialog box, choose **Process** from the **Treat as** list.

In the color selection area, click a color, and click **Edit color**. In the **Select color** dialog box, click the **Models** tab, and click a new color in the color selection area.

In the color selection area, click a color, and click **Delete color**.

Click **Sort colors**, and choose a color sorting method.

## To

Move a color

Rename a color

## Do the following

Drag a color swatch to a new position.

Click a color in the color selection area, and type a name in the **Name** box.



You can delete multiple colors by holding down **Shift** or **Ctrl**, clicking the colors that you want to delete, and clicking **Delete color**.

## To rename a custom color palette

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Color palettes** ► **Color palette manager**.
- 2 From the **My Palettes** folder, right-click a custom **palette**, and click **Rename**.
- 3 Type a new name, and press **Enter**.

## To delete a custom color palette

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Color palettes** ► **Color palette manager**.
- 2 From the **My Palettes** folder, right-click a custom **palette**, and click **Delete**.

## Organizing and displaying color palettes

The Color Palette Manager is a docker that lets you quickly access the available color palettes, including the Image palette, and the Color Styles palette, and create custom color palettes. The color palettes in the Color Palette Manager are divided into two main folders: **My palettes** and **Palette libraries**.

You can use the **My palettes** folder to store all the custom color palettes that you create. You can add folders to store and organize your color palettes for different projects. You can also copy a color palette or move it to a different folder. You can open and control the display of all color palettes.

The **Palette libraries** folder of the Color Palette Manager contains collections of preset color palettes from which you can choose colors. You cannot edit any of the color palettes that are found in the **Palette libraries**. However, you can create a custom color palette by copying a color palette from the **Palette libraries** folder. For more information, see “[Displaying or hiding color palettes in the Palette libraries](#)” on page 173.

## To open the Color Palette Manager

- Click **Window** ► **Color palettes** ► **Color palette manager**.

## To display or hide a custom color palette

- 1 Open the Color Palette Manager.
- 2 In the **My palettes** folder, click the **Show or hide** icon  beside the custom palette name.

If you want to set a custom color palette as the default palette, click the custom palette flyout button , and click **Set as default**.

## To open a custom color palette

- 1 Open the Color Palette Manager.
- 2 Click the **Opens a palette** button .
- 3 Choose the drive and folder where the custom color palette is stored.

If you want to open a color palette (.cpl file) that was created in a previous version of Corel PHOTO-PAINT, select **Legacy custom palette (\*.cpl)** from the **Files of type** list box.

- 4 Click the custom palette.
- 5 Click **Open**.



When you open a legacy custom palette (.cpl) file, it is automatically converted to the XML format (.xml). The XML version is stored in the `x:\Documents and Settings\your name\My Documents` folder, and also appears in the **My palettes** folder in the Color Palette Manager.



If the custom color palette (.xml) was saved to the **My palettes** folder, you can open it by clicking **Window ▶ Color palettes** and choosing the custom palette from the list.

### To create a folder for storing custom color palettes

- 1 Open the Color Palette Manager.
- 2 Click the **Create a new folder** button .
- 3 Type a new name, and press **Enter**.

If you want to move a custom color palette, drag it to the new folder.

### To cut or copy a custom color palette

- 1 Open the Color Palette Manager.
- 2 In the **My palettes** folder, right-click a custom **palette**, and click one of the following:
  - **Cut**
  - **Copy**

If you want to paste the custom palette to a different folder, right-click the folder, and click **Paste**.

### To copy a palette from the Palette libraries for editing

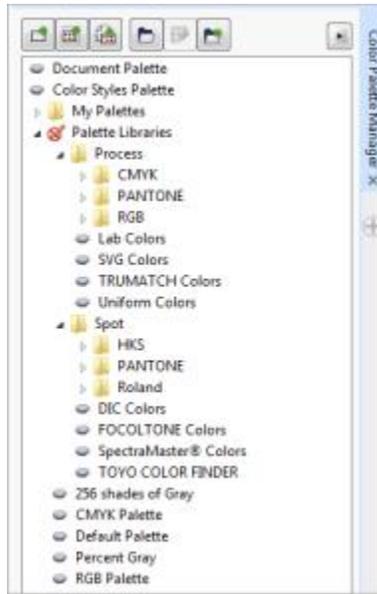
- 1 Open the Color Palette Manager.
- 2 Drag a palette from the **Palette libraries** folder to the **My palettes** folder.

An editable copy of the color palette appears in the **My palettes** folder.

## Displaying or hiding color palettes in the Palette libraries

The Palette libraries contain a collection of color palettes. You can control the display of the default color palettes, such as the default RGB and default CMYK color palettes. The main Palette libraries that are included are Process color and Spot color.

The Process color library contains the default RGB, CMYK, and Grayscale color palettes. In addition, you can find preset color palettes that have a specific theme, such as nature. The Spot color library contains color palettes that are provided by third-party manufacturers, such as HKS Colors, PANTONE, Focoltone, and TOYO. These color palettes can be very useful when you need specific company-approved colors for your printed projects. The color palette libraries are locked, which means that you cannot edit them.



Palette libraries

### To display a color palette in the Palette libraries

- 1 Open the Color Palette Manager.
- 2 In the **Palette libraries** folder, click the **Show or hide** icon  beside the color palette name.

### To display spot or process color palettes

- 1 Open the Color Palette Manager.
- 2 In the **Palette libraries** folder, double-click one of the following folders:
  - **Spot**
  - **Process**
- 3 Click the **Show or hide** icon  beside the color palette name.

## Setting the properties of color palettes

You can customize [color palettes](#).

Color palettes can be either docked or floating. Docking a color palette attaches it to the edge of the application window. Undocking a color palette pulls it away from the edge of the application window, so it floats and can be easily moved around.

With [color swatches](#), you can set the right mouse button either to display a context menu or set the fill color. You can also adjust the color swatch border and size.

### To dock or undock a color palette

To

Dock a color palette

Do the following

Click the top of the color palette border, and drag the color palette to any edge of the application window until a thin black toolbar outline appears.

## To

Undock a color palette

Change the number of rows on a docked color palette



You can also change the number of rows on a docked color palette by clicking **Tools ► Customization**, clicking **Color palette** in the **Customization** list of categories, and typing a value in the **Maximum palette rows when docked** box. You can set a maximum of seven rows on a color palette.

## Do the following

Click the dotted border of the color palette, and drag the color palette away from the edge of the application window.

On the palette, click the flyout button , click **Rows**, and choose an option from the list.

## To set the action of the right mouse button for color swatches

- 1 Click **Tools ► Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Color palette**.
- 3 Enable one of the following check boxes:
  - **Context menu**
  - **Set fill color**

## To customize color swatches

- 1 Click **Tools ► Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Color palette**.
- 3 Enable or disable any of the following check boxes:
  - **Wide borders**
  - **Large swatches**



You can also display color names in the color swatches by clicking the flyout button  on a color palette and clicking **Show color names**.

## Using spot color channels

Spot color **channels** let you view, edit, and preserve **spot color** information in files. Whether you are importing a file that uses spot colors or you add spot colors in Corel PHOTO-PAINT, spot color channels ensure that your color information is maintained when you output the file. The spot color is stored in an 8-bit grayscale channel that preserves information such as which spot color to use, where to apply the ink, and at what density.

You can create a new spot color channel, assign a color and name to the channel, and then add content. For example, you can paint, draw shapes, apply effects, or paste content onto the channel. When you paste an **object** or **selection** to a spot color channel, it is added as an **editable area**. You can modify the editable area before you commit it to the spot color channel. For more information about modifying editable areas, see [“Working with masks” on page 223](#).

When you preview your image, you can choose whether spot colors mix with underlying colors (**overprint**) or cover underlying colors. This can be used to simulate opaque or transparent inks.

You can also select, edit, and change the properties of existing spot color channels. For example, if you open or import an image that contains spot color channels, you can edit channel content, rename a channel, or change the spot color of a channel. When you view images, you can choose to hide or display the contents of spot color channels or change the order of the channels. You can copy spot color channels between images and you can delete spot color channels when you no longer need them.

Whether you are creating a new channel or editing an existing one, you can add or erase channel content by changing the color for the tool you are using. For example, painting with black applies a solid color, painting with white erases the color, and painting with gray applies a [tint](#) of the color.

You can save your work to the CPT file format if you will be doing further editing. You can also save to the PSD file format or export to the DCS, PDF, or EPS file format if you are ready to print.

## To create a spot color channel

- 1 In the **Channels** docker, click the flyout arrow , and choose **New spot color channel**.  
If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Channels**.
- 2 In the **New spot color channel** dialog box, choose a color from the color picker.
- 3 Type a name for the [channel](#) in the **Name** box if you do not want to use the spot color name for the channel.
- 4 From the **Ink properties** box, choose one of the following options:
  - **Solid** — Colors underneath do not affect the ink color unless the ink density is less than 100 percent.
  - **Transparent** — Colors underneath show through. This option lets you preview [overprinting](#).
- 5 Enable one of the following options:
  - **Empty channel** — creates an empty channel (no ink applied)
  - **Fill with color** — creates a channel filled with the ink color
- 6 Click **OK**.

The new spot color channel appears in the **Channel** docker under the current channels. The new spot color channel is displayed and other channels are hidden.



You can also create a new channel by clicking the **New spot color channel** button  in the **Channels** docker.

The Pantone Solid Coated palette is the default color palette, but you can access other palettes from the color picker by clicking **Other**, and choosing a palette from the **Palette** list box in the **Select color** dialog box.

## To select a spot color channel

- In the **Channels** docker, click a spot color channel in the **Channels** list.  
A red outline appears around the thumbnail for a channel when the channel is selected.
- If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Channels**.

## To change the properties of a spot color channel

- 1 In the **Channels** docker window, choose a [spot color channel](#) from the **Channels** list.
- 2 Click the flyout button  in the upper-right corner of the docker, and click **Channel properties**.
- 3 In the **Spot color channel properties** dialog box, perform a task from the following table.

To

Change the spot color

Choose a color from the color picker.

Rename the channel

Type a name in the **Name** box.

Change the ink properties

From the **Ink properties** box, choose one of the following options:

- **Solid** — Colors underneath do not affect the ink color unless the ink density is less than 100 percent.
- **Transparent** — Colors underneath show through. This option lets you preview [overprinting](#).



You can also double-click a spot color channel in the **Channels** docker to access the **Spot color channel properties** dialog box.

### To paste content to a spot color channel

- 1 Copy an [object](#) or [selection](#) to the [Clipboard](#).

If you want to copy the object to another image, open the image in which you want to paste the content.

- 2 In the **Channels** docker, select a spot color channel.

- 3 Click **Edit** ▶ **Paste** ▶ **Paste as new selection**.

The content appears as an [editable area](#) surrounded by a [mask](#) (indicated by a colored [overlay](#) or a [marquee](#)). If you want to edit the area, do so now.

If you want to specify a uniform ink density for the area, right-click black (for a solid spot color) or right-click a shade of gray (for a [tint](#)), click the **Fill** tool , and click the editable area.

- 4 Click **Mask** ▶ **Remove**.

The pasted content is now committed to the spot color channel.



Image dimensions and image [resolution](#) affect how spot color channel information is pasted between images. For best results, copy and paste spot color channels between images that are similar in image dimensions and are the same image resolution.

### To display or hide a spot color channel

- In the **Channels** docker, click the eye icon  beside a spot color [channel](#).

The eye appears closed when channel content is hidden; the eye appears open when channel content is visible.

If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Channels**.

### To change the order of spot color channels

- In the **Channels** docker, click a spot color channel in the **Channels** list, and drag it to a new position.

### To copy a spot color channel

- 1 In the **Channels** docker, select the spot color channel that you want to copy.

- 2 Click **Edit** ▶ **Copy**.

- 3 Open the image to which you want to paste the spot color channel.

- 4 Click **Edit** ▶ **Paste** ▶ **Paste as new object**.

The spot color channel appears at the bottom of the **Channels** list in the **Channels** docker.



Image dimensions and image [resolution](#) affect how spot color channel information is pasted between images. For best results, copy and paste spot color channels between images that are similar in image dimensions and are the same image resolution.

### To delete a spot color channel

- 1 In the **Channels** docker window, click a spot color [channel](#) in the **Channels** list.

- 2 Click the **Delete current channel** button .





# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Changing color modes

Changing an image to another **color mode**, such as **RGB**, **CMYK**, or **grayscale**, changes the image's color structure and size and can affect how the image is displayed and printed.

This section contains the following topics:

- [“Changing the color mode of images” \(page 179\)](#)
- [“Converting images to the black-and-white color mode” \(page 181\)](#)
- [“Converting images to the paletted color mode” \(page 181\)](#)
- [“Converting images to the duotone color mode” \(page 183\)](#)

### Changing the color mode of images

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, the colors of images are defined by **color modes**. Computer monitors display images in the **RGB** color mode; images in Corel PHOTO-PAINT are created in the RGB color mode by default. You can convert images to different color modes, depending on their intended use. For example, it is recommended that images sent for high-end printing be in the **CMYK** color mode. For the World Wide Web, photos should be in the RGB color mode and **GIF** images should be in the **paletted** color mode.

Color modes are described by their component colors and bit depth. For example, the RGB (24-bit) color mode is composed of red, green, and blue **channels** and has a bit depth of 24 bits. Similarly, the CMYK (32-bit) color mode is composed of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black channels and has a bit depth of 32 bits. Each channel has a bit depth of 8 bits.

Although on the screen you may not be able to see the difference between an image in the CMYK color mode and an image in the RGB color mode, the images are quite different. Colors from the RGB color space can cover a greater range of the visual spectrum (they have a larger gamut) than those from the CMYK color space. For the same image dimensions, a CMYK image has a larger file size than an RGB image, but it contains the channels necessary to print standard inks.

Each time you convert an image, you may lose color information. For this reason, you should finish editing and then save an image before you convert it to a new color mode.

Color modes are based on standard color models used to describe, classify, and reproduce color digitally. For more information about the CMYK, RGB, **HSB**, and grayscale color models, see [“Understanding color models” on page 159](#).

Corel PHOTO-PAINT supports the following color modes:

- Black-and-white (1-bit)
- Duotone (8-bit)
- RGB color (24-bit)
- Grayscale (8-bit)
- Paletted (8-bit)
- Lab color (24-bit)

- CMYK color (32-bit)
- Grayscale (16-bit)
- NTSC RGB (video)
- Multichannel
- RGB color (48-bit)
- PAL RGB (video)

The black-and-white, paletted, and duotone color modes provide conversion options. For more information, see

- “Converting images to the black-and-white color mode” on page 181
- “Converting images to the paletted color mode” on page 181
- “Converting images to the duotone color mode” on page 183



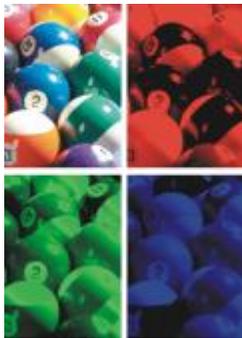
*RGB original*



*Converted to CMYK*



*Converted to the Paletted color mode*



*Converted to the Multichannel*



*Converted to the Black-and-white*



*Converted to grayscale*

### To change the color mode of an image

- Click **Image**, and click one of the following:
  - Convert to grayscale (8-bit)
  - Convert to RGB color (24-bit)
  - Convert to CMYK color (32-bit)
  - Convert to ▶ Lab color (24-bit)
  - Convert to ▶ Multichannel
  - Convert to ▶ Grayscale (16-bit)
  - Convert to ▶ RGB color (48-bit)
  - Convert to ▶ NTSC RGB
  - Convert to ▶ PAL RGB



The current mode of the image determines the modes to which the image can be converted. Modes which are not available are grayed.

The **Black-and-white (1-bit)**, **Paletted (8-bit)**, and **Duotone (8-bit)** color modes provide conversion options. For more information, see

- “Converting images to the black-and-white color mode” on page 181
- “Converting images to the paletted color mode” on page 181
- “Converting images to the duotone color mode” on page 183

## Converting images to the black-and-white color mode

You can convert images to the 1-bit black-and-white [color mode](#) to reduce file size, or to create artistic looks. The black-and-white color mode (also known in some programs as bitmap mode) is not the same as the [grayscale](#) color mode. In black-and-white images, each [pixel](#) must be either black or white; grayscale images can include black, white, and 254 shades of gray and are suitable for creating a black-and-white photo effect. For information about changing photos to grayscale, see “[To change the color mode of an image](#)” on page 180.

When you convert images to the black-and-white color mode, you can adjust settings — such as [threshold](#), screen type, and [intensity](#) — and choose from seven black-and-white conversion types:

- **Halftone** — creates different shades of gray by varying the pattern of black and white pixels in an image. You can choose the screen type, angle for the halftone, lines per unit, and the unit of measure.
- **Line art** — produces a high-contrast black-and-white image. Colors with a grayscale value lower than the threshold value that you set change to black, while colors with a grayscale value higher than the threshold value change to white.
- **Ordered** — organizes the gray levels into repeating geometric patterns of black and white pixels. Solid colors are emphasized and image edges are hard. This option is best suited for uniform colors, such as those used in charts and graphs.
- **Jarvis** — applies the Jarvis algorithm to individual pixels. This form of error diffusion is suitable for photographic images.
- **Stucki** — applies the Stucki algorithm to individual pixels. This form of error diffusion is suitable for photographic images.
- **Floyd-Steinberg** — applies the Floyd-Steinberg algorithm to individual pixels. This form of error diffusion is suitable for photographic images.
- **Cardinality-Distribution** — creates a textured look by applying a calculation and distributing the result to each pixel.

### To convert an image to the black-and-white color mode

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Convert to black-and-white (1-bit)**.
- 2 Choose a conversion option from the **Conversion** list box.
- 3 Specify the conversion settings you want.

If you want to view other parts of the image, drag the hand in the **Preview** window.

## Converting images to the paletted color mode

The [paletted](#) color mode, also called indexed color mode, is frequently used for [GIF](#) images on the web. When you convert a complex image to the paletted color mode, a fixed color value is assigned to each [pixel](#). These values are stored in a compact color table, or palette. As a result, the paletted image contains less data than the original, and it has a smaller file size. Paletted color mode is an 8-bit mode that stores and displays images by using up to 256 colors.

### Choosing, editing, and saving a color palette

When you change an image to the paletted color mode, you use a predefined or a custom [color palette](#) and then edit the palette by replacing individual colors. If you choose the Optimized color palette, you can also edit the palette by specifying a [range sensitivity](#) color. The color palette you use to convert the image is called the processed color palette, and it can be saved for use with other images.

For more information about creating custom color palettes, see “Working with color” on page 159.

## Dithering

Paletted images can only contain up to 256 different colors. If the original image contains many colors, you can use [dithering](#) to create the illusion of seeing more than 256 colors. Dithering creates additional colors and shades from an existing palette by interspersing [pixels](#) of different colors. The relationship of one colored pixel to another creates an optical mix, so you perceive additional colors.

Dithering can be done by distributing colors either regularly or randomly. Ordered dithering approximates color blends by using regular dot patterns; as a result, solid colors are emphasized and edges appear harder. Error diffusion scatters pixels randomly, making edges and colors softer. Jarvis, Stucki and Floyd-Steinberg are methods of error diffusion.

If your image contains only a few colors and simple shapes, you do not need to use dithering.

## Setting the color range for a custom color palette

When you change an image to the paletted color mode using the Optimized palette, you can choose a [seed color](#), or base color, and a range sensitivity for the seed color. The seed color, and similar colors that fall within the range settings, are included in the processed color palette. You can also specify how much emphasis to place on the range sensitivity. Because the palette has a maximum of 256 colors, emphasizing a seed color reduces the number of colors that fall outside the range sensitivity.

## Saving conversion options

After you choose a [color palette](#) and set the dithering and range sensitivity for the changing of an image to the paletted color mode, you can save the selected options as a conversion preset that you can use with other images. You can add and remove as many conversion presets as you want. You can also remove the presets you have added.

## Converting multiple images to the paletted color mode

You can change multiple images to the paletted color mode simultaneously. Before you perform a batch conversion, you must open the images in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. All images that you include in the batch are changed using the color palette and conversion options you specify.

## To convert an image to the paletted color mode

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Convert to paletted (8-bit)**.
- 2 Click the **Options** tab.
- 3 Choose one of the following [color palette](#) types from the **Palette** list box:
  - **Uniform** — provides a range of 256 colors with equal parts of red, green, and blue
  - **Standard VGA** — provides the Standard VGA 16-color palette
  - **Adaptive** — provides colors original to the image, and preserves the individual colors (the entire color spectrum) in the image
  - **Optimized** — creates a color palette based on the highest percentage of colors in the image. You can also select a [range sensitivity](#) color for the color palette.
  - **Black Body** — contains colors that are based on temperature. For example, black may represent cold temperatures, while red, orange, yellow, and white may represent hot temperatures.
  - **Grayscale** — provides 256 shades of gray, ranging from black (0) to white (255)
  - **System** — provides a palette of web-safe and [grayscale](#) colors
  - **Websafe** — provides a palette of 216 colors that are common to web browsers
- 4 Choose a [dithering](#) option from the **Dithering** list box.
- 5 Move the **Dither intensity** slider to adjust the amount of dithering.

## You can also

Save the conversion options as a preset

Click **Add preset** , and type a name in the **Save preset** box.

## You can also

Edit the processed color palette

Click the **Processed palette** tab, and click **Edit**. In the **Color table** dialog box, edit the color palette.

Save the processed color palette

Click the **Processed palette** tab, and click **Save**. Choose the folder where you want to save the processed color palette, and type a filename.



The **Ordered dithering** option is applied more quickly than are the error diffusion options **Jarvis**, **Stucki**, and **Floyd-Steinberg**; however, it is less accurate.



You can choose a custom color palette by clicking the **Options** tab, clicking **Open**, locating the color palette file you want, and double-clicking the filename.

You can load preset conversion options by choosing a preset from the **Presets** list box on the **Option** tab.

## To set the color range for a custom color palette

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Convert to paletted (8-bit)**.
- 2 Click the **Options** tab.
- 3 Choose **Optimized** from the **Palette** list box.
- 4 Enable the **Color range sensitivity to** check box.
- 5 Click the **Eyedropper** tool , and click a color in the image.
- 6 Click the **Range sensitivity** tab, and specify the settings you want.
- 7 Move the **range sensitivity** sliders.

If you want to view the [color palette](#), click the **Processed palette** tab.

## To convert multiple files to the paletted color mode

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Convert to paletted (8-bit)**.
- 2 Click the **Batch** tab.
- 3 From the left column, choose each file you want to change.
- 4 Click **Add**.



You can preview an image by choosing it from the **Preview image** list box and clicking **Preview**.

## Converting images to the duotone color mode

Duotone color mode is used for specialized color printing. A **duotone** image is a **grayscale** image that has been enhanced with the addition of one to four colored inks. The following list describes the duotone types:

- **monotone** — a grayscale image colored with a single ink
- **duotone** — a grayscale image colored with two inks. In most cases, the first ink is black and the other ink is colored.
- **tritone** — a grayscale image colored with three inks. In most cases, the first ink is black and the second and third inks are colored.
- **quadtone** — a grayscale image colored with four inks. In most cases, the first ink is black and the second, third, and fourth inks are colored.

## Adjusting tone curves

When you convert an image to the duotone **color mode**, a tone curve grid that represents the dynamic ink curves that are used throughout the conversion is displayed. The horizontal plane (x-axis) displays the 256 possible shades of gray in a grayscale image (0 is black; 255 is white). The vertical plane (y-axis) indicates the intensity of an ink (from 0 to 100 percent) that is applied to the corresponding grayscale values.

## Saving and loading inks for duotone conversion

After you choose a duotone type and adjust the tone curves for the inks used to change images to the duotone color mode, you can save the ink settings and load them for use with other images.

## Specifying how overprint colors display

When you change an image to the duotone color mode, you can specify which colors will overprint when you print an image. Overprint colors are the colors that have too much ink when two or more colors overlap. When you display the image, each color is applied on the screen in sequence, creating a layered effect.

You can view all instances in which the ink colors you choose overlap. Associated with each instance is the color that is produced by the overlap. You can also choose new overprint colors to see how they overlap.

## To convert an image to the duotone color mode

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Convert to** ► **Duotone (8-bit)**.
- 2 Click the **Curves** tab.
- 3 Click a **duotone** type from the **Type** list box.
- 4 Double-click an ink color in the **Type** window.
- 5 In the **Select color** dialog box, click a color, and click **OK**.

If you want to adjust the color's tone curve, click the ink tone curve on the grid to create a node, and drag the node to adjust the amount of color at that point on the grid.

## You can also

Display all the ink tone curves on the grid

Enable the **Show all** check box.

Save the ink settings

Click **Save**. Choose the folder where you want to save the file with the new settings, and type a filename.

Specify how overprint colors display

Click the **Overprint** tab, and enable the **Use overprint** check box. Double-click the color you want to edit, and choose a new color.



You can load ink settings by clicking the **Curves** tab, clicking **Load**, locating the file where the ink settings are stored, and double-clicking the filename.

## To specify how overprint colors display

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Convert to** ► **Duotone (8-bit)**.
- 2 Click the **Overprint** tab.
- 3 Enable the **Use overprint** check box.
- 4 Double-click the color that you want to edit.
- 5 In the **Select color** dialog box, choose a **color model** from the **Model** list box, click a color, and click **OK**.

If you want to preview the new overprint color, click **Preview**.



Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Using color management

Color management helps ensure colors appear consistent when you work with files from various sources and output these files on different devices.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Understanding color management” (page 185)
- “Getting started with color management in Corel PHOTO-PAINT” (page 189)
- “Installing, loading, and embedding color profiles” (page 190)
- “Assigning color profiles” (page 191)
- “Converting colors to other color profiles” (page 192)
- “Choosing color-conversion settings” (page 193)
- “Soft proofing” (page 193)
- “Working with color management presets” (page 196)
- “Working with color management policies” (page 196)
- “Managing colors when opening documents” (page 198)
- “Managing colors when importing and pasting files” (page 198)
- “Managing colors for print” (page 199)
- “Using a safe CMYK workflow” (page 199)
- “Managing colors for online viewing” (page 200)

### Understanding color management

This section provides answers to the following commonly asked questions about color management:

- “Why don’t colors match?” (page 186)
- “What is color management?” (page 186)
- “Why do I need color management?” (page 186)
- “How do I get started with color management?” (page 187)
- “Is my monitor displaying the correct colors?” (page 187)
- “Should I assign a color profile or convert colors to a color profile?” (page 187)
- “What is a rendering intent?” (page 187)

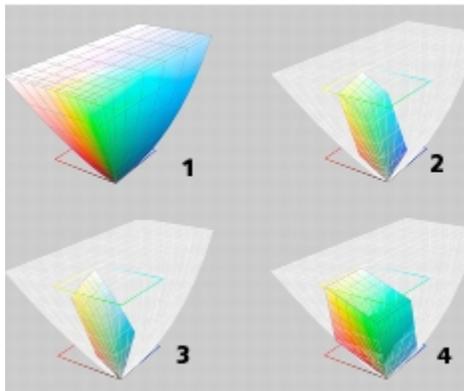
## Why don't colors match?

During the digital imaging process, different tools are used to capture, modify, and print images. In a typical workflow, you capture an image by using a digital camera, upload the image to a computer, modify the image in a photo-editing application, and print the image. Each of these tools has a different way of interpreting color. In addition, each has its own range of available colors, called a color space, which is a set of numbers that define how each color is represented.



*Example of a document workflow*

In other words, when defining and interpreting color, each tool speaks a unique language. Consider a color in the color space of your digital camera: a vivid blue RGB color with the values Red = 0, Green = 0, and Blue = 255. This color may appear as a different color in the color space of your monitor. In addition, the color space of your printer may not contain a match for this color. As a result, when your document moves through the workflow, this vivid blue color gets lost in the translation and is not accurately reproduced. A color management system is designed to improve the communication of color in the workflow so that the color of the output matches your intended color.



*Colors are defined by their color space. 1. Lab color space. 2. sRGB color space, displayed against the Lab color space. 3. U.S. Web Coated (SWOP) v2 color space. 4. ProPhoto RGB color space.*

## What is color management?

Color management is a process that lets you predict and control color reproduction, regardless of the source or destination of the document. It ensures a more accurate color representation when a document is viewed, modified, shared, exported to another format, or printed.

A color management system, also known as a color engine, uses color profiles to translate the color values from one source to another. For example, it translates the colors that are displayed on the monitor into the colors that a printer can reproduce. Color profiles define the color space of monitors, scanners, digital cameras, printers, and the applications that you use to create or edit documents.

## Why do I need color management?

If your document requires accurate color representation, you may want to learn more about color management. The complexity of your workflow and the ultimate destination of your documents are also important considerations. If your documents are destined only for online viewing, color management may not be as important. However, if you plan to open documents in another application or if you are creating documents for print or multiple types of output, then proper color management is essential.

Color management lets you do the following:

- reproduce colors consistently across your workflow, especially when opening documents that were created in other applications
- reproduce colors consistently when sharing files with others
- preview (or “soft-proof”) colors before they are sent to their final destination, such as a printing press, a desktop printer, or the web
- reduce the need to adjust and correct documents when sending them to different destinations

A color management system does not offer identical color matching, but it greatly improves color accuracy.

### How do I get started with color management?

Here are some suggestions for adding color management to your workflow:

- Make sure that your monitor is displaying the correct colors. For more information, see [“Is my monitor displaying the correct colors?” on page 187](#).
- Install color profiles for any input or output devices that you are planning to use. For more information, see [“Installing, loading, and embedding color profiles” on page 190](#).
- Become familiar with the color management features of Corel PHOTO-PAINT. The default settings for color management produce good color results, but you can change these default settings so that they suit your specific workflow. For more information, see [“Getting started with color management in Corel PHOTO-PAINT” on page 189](#).
- Soft-proof documents to preview final results on-screen. For more information, see [“Soft proofing” on page 193](#).
- Embed color profiles when saving and exporting files. In this way, you help ensure color consistency when the files are viewed, modified, or reproduced. For more information, see [“Installing, loading, and embedding color profiles” on page 190](#).

### Is my monitor displaying the correct colors?

Calibrating and profiling the monitor are essential steps for ensuring color accuracy. When you calibrate a monitor, you set it to display colors according to an established standard of accuracy. After calibration, you can create a color profile of the monitor, which describes how the monitor interprets colors. This custom color profile is usually installed in your operating system by the profiling software, so it can be shared with other devices and applications. Calibration and profiling work together to achieve color accuracy: If a monitor is incorrectly calibrated, its color profile is not useful.

Calibration and profiling are complex and usually require third-party calibration devices, such as colorimeters and specialized software. Furthermore, improper calibration may do more harm than good. You can learn more about monitor calibration and custom color profiles by researching color management techniques and products. You can also refer to the documentation that was provided with your operating system or monitor.

How you perceive the color that your monitor displays is also important for managing color consistency. Your perception is influenced by the environment in which you are viewing the documents. Here are some ways to create a suitable viewing environment:

- Ensure that your room has a consistent flow of light. For example, if the room is filled with sunlight, use a shade, or if possible, work in a room without windows.
- Set the monitor background to a neutral color, such as gray, or apply a grayscale image. Avoid using colorful wallpapers and screensavers.
- Don’t wear bright clothing that can clash with the display of colors on the monitor. For example, wearing a white shirt reflects onto the monitor and alters your perception of color.

### Should I assign a color profile or convert colors to a color profile?

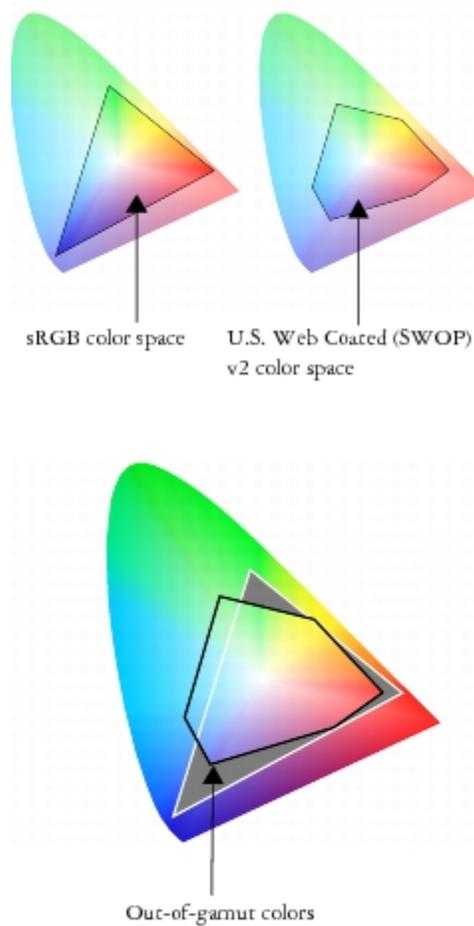
When you assign a color profile, the color values, or numbers, in the document do not change. Instead, the application uses the color profile to interpret the document colors. However, when you convert colors to another color profile, the color values in the document change.

The best practice is to choose a suitable color space when you create a document and to use the same color profile throughout your workflow. You should avoid assigning color profiles and converting colors to other color profiles while working on a document. For more information, see [“Assigning color profiles” on page 191](#) and [“Converting colors to other color profiles” on page 192](#).

### What is a rendering intent?

A color management system can perform effective translation of document colors to multiple devices. However, when converting colors from one color space to another, a color management system may be unable to match certain colors. This translation failure occurs because some colors in the source may not fit within the range (or gamut) of the destination color space. For example, the bright red

and blue colors that you see on your monitor are often outside the gamut of colors that your printer can produce. These “out-of-gamut” colors can dramatically change the look of the document, depending on how they are interpreted by the color management system. Each color management system has four methods of interpreting out-of-gamut colors and mapping them into the gamut of the destination color space. These methods are known as “rendering intents.” The choice of a rendering intent depends on the graphical content of the document.



*Many colors in an sRGB document may be out of gamut for the U.S. Web Coated (SWOP) v2 color space. The out-of-gamut colors are mapped into gamut according to the rendering intent.*

The following rendering intents are available:

- The **Relative colorimetric** rendering intent is suitable for logos or other graphics that contain only a few out-of-gamut colors. It matches the out-of-gamut source colors with the closest in-gamut colors at the destination. This rendering intent causes the white point to shift. If you print on white paper, the whiteness of the paper is used to reproduce the white areas of the document. Therefore, this rendering intent is a good option if your document will be printed.
- The **Absolute colorimetric** rendering intent is suitable for logos, or other graphics, that require very precise colors. If no match is found for the source colors, then the closest possible match is used. The **Absolute colorimetric** and **Relative colorimetric** rendering intents are similar, but the **Absolute colorimetric** rendering intent preserves the white point through the conversion and does not adjust for the whiteness of the paper. This rendering intent is used mainly for proofing.
- The **Perceptual rendering** intent is suitable for photographs and bitmaps that contain many out-of-gamut colors. The overall color appearance is preserved by changing all the colors, including the in-gamut colors, to fit within the range of colors at the destination. This rendering intent maintains the relationships between colors to produce the best results.
- The **Saturation** rendering intent produces more concentrated solid colors in business graphics, such as charts and graphs. Colors may be less accurate than those produced by other rendering intents.



*The number of out-of-gamut colors (indicated by the green overlay) may influence your choice of a rendering intent.  
 Left: The Relative colorimetric rendering intent is suitable for this photo, which contains only a few out-of-gamut colors.  
 Right: The Perceptual rendering intent is a good choice for this photo, which contains many out-of-gamut colors.*

## Getting started with color management in Corel PHOTO-PAINT

Corel PHOTO-PAINT has two types of color management settings: default settings for color management and document color settings. The default settings for color management control the colors of new documents and any documents that do not contain color profiles (also known as “untagged documents”). Documents that were created in earlier versions of Corel PHOTO-PAINT are treated as untagged. Document color settings affect only the colors of the active document.

### Default settings for color management

The default settings for color management are essential for producing consistent colors.

- **Presets** — If you are new to color management and create designs for a specific output, you can choose a preset to help you get started with the right color management settings such as default color profiles and color-conversion settings. Examples are the **North America Prepress** preset, which is suitable for projects to be printed by North American print service providers, and the **Europe Web** preset, which is suitable for web projects that are created in Europe. For more information about color management presets, see [“Working with color management presets” on page 196](#).
- **Default color profiles** — define the RGB, CMYK, and grayscale colors in new and untagged documents. You can change these settings so that all new documents use the color profiles that you specify. In some applications, default color profiles are called “working space profiles.”
- **Rendering intent** — lets you choose a method for mapping out-of-gamut colors in new and untagged documents. If the default rendering intent is not suitable for the active document, you can change it in the **Document color settings** dialog box. For information about choosing the right rendering intent for your projects, see [“What is a rendering intent?” on page 187](#).
- **Color conversion settings** — control how colors are matched when you are converting colors from one color profile to another. For example, you can change the color engine or specify options for converting pure black colors in RGB, CMYK, Lab, or Grayscale documents. For more information, see [“Choosing color-conversion settings” on page 193](#).
- **Spot color definition** — lets you display spot colors by using their Lab, CMYK, or RGB color values. These alternative color values are also used when spot colors are converted to process colors.
- **Color management policies** — manage colors in files that you open, or import or paste in an active document. For more information about color management policies, see [“Working with color management policies” on page 196](#).

### Document color settings

You can view and edit the current color settings of the active document. You can see what color profile is assigned to the document as well as what are the default color profiles of the application. The color profile that is assigned to an active document determines the document color space.

You can also assign another color profile to the active document or convert its colors to a specific color profile. For information about assigning color profiles, see [“Assigning color profiles” on page 191](#). For information about converting document colors to other color profiles, see [“Converting colors to other color profiles” on page 192](#).

## Getting help

You can find information about each control available in the **Default color settings** and **Document color settings** dialog boxes by pointing to the control and viewing the description in the **Description** area.

## To access default settings for color management

- Click **Tools** ▶ **Color management** ▶ **Default settings**.

## To change the default color profiles

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Color management** ▶ **Default settings**.
- 2 In the **Default color settings** area, choose a color profile from the following list boxes:
  - **RGB** — describes RGB colors in new and untagged documents
  - **CMYK** — describes CMYK colors in new and untagged documents
  - **Grayscale** — describes grayscale colors in new and untagged documents

You can choose another rendering intent from the **Rendering intent** list box.

## To access document color settings

- Click **Tools** ▶ **Color management** ▶ **Document settings**.



The **Document color settings** dialog box is not available for LAB, NTSC, PAL, or multi-channel images. Such images use the color management options specified in the **Default color management settings** dialog box.



You can also view the document color settings in the **Document properties** dialog box by clicking **File** ▶ **Document properties**.

## Installing, loading, and embedding color profiles

To ensure color accuracy, a color management system needs ICC-compliant profiles for monitors, input devices, external monitors, output devices, and documents.

- **Monitor color profiles** — define the color space that is used by your monitor to display document colors. Corel PHOTO-PAINT uses the primary monitor profile that is assigned by the operating system. The monitor profile is very important for color accuracy. For more information, see “[Is my monitor displaying the correct colors?](#)” on page 187.
- **Input device color profiles** — used by input devices such as scanners and digital cameras. These color profiles define which colors can be captured by specific input devices.
- **Display color profiles** — include monitor profiles that are not associated with your monitor in the operating system. These color profiles are especially useful for soft-proofing documents for monitors that are not connected to your computer.
- **Output device color profiles** — define the color space of output devices such as desktop printers and printing presses. The color management system uses these profiles to map accurately document colors to the colors of the output device.
- **Document color profiles** — define the RGB, CMYK, and grayscale colors of a document. Documents that contain color profiles are known as “tagged.”

## Finding color profiles

Many color profiles are installed with your application or can be generated with profiling software. Manufacturers of monitors, scanners, digital cameras, and printers also provide color profiles. In addition, you can access color profiles from websites such as:

- <http://www.color.org/findprofile.xalter> — This website of the International Color Consortium (ICC) can help you find commonly used standard color profiles.

- <http://www.eci.org/doku.php?id=en:downloads> — This website of the European Color Initiative (ECI) provides standard ISO profiles as well as profiles that are specific to Europe
- [http://www.tftcentral.co.uk/articles/icc\\_profiles.htm](http://www.tftcentral.co.uk/articles/icc_profiles.htm) — This website provides ICC profiles for many different types of LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) monitors to help you display consistent colors. However, if color accuracy is essential for your workflow, you should calibrate and profile your monitor instead of relying on readily available monitor profiles. For more information, see “Is my monitor displaying the correct colors?” on page 187.

### Installing and loading color profiles

If you don't have the necessary color profile, you can install it, or you can load it within the application. Installing a color profile adds it to the **Color** folder of the operating system; loading a color profile adds it to the **Color** folder of the application. CorelDRAW Graphics Suite can access color profiles from both **Color** folders.

### Embedding color profiles

When you save or export a document to a file format that supports color profiles, the color profiles are embedded in the file by default. Embedding a color profile attaches the color profile to the document to ensure that the same colors you used are shared with anyone who views or prints the document.

### To install a color profile

- In Windows Explorer, right-click a color profile, and click **Install profile**.

### To load a color profile

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Color management** ▶ **Default settings**.
- 2 In the **Default color setting** area, choose **Load color profiles** from the **RGB**, **CMYK**, or **Grayscale** list boxes.
- 3 In the **Open** dialog box, navigate to the color profile.



After you load a color profile, you can also access it from the **Color proof settings** docker, **Print** dialog box, and **Document color setting** dialog box.

Note that you can load a color profile of any color mode from any list box: **RGB**, **CMYK**, or **Grayscale**. However, after you load the profile, you can access it only from the list box of the respective color mode. For example, you can load an RGB color profile from the **CMYK** list box, but you can access the profile only from the **RGB** list box.



You can also load a color profile from the **Document color settings** dialog box.

### To embed a color profile

- 1 Click **File**, and then click one of the following commands:
  - **Save as**
  - **Export for** ▶ **Web**
- 2 In the dialog box that appears, enable the **Embed color profile** check box.



Embedding a color profile, especially a **CMYK** one, increases the file size of a document.

## Assigning color profiles

When you open or import a document that is missing a color profile, by default the application automatically assigns a color profile to the document. If the document has a color profile that is not suitable for the required destination, you can assign a different color profile to the document. For example, if the document is intended to be displayed on the web or to be printed on a desktop printer, you should make sure

that sRGB is the document RGB profile. If the document is destined for print production, the Adobe RGB (1998) profile is a better choice, because it has a larger gamut and produces good results when RGB colors are converted to a CMYK color space.

When you assign a different color profile to a document, the colors may appear different, although the color values do not change.



*Left: The SWOP 2006\_Coated3v2.icc color profile is assigned to the active document. Right: When the Japan Color 2002 Newspaper color profile is assigned to the document, the colors appear much less saturated.*

### To assign a color profile to a document

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Color management** ▶ **Document settings**.
- 2 In the **Edit document color settings** area, enable the **Assign a different color profile** option.
- 3 Choose a color profile from the **RGB**, **CMYK**, or **Grayscale** list box.

The label of the list box and the list of available color profiles depend on the color mode of the active document. For example, only the RGB list box is available for RGB images.

### Converting colors to other color profiles

When you convert document colors from one color profile to another, the color values in the document are changed according to the rendering intent, but the appearance of colors is preserved. The main purpose of converting colors is to match the appearance of colors in the source color space as closely as possible to colors in the destination color space.

Because multiple color conversions deteriorate accuracy, it is recommended that you convert colors only once. Wait until the document is ready and you are sure of the color profile that will be used for the final output. For example, if you designed a document in the Adobe RGB (1998) color space, and the document will be posted on the web, you can convert document colors to the sRGB color space.

You can choose the color management engine that is used for converting colors. For more information, see [“Choosing color-conversion settings” on page 193](#).

### To convert colors to another color profile

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Color management** ▶ **Document settings**.
- 2 In the **Edit document color settings** area, enable the **Convert document colors to a new color profile** option.
- 3 Choose a color profile from the **RGB**, **CMYK**, or **Grayscale** list box.  
The label of the list box and the list of available color profiles change depending on the color mode of the active image.
- 4 Choose a suitable rendering intent from the **Rendering intent** list box. For information about the available rendering intents, see [“What is a rendering intent?” on page 187](#).

## Choosing color-conversion settings

When you choose [color profiles](#), colors are matched between devices as closely as possible by the color management module (CMM) of the Microsoft Image Color Management (ICM), which is the default CMM. Color management modules are also known as “color engines.”

You can also use the Adobe CMM if it is installed on your computer.

### Handling pure black and grayscale colors

You can preserve pure black color in the destination color space during color conversion. For example, if you are converting an RGB document to a CMYK color space, pure RGB black (R=0, G=0, B=0) can be mapped to pure black CMYK colors (K=100). This option is recommended for grayscale documents or documents that contain mostly text. Note that preserving pure black during color conversion may create solid edges of black in effects and gradient fills that contain black.

By default, grayscale colors are converted to the CMYK black (K) channel. This process ensures that all grayscale colors print as shades of black, and no cyan, magenta, and yellow inks are wasted during printing.

### To choose color-conversion settings

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Color management** ▶ **Default settings**.
- 2 In the **Color conversion settings** area, choose a color engine from the **Color engine** list box.

#### You can also

Keep pure black in the source color space as pure black in the destination color space

Map grayscale colors to CMYK black during conversion

#### Do the following

Enable the **Preserve pure black** check box.

Enable the **Map gray to CMYK black** check box.

## Soft proofing

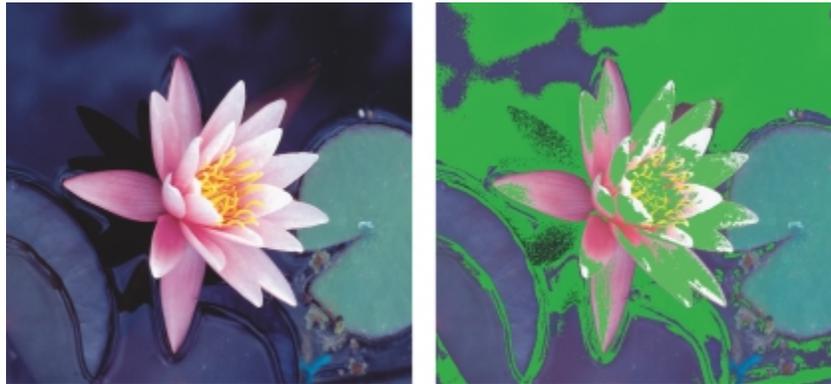
Soft proofing provides an on-screen preview of a document as it will appear when it is reproduced by a specific printer or displayed on a specific monitor. Unlike the “hard-proofing” technique that is used in a traditional printing workflow, soft proofing lets you look at the final result without committing ink to paper. You can verify whether the color profile of the document is suitable for a specific printer or monitor and avoid unwanted results.



*Top left: An RGB color profile is assigned to the document. Middle and right: Assigning a specific CMYK profile allows an on-screen simulation of the printed output.*

To simulate the output colors that are produced by a device, you need to choose the color profile of the device. Because the color spaces of the document and device are different, some document colors may not have matches in the gamut of the device color space. You can enable the gamut warning, which lets you preview the on-screen colors that cannot be reproduced accurately by the device. When the gamut

warning is enabled, an overlay highlights all the out-of-gamut colors for the device that you are simulating. You can change the color of the out-of-gamut overlay, and you can also make it more transparent to see the underlying colors.



*The gamut warning highlights colors that a printer or monitor cannot reproduce accurately.*

You can change how out-of-gamut colors are brought into the gamut of the proof profile by changing the rendering intent. For more information, see “What is a rendering intent?” on page 187.

You can preserve the RGB, CMYK, or grayscale color values of the document when soft-proofing. For example, if you are soft-proofing a document to be printed to a printing press, you can keep the original document CMYK color values in the soft proof. In this case, all colors will be updated on-screen, but only the RGB and grayscale color values of the document will be changed in the soft proof. Preserving the CMYK color values can help you prevent unwanted color conversions in the final output.

If you often need to soft-proof documents for a specific output, you can create and save custom proof presets. You can delete the presets that you no longer need at any time.

You can save soft proofs by exporting them to the JPEG, TIFF, Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF), or Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT) file format. You can also print proofs.

By default, soft proofing is disabled when you start a new document or when you open a document. However, you can make sure that soft proofing is turned on by default at all times.

### To turn soft proofing on or off

- Click **View** ► **Proof colors**.



When you turn soft proofing on, colors in the document window, color palettes, and preview windows of dialog boxes appear different.

Simulating printer output may cause on-screen colors to appear dull because all colors are brought into a CMYK color space, which has a smaller gamut than an RGB color space.



You can also enable or disable soft proofing by clicking the **Proof colors** button  on the status bar.

### To specify soft-proof settings

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Color proof settings**.
- 2 Perform any of the following tasks.

## To

Simulate the output of a specific device

Keep specific color values unchanged

Change the rendering intent

Enable the gamut warning

Change the color of the out-of-gamut overlay

Change the transparency of the out-of-gamut overlay

Save a custom proof preset

Choose a proof preset

Delete a proof preset



The accuracy of the simulation depends on factors such as the quality of your monitor, the color profile of the monitor and the output device, and the ambient lighting in your work area.

## To export a soft proof

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Color proof settings**.
- 2 In the **Color proof settings** docker, click the **Export soft proof** button.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 From the **Save as type** list box, choose one of the following options:
  - **JPG - JPEG Bitmaps**
  - **PDF - Adobe Portable Document Format**
  - **TIF - TIFF Bitmap**
  - **CPT - Corel PHOTO-PAINT image**
- 5 Choose any settings in the dialog box that appears.

## To print a proof

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Color proof settings**.
- 2 In the **Color proof settings** docker, click the **Print proof** button.

## To turn soft proofing on by default

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.

## Do the following

From the **Simulate environment** list box, choose the color profile of the device.

Enable the **Preserve numbers** check box.

Depending on the color profile in the **Simulate environment** box, the check box lets you preserve CMYK, RGB, or grayscale color values.

Choose a rendering intent from the **Rendering intent** list box.

In the **Gamut warning** area, enable the **Out-of-gamut colors** check box.

In the **Gamut warning** area, choose a color from the color picker.

In the **Gamut warning** area, type a value in the **Transparency** box.

The value should be between 1 and 100.

Choose the settings that you want, click the **Save** button , and then type a name in the **Save preset as** box.

Out-of-gamut settings are not included in the proof preset.

From the **Proof preset** list box, choose a preset.

Click the **Delete** button .

- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Display**.
- 3 Enable the **Proof colors by default** check box.

## Working with color management presets

The application provides color management presets, which are default color settings that are applied to new and untagged documents. You can choose a color management preset that is suitable for the geographic region where a document is created or for the location of its final output.

You can also create your own presets, which allows you to retain your selections in the **Default color management settings** dialog box and reuse them in other documents. If you no longer need a preset, you can delete it.

### To choose a color management preset for new documents

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Color management** ▶ **Default settings**.
- 2 Choose one of the following color management presets from the **Presets** list box:
  - **North America General Purpose** — suitable for designs that will be used in multiple types of output in North America
  - **Europe General Purpose** — suitable for designs that will be used in multiple types of output in Europe
  - **Europe Prepress** — suitable for designs that will be printed by print service providers in Europe
  - **Europe Web** — suitable for web designs that are created in Europe
  - **Japan General Purpose** — suitable for designs that will be used in multiple types of output in Japan
  - **Japan Prepress** — suitable for designs that will be printed by print service providers in Japan
  - **Japan Web** — suitable for web designs that are created in Japan
  - **MinimalColor Management** — preserves the original RGB, CMYK, and Grayscale color values when opening, importing, or pasting documents
  - **North America Prepress** — suitable for designs that will be printed by print service providers in North America
  - **North America Web** — suitable for web designs that are created in North America
  - **Simulate Color Management Off** — produces the color-conversion results of the **Color Management Off** preset that is available in earlier versions of Corel PHOTO-PAINT
  - **Simulate** — displays colors as they appear in

### To add a color management preset

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Color management** ▶ **Default settings**.
- 2 Change any default color settings.
- 3 Click the **Save** button  next to the **Presets** list box.
- 4 In the **Save color management style** dialog box, type a name in the **Save style as** box.

### To delete a color management preset

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Color management** ▶ **Default settings**.
- 2 Choose a preset from the **Presets** list box.
- 3 Click the **Delete** button .

## Working with color management policies

Color management policies determine how colors are managed in documents that you open and work with in an application. In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can set one color-management policy for opening documents and another for importing and pasting files and objects in the active document.

The color management policy for opening documents determines what RGB, CMYK, or Grayscale color profile is used in each file you want to open. By default, the application uses the color profile embedded in the file. You can also choose to assign the default color profile to the file or convert colors in the file to the default color profile.

By default, the color management policy for importing and pasting files converts the colors of the file to the document color profile. You can also choose to assign the document color profile to the file, or convert the colors of the active document to the color profile that is embedded in the file.

The files that you are opening or importing may be missing color profiles, or may contain color profiles that do not match the default color profiles. By default, the application does not warn you about missing or mismatched color profiles but makes color management choices that produce good results. However, you can activate warning messages if you want to have full control over the colors in your documents.

### To set a color management policy for opening documents

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Color management** ► **Default settings**.
- 2 In the **Open** section of the **Color management policies** area, choose one of the following options from the **RGB** list box:
  - **Use embedded color profile** — preserves the RGB color profile that is embedded in the file. This option is recommended, because it preserves the original RGB color appearance and RGB color values of the document.
  - **Assign default color profile** — uses the default RGB color profile to define document colors. RGB color values are preserved, but the appearance of RGB colors may change.
  - **Convert to default color profile** — converts colors to the default RGB color profile. The appearance of RGB colors in documents is preserved, but the color values may change.
- 3 From the **CMYK** list box in the **Open** area, choose an option for managing CMYK colors in documents. The options are the same as the options that are available for RGB colors.
- 4 From the **Grayscale** list box in the **Open** area, choose an option for managing the grayscale colors in documents. The options are the same as the options that are available for RGB colors.

### To set a color management policy for importing and pasting files

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Color management** ► **Default settings**.
- 2 In the **Import and paste** section of the **Color management policies** area, choose one of the following options from the **RGB** list box:
  - **Convert to document color profile** — converts the RGB colors of the imported or pasted file to the RGB color profile of the active document. This option is used when the imported file contains a color profile that does not match the color profile of the document.
  - **Assign document color profile** — assigns the RGB color profile of the document to the imported or pasted file. The RGB color values of the file are preserved but the color appearance may change.
  - **Use embedded color profile** — uses the RGB color profile that is embedded in the file, preserving the RGB color values and appearance of the imported or pasted file. This option converts document colors to the color profile that is embedded in the imported or pasted file.
- 3 From the **CMYK** list box in the **Import and paste** area, choose an option for managing CMYK colors in imported and pasted files. The options are the same as the options that are available for RGB colors.
- 4 From the **Grayscale** list box in the **Import and paste** area, choose an option for managing the grayscale colors in imported and pasted files. The options are the same as the options that are available for RGB colors.

### To activate warning messages for missing and mismatched color profiles

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Color management** ► **Default settings**.
- 2 In the **Color management policies** area, enable any of the following check boxes in the **Open** and **Import and paste** areas:
  - **Warn on color profile mismatch**
  - **Warn on missing color profile**

## Managing colors when opening documents

The default color management policy for opening documents preserves colors in all tagged documents that you open and assigns the default color profiles to untagged documents.

If a document that you open is missing a color profile or contains a color profile that does not match the default color profile of the application, Corel PHOTO-PAINT makes color management choices based on the default policy for color management. If you are comfortable with color management, you can view warnings about missing and mismatched color profiles and choose different color management options. For more information about how to activate warnings, see [“To activate warning messages for missing and mismatched color profiles” on page 197](#).

### Opening documents with missing color profiles

The following options are available when you are opening a document with a missing color profile and have activated warnings for missing color profiles.

- **Assign color profile** — lets you assign a color profile to the document. This option preserves color values, but may change the appearance of colors. For example, if the RGB color profile is missing from the document, the default RGB color profile of the application is assigned by default. The RGB color values are preserved but the RGB colors may not appear as originally designed. You can also choose to assign a color profile that is different from the default color profile of the application. This option is recommended only if you know the original color space of the document and have the associated color profile installed.
- **Convert to default color profile** — Used in conjunction with the **Assign color profile** control, this option converts colors from the assigned color profile to the default color profile. Colors will appear as they would in the assigned color space, but the color values may change.

### Opening documents with mismatched color profiles

When a document contains a color profile that does not match the default color profile, you can choose one of the following options:

- **Use embedded color profile** — This option ensures that the color values are preserved and colors are displayed as originally intended.
- **Ignore embedded color profile, and use default color profile** — Assigning the default color profile will preserve the color values but may change the appearance of colors.
- **Convert from embedded color profile to default color profile** — This option converts colors from the embedded color profile to the default color profile. The appearance of colors will be preserved, but the color values may change. This option is recommended if you have already set color management options suitable for your workflow. For example, you may be creating graphics for the web, and you may have chosen sRGB as the application default color space. Enabling this option ensures that the document uses the sRGB color space, and document colors are consistent and suitable for the web.

## Managing colors when importing and pasting files

The default color policy for importing and pasting files converts the colors of imported and pasted files to the color profile of the active document. If the color profile of the imported or pasted file matches the color profile of the active document, no color conversion is performed. For more information about color management policies, see [“Working with color management policies” on page 196](#).

However, you can choose to view warnings about missing and mismatched profiles and set other color management options. For more information about how to view warnings, see [“To activate warning messages for missing and mismatched color profiles” on page 197](#).

When a vector graphic, such as a CorelDRAW (CDR) file is imported or pasted in the active document, the file is first converted to a bitmap in the color mode of the active document. For example, if the document is in the RGB color mode, the file is converted into a bitmap in the RGB color mode.

### Importing and pasting files with missing color profiles

If color profiles are missing from a file, you can choose to assign color profiles to the file, and then convert its colors to the document color profile. The color values of the file will change. In the following example, a vector graphic is missing color profiles, so Corel PHOTO-PAINT assigns the default color profiles to the file and then converts the colors of the file to the document color profile, which is sRGB. However, you can assign CMYK and RGB color profiles that are different from the default color profiles of the application.

## Importing and pasting files with mismatched color profiles

If a file contains color profiles that do not match the document color profile, the following options are available:

- **Ignore embedded color profile, and assign the document color profile** — Color values are preserved, but the appearance of colors may change.
- **Convert from embedded color profile to the document color profile** (default option) — The color of the imported file are converted from the embedded color space to the document color space. The appearance of colors is preserved, but the color values may change.
- **Convert document colors to embedded color profile** — Document colors are converted to the color profile embedded in the imported file. The appearance and color values of the imported or pasted file are preserved.

## Importing and pasting files with missing and mismatched color profiles

Some files can be missing color profiles and contain mismatched color profiles at the same time. In such cases, you are presented with dialog boxes that include options for missing and mismatched color profiles.

## Managing colors for print

By default, Corel PHOTO-PAINT does not perform color conversions when a document is sent to the printer. The printer receives the color values and interprets the colors. However, if there is a color profile associated with the printer in the operating system, Corel PHOTO-PAINT detects the color profile and uses it to convert document colors to the color space of the printer.

If you have a PostScript printer, you can let Corel PHOTO-PAINT or the PostScript printer perform any necessary color conversion. When Corel PHOTO-PAINT manages the color conversion, document colors are converted from the assigned color space to the color space of the PostScript printer. Note that you must disable color management in the printer driver. Otherwise, both application and printer manage colors during printing, and document colors are corrected twice, which causes unwanted color shifts.

When the PostScript printer converts document colors, the color management feature must be enabled in the printer driver. Only PostScript printers and RIP engines that support printer color conversions can be used in this advanced method. Although it increases the file size, this method has the advantage of ensuring consistent colors when you send the same print job to different print service providers.

For more information about reproducing colors for print, see [“Printing colors accurately” on page 397](#).

You can also manage colors in PDF files that you create for commercial printing. For more information, see [“Specifying color management options for exporting PDF files” on page 419](#).

## Using a safe CMYK workflow

Often, you may use specific CMYK color values in your projects. To ensure reliable color reproduction, you may obtain these CMYK color values from a color swatch book. By preserving these CMYK color values throughout the printing process, you can help prevent unwanted color conversions and ensure that colors are reproduced as they appeared in the original design. A workflow that preserves the CMYK color values is known as a “safe” CMYK workflow.

Corel PHOTO-PAINT supports a safe CMYK workflow. By default, CMYK color values are preserved in any document that you open, import, or paste. Also, CMYK color values are preserved by default when you print documents.

In some cases, you may want to bypass the safe CMYK workflow and preserve the appearance of CMYK colors when you open, import, or paste documents. This option is useful when you want to see the original colors of a design on-screen, or view a copy that is printed to a desktop printer. To preserve the appearance of CMYK colors, you can set color management policies that convert CMYK colors in documents that you open, import, or paste. In addition, when printing to a PostScript printer, you can convert CMYK colors to the printer color profile by disabling the **Preserve CMYK numbers** check box on the **Color** page of the **Print** dialog box.

## Managing colors for online viewing

Managing colors for online viewing can be even more complex than managing colors for print. Documents and images on the web are displayed on a great variety of monitors, which are often uncalibrated. In addition, most web browsers do not support color management and ignore the color profiles that are embedded in files.

When you design documents for exclusive web use, it is recommended that you use the sRGB color profile as your document RGB color profile and choose RGB colors. If a document contains a different color profile, you should convert document colors to sRGB before saving the document for use on the web.

When you create a PDF file for online viewing, you can embed color profiles in the file to reproduce colors consistently in Adobe Reader and Adobe Acrobat. For more information, see [“To specify color management options for exporting PDF files” on page 419](#).

When you start a new document that is destined for online viewing, you can choose a preset that can help you achieve good color results. In addition, Corel PHOTO-PAINT offers color management presets for web documents. For information about how to choose a color management preset, see [“To choose a color management preset for new documents” on page 196](#).



# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Filling images

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can fill [objects](#), [editable areas](#), and images with colors, patterns, and textures. You can choose from a wide variety of [fills](#) and create your own fills.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Applying uniform fills” (page 201)
- “Applying fountain fills” (page 202)
- “Applying bitmap pattern fills” (page 205)
- “Applying texture fills” (page 207)
- “Applying transparency patterns to fills” (page 208)

### Applying uniform fills

[Uniform fills](#) are the simplest fill type. They are solid colors that you can apply to images. Uniform fills can be applied to the background or to selected objects.

#### To apply a uniform fill

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Fill** tool .

If you want to fill an [object](#), you must select it by using the **Object pick** tool  before applying the [fill](#).

- 2 Click the **Uniform fill** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Choose a color from the **Fill color** picker on the property bar.
- 4 Click where you want to apply the fill in the image.

#### You can also

Specify a value for the opacity of the fill

Type a value in the **Transparency** box on the property bar. Higher values increase the transparency.

Specify how the fill spreads based on the color similarity of adjacent pixels

Type a value in the **Tolerance** box on the property bar. A value of 100 fills the entire object or area.

Change the way colors are combined

Choose a merge mode from the **Mode** list box on the property bar.



You can choose the colors for a uniform fill from an image, or by accessing color models, mixers, or fixed or custom palettes. For information about choosing colors, see “Working with color” on page 159.

Merge modes control the way the foreground or fill color blends with the base color of the image. You can change the merge mode setting from the default (Normal) for specific blending purposes. For more information about merge modes, see “Understanding merge modes” on page 280.



You can also select a fill color by right-clicking a color on the color palette.

## Applying fountain fills

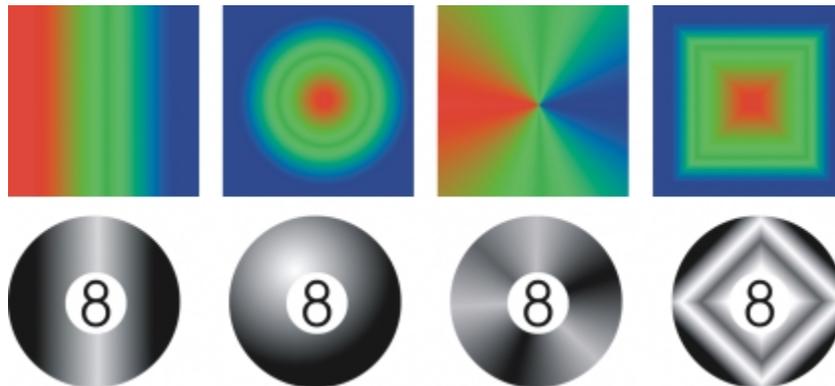
Fountain fills gradually change from one color to the next, along a linear, elliptical, conical, or rectangular path. You can use fountain fills to create the illusion of depth. Fountain fills are also known as gradient fills.

You can choose fountain fills from a personal library or from the Content Exchange. You can browse the available fountain fills, search by keyword, mark fills as favorites, vote for fills that you like, or copy fills from the Content Exchange to your personal library. For more information, see “Managing fills and transparencies” on page 217.

Any fountain fill can be modified to suit your needs, and you can create your own fills. Fountain fills can contain two or more colors, which you can position anywhere in the fill’s progression. You can specify fill attributes such as the direction of a fill’s color blend, the fill’s angle, center point, and midpoint. You can also smooth, skew, or repeat a fill.

After you create a fountain fill, you can save it for future use or share it with other users on the Content Exchange. For more information, see “Saving and sharing fills and transparencies” on page 219.

You can also apply a fountain fill interactively by using the **Interactive fill** tool. A gradient arrow, which marks the transition from one color to another, appears in the image window. Each color in the fountain fill is represented by a square node on the gradient arrow. You can change and add colors or adjust the transparency of individual colors. You can also adjust the size and direction of the fountain fill in the image window.



Linear, elliptical, conical, and rectangular fountain fills

### To apply a fountain fill

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Fill** tool .
  - If you want to fill an **object**, you must select it by using the **Object pick** tool  before applying the fill.
- 2 Click the **Fountain fill** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Open the **Fill** picker on the property bar, and click a fill thumbnail.

- 4 Click the **Select** button in the pop-up window that appears.
- 5 Click where you want to apply the fill in the image.



**Merge modes** control the way the foreground or fill color blends with the base color of the image. You can change the merge mode setting from the default (Normal) for specific blending purposes. For more information about merge modes, see “[Understanding merge modes](#)” on page 280.

### To create a fountain fill

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Fill** tool .
- 2 Click the **Fountain fill** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Click the **Edit fill** button  on the property bar.
- 4 In the **Edit fill** dialog box, click one of the following buttons to choose a fountain fill type:
  - **Linear fountain fill** 
  - **Elliptical fountain fill** 
  - **Conical fountain fill** 
  - **Rectangular fountain fill** 
- 5 Click the start node above the color band, open the **Node color** picker, and choose a color.
- 6 Click the end node above the color band, open the **Node color** picker, and choose a color.
- 7 Move the midpoint slider below the color band to set the midpoint between the two colors.

### You can also

Change a color

Select the corresponding node, open the **Node color** picker, and choose a color.

Add an intermediate color

Double-click the color band where you want to add a node. With the new node selected, open the **Node color** picker, and choose a color.

Change the position of an intermediate color

Drag the corresponding node to a new location above the color band, or type a value in the **Node position** box.

Delete an intermediate color

Double-click the corresponding node.

Specify the way the colors blend between two nodes

Select either the two nodes or the midpoint between them, click the **Blend direction** button, and choose an option from the list:

- **Linear color blend** —blends the colors along a straight line, beginning at the start color and continuing across the color wheel to the end color
- **Clockwise color blend** — blends the colors along a clockwise path around the color wheel
- **Counterclockwise color blend** — blends the colors along a counterclockwise path around the color wheel

Mirror, repeat, or reverse the fill

Click one of the following buttons:

- **Repeat and mirror** 
- **Repeat** 
- **Reverse fill** 

## You can also

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Specify the number of steps used to display or print the fountain fill                | Type a value in the <b>Fountain steps</b> box. Higher numbers create a smoother transition between colors.           |
| Specify how quickly the fountain fill blends from one color to another                | Move the <b>Acceleration</b> slider.   |
| Create smoother color transitions between fountain fill nodes                         | Click the <b>Smooth</b> button  . |
| Set the width and height of the fill as a percentage of the object's width and height | Type values in the <b>Fill width</b> and <b>Fill height</b> boxes.   |
| Move the center of the fill up, down, left, or right                                  | Type values in the <b>X</b> and <b>Y</b> boxes.  |
| Slant the fill at a specified angle   | Type a value in the <b>Skew</b> box.   |
| Rotate the color progression clockwise or counterclockwise                            | Type a value in the <b>Rotate</b> box.   |
| Allow the fill to be skewed or stretched disproportionately                           | Enable the <b>Free scale and skew</b> check box.   |



Fountain fills can contain up to 99 colors.



You can change the color of a node by clicking the node and clicking a color on the [color palette](#).

## To apply a fountain fill interactively

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Interactive fill** tool .
- If you want to fill an [object](#), you must select it by using the **Object pick** tool  before applying the fill, and then click the **Lock object transparency** button  in the **Object manager** docker to protect the object's shape and transparency.
- 2 On the property bar, click the **Fountain fill** button.
- 3 Drag in the image window to set the gradient arrow.
- 4 Drag a color swatch from the [color palette](#) to a color [node](#) on the gradient arrow. A black arrow appears to indicate that the [color swatch](#) is in position.

## You can also

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Set the midpoint for the color transition         | Drag the slider on the gradient arrow.  |
| Change a color                                    | Drag a color swatch from the color palette to a color node on the gradient arrow.                                     |
| Add a color                                       | Drag a color swatch from the color palette to any area along the gradient arrow.                                      |
| Delete a color                                    | Right-click a color node, and click <b>Delete</b> .   |
| Set the transparency of a color                   | Click a color node, and move the <b>Transparency</b> slider on the property bar. Higher values increase transparency. |
| Change the size or direction of the fountain fill | Drag the end node.  |



You can also create a mask to constrain the fountain fill to a portion of the image. For more information, see ["Working with masks"](#) on page 223.

## Applying bitmap pattern fills

**Bitmap fills** are bitmaps that you can use to fill an **object** or image. You can fill an area with a single bitmap. You can also **tile**, or repeat, a small bitmap across an area to create a seamless pattern.

It is best to use less complex bitmaps for fills, because complex bitmaps are memory-intensive and slow to display. The complexity of a bitmap is determined by its size, **resolution**, and **bit depth**.

Corel PHOTO-PAINT X7 provides a collection of bitmap patterns that you can access. You can browse the available patterns, search patterns by keyword, mark patterns as favorites, vote for patterns that you like, or copy patterns from the Content Exchange to your personal library. For more information, see “[Managing fills and transparencies](#)” on page 217.

You can modify bitmap patterns to suit your needs. For example, you can skew, rotate, or mirror the bitmap pattern. You can also create your own patterns from imported files.

After you create a new pattern, you can save it for future use or share it with other users on the Content Exchange. For more information, see “[Saving and sharing fills and transparencies](#)” on page 219.

Bitmap patterns created in Patterns, an iOS application that turns photos into bitmap patterns, can be opened in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. The bitmap pattern effects available in both Patterns and Corel PHOTO-PAINT let you create seamless patterns and adjust the pattern parameters, such as the pixel configuration along the edge of the tile and the brightness, luminance, and color contrast of the pattern.



*Bitmap fills can be used to create interesting backgrounds and textures.*

### To apply a bitmap pattern fill

1 In the toolbox, click the **Fill** tool .

If you want to fill an **object**, you must select it by using the **Object pick** tool  before applying the fill.

2 Click the **Bitmap pattern fill** button  on the property bar.

3 Open the **Fill** picker on the property bar, and click a fill thumbnail.

4 Click the **Select** button in the pop-up window that appears.

5 Click where you want to apply the fill in the image.



**Merge modes** control the way the foreground or fill color blends with the base color of the image. You can change the merge mode setting from the default (Normal) for specific blending purposes. For more information about merge modes, see “Understanding merge modes” on page 280.

### To modify a bitmap pattern fill

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Fill** tool .
- 2 Click the **Bitmap pattern fill** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Click the **Edit fill** button  on the property bar.
- 4 In the **Edit fill** dialog box, open the **Fill** picker, and click a fill.
- 5 Perform an action from the following table.

#### To

Arrange the tiles so that alternating tiles are reflections of each other

Create a radial or linear seamless blend

Smooth the color transition of the pattern tile edges with their opposite edge.

Increase or decrease the brightness of the pattern

Increase or decrease the grayscale contrast of the pattern.

Increase or decrease the color contrast of the pattern

Set the width and height of the pattern as a percentage of the object’s width and height

Move the center of the pattern fill up, down, left, or right

Rotate the pattern at a specified angle

Slant the pattern at a specified angle

Specify row or column offset as a percentage of the tile’s height or width

#### Do the following

Click the **Mirror tiles horizontally**  or the **Mirror tiles vertically**  button.

Click the **Radial**  or the **Linear** button  in the **Seamless** area, and move the slider.

Enable the **Edge match** check box, and move the slider.

Enable the **Brightness** check box, and move the slider.

Enable the **Luminance** check box, and move the slider.

Enable the **Color** check box, and move the slider.

Type values in the **Fill width** and **Fill height** boxes.

Type values in the **X** and **Y** boxes.

Type a value in the **Rotate** box.

Type a value in the **Skew** box.

Click the **Row offset**  or the **Column offset** button , and type a value in the **% of tile** box.

### To create a bitmap pattern fill from an imported image

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Fill** tool .
- 2 Click the **Bitmap pattern fill** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Click the **Edit fill** button  on the property bar.
- 4 In the **Edit fill** dialog box, click the **New source from file** button.
- 5 In the **Import** dialog box, locate the image that you want to use, and double-click the filename.

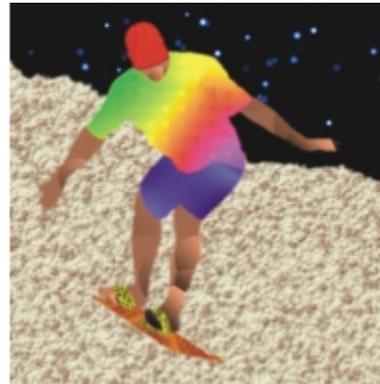


The new bitmap fill appears in the **Fill** picker.

## Applying texture fills

**Texture fills** are three-dimensional patterns. You can use existing texture fills, such as water, minerals, and clouds, or you can edit a texture to create your own texture fill. You cannot import files to use as texture fills.

When you edit a texture fill, you can modify its parameters, such as softness, density, brightness, and colors. Parameters vary for each texture. After you have edited a texture fill, you can save it for future use.



*You can modify the attributes of a texture fill to change its appearance.*

### To apply a texture fill

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Fill** tool .
- If you want to fill an **object**, you must select it by using the **Object pick** tool  before applying the fill.
- 2 Click the **Texture fill** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Click the **Edit fill** button  on the property bar.
- 4 In the **Edit fill** dialog box, choose a texture library from the **Texture library** list box.
- 5 Choose a texture from the **Fill** picker.
- 6 Click where you want to apply the fill in the image.

### You can also

Edit the texture fill parameters

In the **Edit fill** dialog box, type values in the texture parameter boxes.

The parameters vary depending on the texture.

Preview random changes in the appearance of a selected texture

Click the **Randomize** button. Each time the button is clicked, random changes are made to unlocked parameters, and the modified texture is displayed in the **Preview** window.

Arrange the tiles so that alternating tiles are reflections of each other

Click **Transformations**, and click the **Mirror tiles horizontally** or the **Mirror tiles vertically** button.

Change the size of the fill

Click **Transformations**, and type values in the **Fill width** and **Fill height** boxes.

## You can also

Move the center of the fill up, down, left, or right

Rotate the fill at a specified angle

Slant the fill at a specified angle

Specify a row or column offset as a percentage of the tile's width or height

Specify the bitmap resolution of the texture fill

Save the texture fill

Specify a value for the opacity of the fill

Specify how the fill spreads based on the color similarity of adjacent pixels

Change the way colors are combined

Click **Transformations**, and type values in the X and Y boxes.

Click **Transformations**, and type a value in the **Rotate** box.

Click **Transformations**, and type a value in the **Skew** box.

Click **Transformations**, and click the **Row offset** or the **Column offset** button. Type a value in the **% of tile** box.

Click **Options**, and type a value in the **Bitmap resolution** box.

Click the **Save texture** button , and type a name in the **Texture name** box in the **Save texture as** dialog box. Choose a library from the **Library name** list box.

Type a value in the **Transparency** box on the property bar. Higher values increase the transparency.

Type a value in the **Tolerance** box on the property bar. A value of 100 fills the entire object or area.

Choose a merge mode from the **Merge mode** list box on the property bar.

## Applying transparency patterns to fills

You can control the [transparency](#) level, and the pattern of the transparency, when you apply a fill to an entire image. The fill can be applied to any [object](#) layer to create foreground or background effects.

### To apply a transparency pattern to a fill

- 1 Click **Edit** ► **Fill**.
- 2 In the **Edit fill & transparency** dialog box, click the **Fill color** tab.
- 3 Enable one of the following options:
  - **Foreground color**
  - **Background color**
  - **Current fill**
- 4 Click a fill type button.
- 5 Click **Edit**, and modify any settings in the corresponding dialog box.
- 6 In the **Edit fill & transparency** dialog box, click the **Transparency** tab.
- 7 Choose a pattern type from the **Type** list box.
- 8 Type values in any of the following boxes:
  - **Start transparency**
  - **End transparency**
- 9 Drag in the display window at the top of the dialog box to place the adjustment [nodes](#) and preview the fill.



# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Working with transparency

You can change the [transparency](#) of an [object](#) to reveal image elements that lie beneath it. When you change the transparency of an object, you change the [grayscale](#) value of its individual [pixels](#).

Most changes to the transparency of an object are permanent. If you want to apply transparency changes separately, so the object is not affected, you can use a [clip mask](#). For more information, see “Using clip masks” on page 336.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Applying uniform transparency” (page 209)
- “Applying fountain transparency” (page 210)
- “Applying bitmap pattern transparency” (page 212)
- “Applying texture transparency” (page 213)
- “Applying transparency by using brushstrokes” (page 214)
- “Making selected colors in objects transparent” (page 215)
- “Blending objects” (page 215)

### Applying uniform transparency

Uniform transparency alters the transparency values of all pixels in the object or editable area by an equal amount. You can apply a uniform transparency to an object or to an [editable area](#).



*The object has been flipped to create a reflection in water, and transparency has been applied to the reflection.*

## To apply a uniform transparency

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Object transparency** tool .
- 3 On the property bar, click the **Uniform transparency** button .
- 4 Type a value (0 to 100) in the **Transparency** box on the property bar.



**Transparent** objects have a **grayscale** value of 0, and **opaque** objects have a grayscale value of 255.

The **Transparency** box is not available for black-and-white (1-bit) images.



You can also open the **Transparency** picker on the property bar, and choose a preset uniform transparency.

## Applying fountain transparency

Fountain transparency makes the object fade from one transparency value to another. The fountain transparency can be linear, elliptical, conical, or rectangular.

You can choose fountain transparencies from a personal library or from the Content Exchange. For more information, see [“Managing fills and transparencies” on page 217](#).

You can create your own fountain transparency by adding and removing [nodes](#), and specifying a transparency value for each node. You can also reverse, mirror, resize, or skew a fountain transparency, or apply other transformations.

After you create or edit a fountain transparency, you can save it and share it on the Content Exchange. For more information, see [“Saving and sharing fills and transparencies” on page 219](#).

## To apply a fountain transparency

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Object transparency** tool .
- 3 On the property bar, click the **Fountain transparency** button .
- 4 Open the **Transparency** picker on the property bar, and click a thumbnail.
- 5 Click the **Select** button  in the pop-up window that appears.

## To create a fountain transparency

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Object transparency** tool .
- 3 On the property bar, click the **Fountain transparency** button .
- 4 On the property bar, click one of the following buttons:
  - **Linear fountain transparency** 
  - **Elliptical fountain transparency** 
  - **Conical fountain transparency** 

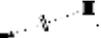
- Rectangular fountain transparency 

5 On the property bar, click the **Edit transparency** button .

6 In the **Edit transparency** dialog box, perform an action from the following table.

To	Do the following
Change the start transparency	Click the start node above the grayscale band, and type a value in the <b>Node transparency</b> box.
Change the end transparency	Click the end node above the grayscale band, and type a value in the <b>Node transparency</b> box.
Set the midpoint between the start and the end transparency	Move the midpoint slider below the grayscale band to set the midpoint of the transparency.
Add an intermediate transparency	Double-click the grayscale band where you want to add a node. With the new node selected, type a value in the <b>Node transparency</b> box.
Change the position of an intermediate transparency	Drag the corresponding node to a new location above the grayscale band, or type a value in the <b>Node position</b> box.
Delete an intermediate transparency	Double-click the corresponding node.
Mirror, repeat, or reverse the transparency pattern	Click one of the following buttons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repeat and mirror </li> <li>• Repeat </li> <li>• Reverse transparency </li> </ul>
Revert to the default transparency	Click the <b>Default transparency</b> button  .
Specify the number of steps used to display or print the fountain transparency	Click the <b>Set to default</b> button  to unlock the fountain steps, and type a value in the <b>Fountain steps</b> box.
Specify how quickly the fountain transparency blends from one transparency to another	Move the <b>Acceleration</b> slider.
Create smoother transitions between fountain transparency nodes	Click the <b>Smooth</b> button  .
Set the width and height of the transparency as a percentage of the object's width and height	Type values in the <b>Transparency width</b> and <b>Transparency height</b> boxes.
Move the center of the transparency up, down, left, or right	Type values in the <b>X</b> and <b>Y</b> boxes.
Slant the transparency at a specified angle	Type a value in the <b>Skew</b> box.
Rotate the transparency at a specified angle	Type a value in the <b>Rotate</b> box.
Allow the transparency to be skewed or stretched disproportionately	Enable the <b>Free scale and skew</b> check box.



You can also drag colors, which are converted to **grayscale**, from the **color palette** onto the object's transparency nodes .

## Applying bitmap pattern transparency

You can use bitmap patterns to create a transparency. You can choose bitmap patterns from a personal library or from the Content Exchange. For more information, see [“Managing fills and transparencies” on page 217](#).

You can modify bitmap patterns to suit your needs. For example, you can skew, rotate, or mirror the bitmap pattern.

Bitmap patterns created in Patterns, an iOS application that turns photos into bitmap patterns, can be opened in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. The bitmap pattern effects available in both Patterns and Corel PHOTO-PAINT let you create seamless patterns and adjust the pattern parameters, such as the pixel configuration along the edge of the tile and the brightness, luminance, and color contrast of the pattern.

You can also create a bitmap pattern from an imported image.

After you create or edit a bitmap pattern transparency, you can save it for future use or share it with other users on the Content Exchange. For more information, see [“Saving and sharing fills and transparencies” on page 219](#).

### To apply a bitmap pattern transparency

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Object transparency** tool .
- 3 On the property bar, click the **Bitmap pattern transparency** button .
- 4 Open the **Transparency** picker on the property bar, and click a thumbnail.
- 5 Click the **Select** button  in the pop-up window that appears .

### To create a bitmap pattern transparency

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Object transparency** tool .
- 3 On the property bar, click the **Bitmap pattern transparency** button .
- 4 On the property bar, click the **Edit transparency** button .
- 5 In the **Edit transparency** dialog box, choose a transparency pattern from the **Transparency** picker.
- 6 Perform a task from the following table.

#### To

Change the foreground transparency of the pattern

Change the background transparency of the pattern

Arrange the tiles so that alternating tiles are reflections of each other

Create a radial or linear seamless blend

Smooth the color transition of the pattern tile edges with their opposite edge.

Increase or decrease the brightness of the pattern

#### Do the following

Move the **Foreground transparency** slider.

Move the **Background transparency** slider.

Click the **Mirror horizontally**  or the **Mirror vertically**  button.

In the **Seamless** area, click the **Radial** button , or click the **Linear** button  and move the slider.

Enable the **Edge match** check box, and move the slider.

Enable the **Brightness** check box, and move the slider.

## To

Increase or decrease the grayscale contrast of the pattern.

Increase or decrease the color contrast of the pattern

Change the size of the pattern

Move the center of the pattern fill up, down, left, or right

Slant the pattern at a specified angle

Rotate the pattern at a specified angle

Specify row or column offset as a percentage of the tile's height or width.



You can also skew or rotate the pattern by dragging the skewing or rotation handles on the object.

You can also use the controls on the property bar.

## Do the following

Enable the **Luminance** check box, and move the slider.

Enable the **Color** check box, and move the slider.

Type a value in the **Transparency width** or the **Transparency height** box.

Type values in the **X** and **Y** boxes.

Type a value in the **Skew** box.

Type a value in the **Rotate** box.

Click the **Row offset**  or the **Column offset** button , and type a value in the **% of tile** box.

## To create a bitmap pattern from an imported image

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Object transparency** tool .
- 3 On the property bar, click the **Bitmap pattern transparency** button .
- 4 On the property bar, click the **Edit transparency** button .
- 5 In the **Edit transparency** dialog box, click the **New source from file** button .
- 6 In the **Import** dialog box, locate the image that you want to use, and double-click the filename.

## Applying texture transparency

You can use textures to create transparency effects. You can use existing textures, such as water, minerals, and clouds, or you can edit a texture to create your own texture transparency.

When you edit a texture, you can modify its parameters, such as softness, density, brightness, and colors. Parameters vary for each texture. You can also apply other transformations, such as mirror, resize, or offset the texture tiles. After you have edited a texture, you can save it for future use.

## To apply a texture transparency

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Object transparency** tool .
- 3 On the property bar, click the **Texture transparency** button .
- 4 On the property bar, click the **Edit transparency** button .
- 5 In the **Edit transparency** dialog box, choose a texture library from the **Texture library** list box.
- 6 Choose a texture from the **Fill** picker.
- 7 Perform an action from the following table.

## To

Change the foreground transparency of the texture

Change the background transparency of the texture

Edit the texture parameters

Preview random changes in the appearance of a selected texture

Arrange the tiles so that alternating tiles are reflections of each other

Change the size of texture tiles

Move the center of the texture up, down, left, or right

Rotate the texture at a specified angle

Slant the texture at a specified angle

Specify a row or column offset as a percentage of the tile's width or height

Specify the bitmap resolution of the texture

Save the texture

## Do the following

Move the **Foreground transparency** slider.

Move the **Background transparency** slider.

Type values in the texture parameter boxes.

The parameters vary depending on the texture.

Click **Randomize**. Each time the button is clicked, random changes are made to unlocked parameters, and the modified texture is displayed in the **Preview** window.

Click **Transformations**, and click the **Mirror tiles horizontally**  or the **Mirror tiles vertically** button .

Click **Transformations**, and type values in the **Transparency width** and **Transparency height** boxes.

Click **Transformations**, and type values in the **X** and **Y** boxes.

Click **Transformations**, and type a value in the **Rotate** box.

Click **Transformations**, and type a value in the **Skew** box.

Click **Transformations**, and click the **Row offset**  or the **Column offset** button . Type a value in the **% of tile** box.

Click **Options**, and type a value in the **Bitmap resolution** box.

Click the **Save texture** button , and type a name in the **Texture name** box in the **Save texture as** dialog box. Choose a library from the **Library name** list box.

## Applying transparency by using brushstrokes

You can change the transparency of part of an object by using brushstrokes. You can change the nib shape, the nib size, and the opacity of the brushstroke.

### To apply transparency by using brushstrokes

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Object transparency brush** tool .
- 3 On the property bar, open the **Nib shape** picker, and click a shape.
- 4 Type a value in the **Nib size** box.
- 5 Type a value in the **Opacity** box to set the **transparency** level for the brushstroke.
- 6 Drag across the object.



You can quickly choose a square or round brush shape by clicking the **Round nib** button  or the **Square nib** button  on the property bar.

## Making selected colors in objects transparent

You can make all pixels of a certain color or color range transparent in the active object. Removing one or all of the color selection nodes makes the pixels of a certain color **opaque** again.

### To make selected colors in an object transparent

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Color transparency** tool .
- 3 Type a value in the **Tolerance** box on the property bar to specify the range of colors that will become **transparent**.  
If you want to blend the surrounding colors with the transparent **pixels**, type a value in the **Smoothing** box. Higher values create a smoother transition.
- 4 Click a color in the image window.

## Blending objects

You can create interesting effects by blending objects with other objects that are below them in the stacking order, or by blending objects with the background. As you experiment with settings, the transparency effect previews in the image window.

### To blend an object

- 1 Right-click an **object**, and click **Object properties** from the context menu.
- 2 In the **Object properties** dialog box, click the **General** tab.
- 3 Choose the **channel** you want to blend from the **Blend** list box.
- 4 On the **Active object** graph and the **Composite underlying** graph, drag any of the following **nodes**:
  - **Increasing maximum** (upper-left node) — specifies the upper maximum **grayscale** value of the **pixels** in the object
  - **Increasing minimum** (lower-left node) — specifies the upper minimum grayscale value of the pixels in the object
  - **Decreasing maximum** (upper-right node) — specifies the lower maximum grayscale value of the pixels in the object
  - **Decreasing minimum** (lower-right node) — specifies the lower minimum grayscale value of the pixels in the object

### You can also

Choose a blending method

Click a merge mode in the **Merge** list box.

Adjust the opacity

Drag the **Opacity** slider.



The boxes to the right of the **Blend** list box display the grayscale and **transparency** values of the selected object's pixels.

You can specify the grayscale values of pixels on a scale of 0 (black) to 255 (white), and the **opacity** of pixels on a scale of 0 (transparent) to 100 (opaque). Pixels in the active object that fall outside the specified range are hidden, so the pixels of the underlying object are visible.





# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Managing and sharing fills and transparencies

When working with vector patterns, bitmap patterns, or fountain fills and transparencies, you can use the Content Exchange to browse, search, copy, and share fills and transparency patterns.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Managing fills and transparencies” (page 217)
- “Saving and sharing fills and transparencies” (page 219)

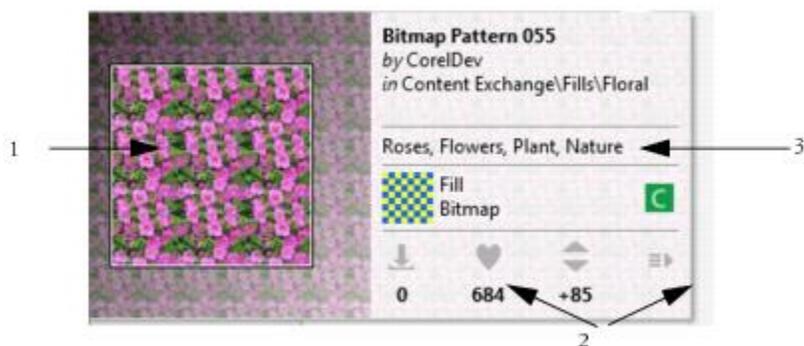
### Managing fills and transparencies

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you browse bitmap patterns and fountain fills that are available on the Content Exchange or in your personal library. Any of these fills can also be used as transparency patterns. For more information, see “Working with transparency” on page 209.

The Content Exchange contains content provided by Corel or shared by users. To use the Content Exchange, you must sign in to your corel.com account. For more information, see “CorelDRAW memberships” on page 9 and “Using the Content Exchange” on page 88.

You can browse the available fills and patterns, or search by keyword, mark fills and patterns as favorites, vote for fills and patterns that you like, or copy content from the Content Exchange to your personal library.

For more information about fills, see “Filling images” on page 201.



You can preview the fill or pattern (1), vote for it, copy it, or access other options (2), and search by keyword (3).

## To manage fills and transparencies

1 In the toolbox, click the **Fill** tool  or the **Object transparency** tool .

If you want to fill an **object**, you must select it by using the **Object pick** tool  before applying the fill.

2 On the property bar, click one of the following buttons:

- **Fountain fill** 
- **Fountain transparency** 
- **Bitmap pattern fill** 
- **Bitmap pattern transparency** 

3 Open the **Fill** picker or the **Transparency** picker on the property bar.

4 Perform an action from the following table.

### To

Search the fills and patterns on the Content Exchange and in your personal library

Sort search results

Copy a fill or pattern from the Content Exchange to your personal library

Share a fill or pattern from your personal library to the Content Exchange

Change the name of a fill or pattern in your personal library, or the tags associated with it

Delete a fill or pattern from your personal library

Mark a fill or pattern as a favorite

### Do the following

In the **Fill** or **Transparency** picker, choose a category from the list, type a keyword in the **Search** box, and press **Enter**.

You can also click a thumbnail and then click one of the keywords associated with it to perform a search based on that keyword.

Open the list next to the **Search** box, and choose one of the following options:

- **Hot** — Sorts search results based on the number of downloads, the number of votes, and the date on which the fill or pattern was added to the Content Exchange.
- **Top** — Sorts search results based on the number of positive and negative votes.
- **Recent** — Sorts search results based on the date on which the fill or pattern was added to the Content Exchange.
- **Popular** — Sorts search results based on the number of downloads of the fill or pattern.

Click a thumbnail, click the **More options** button , and click the **Copy to personal** button .

Fills and patterns that are copied to your personal library can be accessed from the **Fill** picker.

Click a thumbnail, and click the **Share** button .

Click a thumbnail, click the **More options** button , and click the **Edit properties** button .

Click a thumbnail, click the **More options** button , and click the **Delete** button .

Click a thumbnail, and click the **Favorite** button .

To	<b>Do the following</b>
Vote for a fill or pattern	To remove a fill or pattern from your favorites, click the <b>Unfavorite</b> button  .
Report inappropriate content	Click a thumbnail, and click the <b>Vote up</b>  or the <b>Vote down</b> button  .
Prevent a fill or pattern from appearing in future searches	Click a thumbnail, click the <b>More options</b> button  , and click the <b>Flag</b> button  .
	Click a thumbnail, click the <b>More options</b> button  , and click the <b>Hide</b> button  .



This procedure applies only to bitmap patterns and fountain fills and transparencies. You must sign in to your corel.com account to access content on the Content Exchange.

Fills and patterns in your personal library are saved in the **My Documents\Corel\Corel Content\Fills** folder.

## Saving and sharing fills and transparencies

After you create or modify a fill or transparency pattern, you can save it and add tags (keywords) in the language of your choice. Fills and patterns are saved in a special file format with a **.fill** extension, which preserves information about the transformations applied to the fill or pattern.

### To save and share a fill or transparency

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Fill** tool  or the **Object transparency** tool .
 

If you want to fill an **object**, you must select it by using the **Object pick** tool  before applying the fill.
- 2 On the property bar, click one of the following buttons:
  - **Fountain fill** 
  - **Fountain transparency** 
  - **Bitmap pattern fill** 
  - **Bitmap pattern transparency** 
- 3 Click the **Edit fill** button  or the **Edit transparency** button  on the property bar.
- 4 In the **Edit fill** dialog box, click the **Save as new** button .
- 5 In the **Save pattern** dialog box, choose a language from the list box, type a name for the fill or pattern, and type any tags (keywords) that you want to associate with it.

If you want to share the fill or pattern, enable the **Share this content** check box, and choose a category from the list.



You must sign in to your corel.com account to share content on the Content Exchange.

Fills and patterns in your personal library are saved in the **My Documents\Corel\Corel Content\Fills** folder.



You can also share a fill or pattern from your personal library to the Content Exchange. For more information, see [“To manage fills and transparencies”](#) on page 218.

## Masks and paths

Working with masks.....	223
Using paths to define image areas.....	245
Managing multiple masks with alpha channels.....	257





# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Working with masks

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can use [masks](#) to isolate areas in an image for editing while protecting the remaining areas from change. With their combination of [editable](#) and [protected](#) areas, masks let you modify images with precision. In some programs, editable areas are also known as selections.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Distinguishing protected and editable areas” (page 223)
- “Defining editable areas” (page 225)
- “Defining editable areas by using color information” (page 229)
- “Expanding and contracting editable areas” (page 231)
- “Inverting and removing masks” (page 234)
- “Moving and aligning editable areas” (page 234)
- “Transforming editable areas” (page 236)
- “Adjusting the edges of editable areas” (page 238)
- “Adjusting the transparency of masks” (page 240)
- “Cutting out images” (page 241)

For information about clip masks, see “Using clip masks” on page 336.

### Distinguishing protected and editable areas

You can use [masks](#) for advanced image editing. A mask functions like a stencil placed over an image. In [protected areas](#), paint and effects are not applied to the underlying image, whereas in [editable areas](#), paint and effects are applied to the image. When you define an editable area for an image, you also define a corresponding mask, or protected area, for the same image.

#### Mask overlay

You can display a mask overlay that appears only over protected areas to make it easy to differentiate between protected and editable areas. The mask overlay is a red-tinted, transparent sheet. If you adjust the [transparency](#) of a mask in certain areas, the degree of red displayed by the mask overlay in those areas varies accordingly.

You can hide the mask overlay. You can also change the color of the mask overlay so that it can be seen clearly against the colors of the image in the editable areas.

## Mask marquee

The border separating an editable area and its corresponding protected area is indicated by a dashed outline, called the mask marquee. You can display the mask marquee only when the mask overlay is hidden. You can change the color of the mask marquee so that it can be seen clearly against an image's colors.



*You can display the mask overlay (left) or the mask marquee (right).*

## Position of the mask marquee

If your editable area has a feathered edge, the mask marquee is placed by default along the outermost edge of the feathered section. However, you can specify a threshold value to position the mask marquee anywhere within the feathered edge of the section. For example, you may want the mask marquee to enclose only the pixels that are 100 percent editable and to exclude those that begin to blend with the protected area.

Adjusting the position of the mask marquee does not modify the size of the editable area; the mask marquee appears merely when a certain level of transparency is reached.

## To display or hide the mask overlay

- Click **Mask** ► **Mask overlay**.

A check mark beside the menu command indicates that the **mask overlay** is visible.

## To change the color of the mask overlay

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Display**.
- 3 Open the **Mask tint** color picker, and click a color.

## To display or hide the mask marquee

- Click **Mask** ► **Show mask marquee**.

A check mark beside the menu command indicates that the **mask marquee** is visible.



The **mask marquee** does not appear when you use a mask overlay or when you are adjusting the **transparency** of a mask.

## To change the color of the mask marquee

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.

- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Display**.
- 3 Open the **Mask marquee** color picker, and click a color.



The **mask marquee** does not appear when you use a mask overlay or when you are adjusting the **transparency** of a mask.

### To position a mask marquee along the edge of an editable area

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Display**.
- 3 Type a **grayscale** value in the **Mask threshold** box.



The **threshold** value that you specify is used for all other **masks** that you create until you change the value.

## Defining editable areas

There are a number of ways to define an **editable area** in an image without using color information from the image.

### Rectangular or elliptical editable areas

You can define rectangular or elliptical editable areas in an image.



*A circular area defined with the **Ellipse mask tool***

### Editable areas defined by using text, objects, or the Clipboard contents

You can define an editable area by using **objects**. When you create an editable area that has the shape of one or more objects, you have to move the objects away from the editable area before editing it.

You can define an editable area by using text. The editable area created when you type has the font and style characteristics you specify. You can also create an editable area from existing text.

You can define an editable area by pasting information from the Clipboard into the image window as an editable area. The area you create is a floating editable area, which you can edit and move without changing the underlying image **pixels**.

### Editable areas defined by using the Freehand Mask tool

You can define an editable area by outlining the image area with the **Freehand mask tool** as you would with a pencil and paper, or by clicking at different points on the image to anchor straight line segments.

You can also define an editable area by painting over it with a brush.

## Editable areas defined by using the Planar Mask tool

The **Planar mask** tool lets you define a feathered editable area along parallel lines. The lines can be moved or rotated to adjust the position and degree of the effect that is applied to the mask.

In combination with a blur effect, such as the Bokeh Blur, the **Planar mask** tool is useful for setting the depth of field in a photo along a linear area of focus such as a road, a bridge, or another linear element, while blurring the areas outside the lines. For more information about the Bokeh Blur effect, see [“Applying the Bokeh Blur effect” on page 293](#).

## Border-shaped editable areas

You can define a border-shaped editable area from the edges of an existing editable area to frame parts of an image with a color, texture, or special effect. A new **maskmarquee** is placed on either side of an existing mask marquee to define a border-shaped editable area.

## Editable areas consisting of the entire image

You can also define the entire image as an editable area. This feature is very useful when you want to apply a special effect requiring a mask to the entire image. For information about special effects, see [“Applying special effects” on page 283](#).

## To define a rectangular or elliptical editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click one of the following:
  - **Rectangle mask tool** 
  - **Ellipse mask tool** 
- 2 Click the **Normal** button  on the property bar.
- 3 On the property bar, choose one of the following from the **Style** list box:
  - **Normal** — lets you manually define a rectangular or elliptical [editable area](#)
  - **Fixed size** — lets you specify the width and height of a rectangular or elliptical editable area
  - **Row(s)** — lets you define a rectangular editable area across the width of the image. You can specify the height of the row and a value to round the rectangle’s corners.
  - **Column(s)** — lets you define a rectangular editable area along the height of the image. You can specify the width of the column and a value to round the rectangle’s corners.
- 4 Drag in the image window to define the editable area manually, or click to position an editable area of a specified size or orientation.



Using the **Normal** mask style, you can define a square or circular editable area by holding down **Ctrl** after you begin to drag in the image window.

Using the **Normal** mask style, you can define an editable area from its center by holding down **Shift** after you begin to drag in the image window.

## To define an editable area by using text, objects, or the Clipboard contents

### To

Define an area by using text

### Do the following

Click the **Text** tool  and specify the text attributes on the property bar. Click the **Create mask** button  on the property bar, type the text, and click anywhere in the toolbox to apply the changes.

Define an area by using objects

Select one or more objects, and click **Mask** ► **Create** ► **Mask from object(s)**.

Define an area by using the Clipboard contents

Click **Edit** ► **Paste** ► **Paste as new selection**.



You can also click the **Create mask** button on the **Mask/object** toolbar to define an **editable area** with one or more selected **objects**. If the **Mask/object** toolbar is not displayed, click **Window ▶ Toolbars ▶ Mask/object**.

### To define an editable area by using the Freehand Mask tool

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Freehand mask tool** .
- 2 Click the **Normal** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Click where you want to start and end each line segment in the image window.
- 4 Double-click to complete the outline.



You can also define an **editable area** by dragging the **Freehand mask tool** in the image window and double-clicking to complete the outline.



*An editable area created with the Freehand mask tool*

### To define an editable area by using the Planar Mask tool

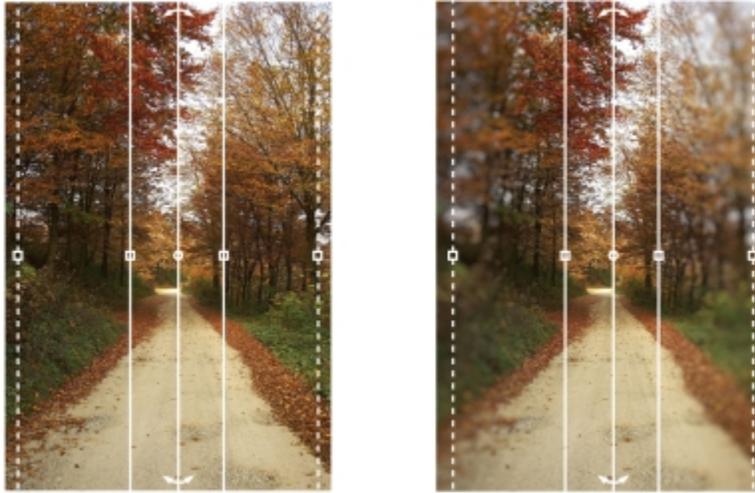
- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Planar mask tool** . Parallel lines appear on the image. The solid lines define the overall editable area, and the dashed lines define the feathered area along the top and bottom of the editable area.
- 2 Perform a task from the following table:

<b>To</b>	<b>Do the following</b>
Specify the size of the entire editable area	Type a value in the <b>Selection range</b> box on the property bar.
Specify the size of the feathered area	Type a value in the <b>Feather range</b> box on the property bar.
Rotate the editable area	Type a value in the <b>Angle of rotation</b> box on the property bar
Move the editable area	Drag the editable area to a new location



You can adjust the editable area and the feathered area by dragging the interactive onscreen handles. You can also rotate the editable area by dragging a rotation handle.

You can use different mask modes with the **Planar mask tool**. For more information about mask modes, see [“Expanding and contracting editable areas” on page 231](#).



Example of a planar mask in combination with a blur effect

### To define an editable area by painting

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Brush mask** tool .
- 2 Specify the tool's attributes on the property bar.
- 3 Click the **Normal** button  on the property bar.
- 4 Drag in the image window.



You can change the size of the brush nib of the **Brush mask** tool by holding down **Alt** and dragging in the image window until the nib is the size you want.

You can apply a straight brushstroke with the **Brush mask** tool by holding down **Ctrl** after you begin to drag in the image window. While still holding down **Ctrl**, you can press and release **Shift** to switch between horizontal and vertical brushstrokes.

### To define a border-shaped editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click a mask tool.
- 2 Define an [editable area](#).
- 3 Click **Mask** ▶ **Mask outline** ▶ **Border**.
- 4 Type a value in the **Width** box.
- 5 Choose an edge type from the **Edges** list box.



A soft edge produces a more gradual blend with the background image than a hard edge does.

### To define the entire image as an editable area

- Click **Mask** ▶ **Select entire image**.



If the [mask overlay](#) is enabled, the mask [marquee](#) does not appear.

## Defining editable areas by using color information

You can define the **editable** and **protected** areas of a **mask** by using the color information in an image. When you use color information, you must specify **seed colors** and a **color tolerance** value. A seed color is the base color that you use to define either protected or editable areas. The color tolerance value defines the percentage of color variation from the seed color that is allowed in the mask; a greater tolerance value adds more colors to the protected or editable areas. Color tolerance is based on color similarity.

### Editable areas with uniform colors

You can define an editable area of uniform color or an editable area surrounded by uniform colors. If the area is surrounded by uniform colors, you can make a rough outline that contracts to fit the area you want to edit, or you can base an editable area on the boundary between uniform colors.

### Editable areas throughout an image

You can define editable areas throughout an image by using a color mask. A color mask lets you select seed colors throughout the image instead of within a specific area.

The color **threshold** lets you further refine the range of colors that are included in the editable area. The threshold value evaluates the **brightness** of each seed color and determines which **pixels** are included in the editable area. Adjusting the color threshold lets you soften or sharpen the pixels at the edge of the editable area. To adjust the threshold levels of a color mask, you can use a **grayscale** preview of your image to display masked areas in black and editable areas in white.



*The blue, green, and purple pixels in the original image (left) were selected by using a color mask (right).*

### Editable areas in a specific color channel

You can define an editable area within a specific **color channel**. Every color image has a number of color channels, each representing one component of the image's **color model**. For example, an **RGB** image is composed of a red channel, a green channel, and a blue channel. When an image is displayed in its individual color channels, only a part of its color information is displayed. Displaying only certain color channels lets you define an editable area with greater precision.

### To define an editable area of uniform color

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Magic wand mask tool** .
- 2 Click the **Normal** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Type a tolerance value in the **Tolerance** box.
- 4 Click a color in the image.



To edit an intricate image shape set against a plain background, you can define the background as an **editable area** of uniform color and then invert the **mask** to make the shape editable. For more information about inverting masks, see “Inverting and removing masks” on page 234.

The color of the first **pixel** that you click establishes the **seed color**; all adjacent pixels with colors within the specified **color tolerance** range are included in the editable area. The editable area expands until it reaches pixels with colors that exceed the specified color tolerance.



*The area is selected by clicking an orange pixel with the Magic wand mask tool.*

### To define an editable area surrounded by uniform color

- 1 In the toolbox, choose one of the following:
  - **Lasso mask tool**  — lets you roughly outline an image area and then contract the **mask marquee** around a specified range of colors within that area; uses an initial **seed color**
  - **Magnetic mask tool**  — lets you establish a mask marquee along a boundary between colors in an image; uses multiple seed colors
- 2 Click the **Normal** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Type a **tolerance** value in the **Tolerance** box.
- 4 In the image window, click a color that you want to protect from changes, and click at different points to outline the **editable area**.
- 5 Double-click to complete the outline.



You can choose whether only the color of the first **pixel** or the color of every pixel you click establishes a seed color. The color tolerance range indicates the range of colors protected from changes. When the first pixel that you click establishes the seed color, the **protected area** expands until the specified color tolerance is reached. When you use the **Lasso mask tool**, the completed outline of the editable area contracts from your original outline to fit the irregular shape produced by excluding all the pixels from the original outline that fall within the specified color tolerance range. When you use the **Magnetic mask tool**, every pixel that you click establishes a seed color, so that each time you click, the protected area expands until the specified color tolerance is reached. The color tolerance is measured in relation to the current seed color and within a specific area around the pointer.



You can also drag in the image window to outline in a freehand mode. When you use the **Magnetic mask tool**, click frequently to set multiple seed colors and to establish multiple anchor points.

### To define editable areas throughout an image

- 1 Click **Mask** ▶ **Color mask**.

- 2 Click the **Normal mode** button .
- 3 Choose **Sampled colors** from the top pop-up menu.
- 4 Click the **Eyedropper** tool , and click each **seed color** in the image window.
- 5 Click the **Preview** button .
- 6 From the list box beside the **Preview** button, choose one of the following options:
  - **Overlay** — **Protected areas** are covered by a red-tinted transparent sheet.
  - **Grayscale** — Protected areas appear in black, and editable areas appear in white.
  - **Black matte** — Protected areas are covered by a black-tinted transparent sheet.
  - **White matte** — Protected areas are covered by a white-tinted transparent sheet.
  - **Marquee** — A dotted line appears around the **editable area**.
- 7 Click **More**, and enable one of the following options:
  - **Normal** — determines the color tolerance based on color similarity between **pixels**
  - **HSB mode**— determines the color tolerance based on similarity between **hue**, **saturation**, and **brightness** levels of **pixels**
- 8 In the box beside each seed color, specify the percentage of color variation permitted between pixels of that color and the remaining pixels.
- 9 In the **Threshold** area, move the **Threshold** slider and enable one of the following options:
  - **To black** — All pixels with a brightness value above the **threshold** value are added to the protected area.
  - **To white** — All pixels with a brightness value above the threshold value are added to the editable area.



If colors from a previous session appear in the **Color mask** dialog box, click **Reset** before you create a new color **mask**.

The **Marquee** display style is unavailable when the **Show mask marquee** command on the **Mask** menu is disabled.



You can set a default **color tolerance** for a color mask by clicking the flyout button and clicking **Set tolerance default**.

You can also specify predetermined seed colors by choosing a color preset, such as **Greens**, from the list box beside the **Eyedropper** tool.

## To define editable areas in specific color channels

- 1 In the **Channels** docker, click the **Eye** icon  beside a **color channel**.  
If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Channels**.
- 2 In the toolbox, click one of the following:
  - **Lasso mask tool** 
  - **Magic wand mask tool** 
- 3 Define an area in the image.

## Expanding and contracting editable areas

You can add parts to and remove parts from an **editable area**.

By default, each editable area that you define replaces the last one defined. However, you can use the following **mask modes** if you want to retain the current editable area but modify its shape:

## Mode

Additive

Subtractive

Overlap

## Description

Lets you add areas to an editable area. Areas you add to the editable area are removed from the protected areas.

Lets you subtract areas from an editable area. Areas you subtract from the editable area are added to the protected area.

Lets you add areas to an already existing editable area, as long as the new areas don't overlap with the old ones. Any overlapping regions are excluded from the editable area and added to the protected area. In addition to expanding or reducing an existing editable area, this mask mode lets you define an editable area that has no active mask.

A mask mode remains active until you change modes. The following examples illustrate the use of the different mask modes.



*The Ellipse mask tool is used in the Normal mode.*



*The entire ball is defined as an editable area in the resulting mask.*



*The Ellipse mask and Freehand mask tools are used in the Subtractive mode.*



*The resulting editable area consists of the yellow areas of the ball.*



*The Magic wand mask tool is used in the Additive mode.*



*The numbers are now added to the editable area.*



*The Ellipse mask tool is used in the Overlap mode.*



*The overlapping areas — the yellow areas and numbers — are removed from the editable area, and the white areas are added to it.*

## Removing protected areas

You can remove **protected areas** from within an editable area. This feature is useful for modifying color masks that have large editable areas.

## Specifying number of pixels

You can expand and contract an editable area by a specific number of **pixels**. The pixels are added to or removed from the edge of the editable area.

## Adding pixels of similar color

You can add adjacent pixels of a similar color to an editable area. The editable area expands until it reaches pixels with colors that are too dissimilar from the colors in the original editable area. The **color tolerance** value you specify sets the percentage of color variation allowed between the pixels in the original editable area and the adjacent protected areas.

You can also add all pixels of similar color to an editable area regardless of whether they are adjacent to those in the current editable area. The color tolerance value you specify sets the percentage of color variation allowed between the pixels in the original editable areas and the protected areas.

## To add to or subtract from an editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click a mask tool.
- 2 On the property bar, click one of the following buttons:
  - Additive 
  - Subtractive 
  - Overlap 
- 3 Drag in the image to define the area that you want to add to, or subtract from, an **editable area**.



After you begin to drag, you can use **Ctrl** and **Shift** to constrain the shape of the area you add or subtract. For example, if you're using the **Ellipse mask** tool, holding down **Ctrl** constrains the shape to a circle, and holding down **Ctrl + Shift** makes the circle expand from the center.

## To remove protected areas from an editable area

- Click **Mask** ▶ **Mask outline** ▶ **Remove holes**.

## To expand or contract an editable area

To

Expand an editable area by a specific number of pixels

Contract an editable area by a specific number of pixels

Do the following

Click **Mask** ▶ **Mask outline** ▶ **Expand**, and type a value in the **Width** box.

Click **Mask** ▶ **Mask outline** ▶ **Contract**, and type a value in the **Width** box.

## To add adjacent pixels of similar color to an editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Magic wand mask** tool .
- 2 Type a value in the **Tolerance** box on the property bar.
- 3 Click **Mask** ▶ **Mask outline**, and click one of the following menu commands:

- **Grow** — expands an **editable area** to include all similarly colored adjacent **pixels**
- **Similar** — expands an **editable area** to include all similarly colored pixels in the entire image

## Inverting and removing masks

You can invert a **mask** so that the **protected area** becomes **editable** and the **editable area** becomes **protected**. Inverting a mask when defining the image area that you want to protect is easier than defining the area that you want to edit. For example, if you want to edit an intricate shape in an image that is set against a plain background, it is easier to select the background and then invert the mask.

You can remove a mask from an image when you no longer need it.



*First, the background was selected (left); then, the mask was inverted to define the orange bottle as an **editable area** (right).*

### To invert a mask

- Click **Mask ▶ Invert**.

### To remove a mask

- Click **Mask ▶ Remove**.



When you remove a **mask**, **editable areas** that were previously floating on your image are automatically merged with the background.

## Moving and aligning editable areas

You can move an **editable area** anywhere in an image with or without the image **pixels** it encloses. When an **editable area** and the image **pixels** it encloses are moved together, the **pixels** can be cut from the image and the hole filled with background color, or the **pixels** can be copied by floating the **editable area**.

You can align an **editable area** to one or more selected **objects**. You can also align an **editable area** to the center or the edges of an image. Depending on where you want an **editable area** to appear, you can experiment with horizontal and vertical alignment options.

An **editable area** can also be aligned to **guidelines** and to the **grid**. For more information, see [“Using the guidelines, grid, and rulers” on page 67](#).

### To move an editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Mask transform** tool .
- 2 Drag the **editable area** to a new location in the image window.



You can also move an editable area by [nudging](#) it.

### To move an editable area and its image pixels

1 In the toolbox, click one of the following tools:

- Rectangle masktool 
- Ellipse mask tool 
- Freehand masktool 
- Lasso mask tool 
- Magnetic mask tool 
- Magic wand mask tool 

2 Click the **Normal** button  on the property bar.

3 Drag the [editable area](#) to a new location.



When an editable area is moved once, the underlying image is replaced with the background color. If the same editable area is moved again, the underlying image is no longer replaced with the background color.



You can leave a copy of an editable area you move by holding down **Alt** as you drag.

You can also move an editable area by [nudging](#) it.

### To align an editable area with an object

1 Select the [objects](#) with which you want to align the [editable area](#).

2 Click **Mask ▶ Align**.

3 In the **Mask align** dialog box, enable one of the following options:

- **Active object**
- **Selected object(s)**

4 Enable one of the following vertical alignment check boxes:

- **Top**
- **Center**
- **Bottom**

5 Enable one of the following horizontal alignment check boxes:

- **Left**
- **Center**
- **Right**

If you want to align the editable area to the gridlines nearest to the specified objects, enable the **Align to grid** check box.

### To align an editable area with the edges or center of an image

1 In the toolbox, click a mask tool.

2 Click **Mask ▶ Align**.

- 3 Enable the **Document** option.
- 4 Enable one of the following vertical alignment check boxes:
  - **Top**
  - **Center**
  - **Bottom**
- 5 Enable one of the following horizontal alignment check boxes:
  - **Left**
  - **Center**
  - **Right**



When you align an editable area to the edges or center of an image with the **Align to grid** check box enabled, the editable area is aligned to the gridlines nearest to the specified edges or center of the image.

## Transforming editable areas

You can change the form of an [editable area](#) of a mask by rotating, scaling, sizing, flipping, skewing, distorting, or applying perspective to it. If an editable area is floating above the image, it is automatically merged with the underlying image when it is transformed.

Transformation	Description
Rotating	Lets you rotate an editable area
Scaling	Lets you size an editable area to a percentage of its original size
Sizing	Lets you change the width and height of an editable area
Flipping	Lets you create a mirror image of an editable area by flipping the object vertically or horizontally
Skewing	Lets you slant an editable area in one direction. One side remains stationary while the other sides move in the specified direction. All opposite sides maintain a parallel relation to each other.
Distorting	Lets you stretch or shrink an editable area disproportionately
Applying perspective	Lets you give a three-dimensional appearance to an editable area

### To rotate an editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Mask transform** tool .
- 2 Click the **Rotate** button  on the property bar.  
If you want to change the center of rotation of the editable area, drag the center of rotation to a new position within the editable area.
- 3 Drag a corner handle of the [mask marquee](#).
- 4 Double-click in the [editable area](#).



You can rotate an editable area by a specific angle by typing a value in the **Angle of rotation** box on the property bar and clicking **Apply**.

You can change the center of rotation, also known as a pivot point, by typing values in the **Center of rotation** boxes on the property bar and clicking **Apply**.

### To scale an editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Mask transform** tool .
- 2 Click the **Scale** button on the property bar.
- 3 Drag a corner handle of the **mask marquee**.
- 4 Double-click in the **editable area**.

#### You can also

Scale an editable area with precision

On the property bar, type percentage values in the **Scale** boxes and click **Apply**.

Scale an editable area while preserving the ratio of width and height

Click the **Maintain ratio** button  on the property bar.

Scale an editable area from the center

Hold down **Shift** as you drag a corner handle.

### To size an editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Mask transform** tool .
- 2 Click the **Position and size** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Drag a middle handle of the **mask marquee**.  
If you want to size the **editable area** proportionally, drag a corner **handle** of the mask marquee.
- 4 Double-click in the **editable area**.

#### You can also

Size an editable area with precision

On the property bar, type values in the **Size** boxes and click **Apply**.

Size an editable area from the center

Hold down **Shift** as you drag a center transformation handle. The change in size occurs in two opposite directions.

Size an editable area in 100 percent increments

Hold down **Ctrl** as you drag a transformation handle.

### To flip an editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Mask transform** tool .
- 2 Click the **Scale** button on the property bar.
- 3 Drag a center **handle** of the mask marquee across the **editable area** and past the opposite center handle.
- 4 Double-click in the **editable area**.



You can flip an editable area symmetrically by holding down **Ctrl** and dragging a middle handle across the editable area and past the opposite middle handle.

### To skew an editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Mask transform** tool .
- 2 Click the **Skew** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Drag a middle **handle** of the **mask marquee**.
- 4 Double-click in the **editable area**.



You can also skew an editable area by typing values in the **Skew angle** boxes on the property bar and clicking **Apply**.  
Before applying the transformation, you can return an editable area to its original size by pressing **Esc**.

### To distort an editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Mask transform** tool .
- 2 Click the **Distort** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Drag a transformation **handle** of the **mask marquee**.
- 4 Double-click in the **editable area**.



You can also set the **Mask transform** tool to the Distort mode by clicking in the editable area until the handles you can use to distort the editable area appear.

Before applying the transformation, you can return the editable area to its original size by pressing **Esc**.

### To apply perspective to an editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Mask transform** tool .
- 2 Click the **Perspective** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Drag a transformation **handle** of the **mask marquee**.
- 4 Double-click in the **editable area**.



You can also set the **Mask transform** tool to the Perspective mode by clicking in the editable area until the transformation handles appear.

Before applying the transformation, you can return an editable area to its original size by pressing **Esc**.

## Adjusting the edges of editable areas

You can customize the transition between a **protected area** and an **editable area** by adjusting the edges of these areas.

### Preventing jagged edges

You can use **anti-aliasing** to avoid the appearance of jagged edges of editable areas that have curved and diagonal lines. Anti-aliasing makes some of the **pixels** located on the inside edge of an editable area semitransparent, creating a smoother outline.

### Feathering

**Feathering** gradually increases the **transparency** of the **pixels** along the edge of an editable area to soften the edge between the **protected** and **editable areas**. You can specify the width of the feathered area as well as the feathering direction, which determines where the feathering is located relative to the **mask marquee**. From the mask marquee, the feathering direction can go into the protected areas, into the editable areas, or into both areas for an equal distance.



Left to right: Before and after feathering the edges of an editable area

### Applying a sharp edge

You can remove the feathering from the edges of an editable area and create a new, sharper edge by setting a threshold value. Pixels in the feathered editable area have a grayscale value ranging from 0 (black and fully protected) to 255 (white and fully editable). The **threshold** value you specify determines where along the feathered edge you want the new, unfeathered edge to be created. For example, if you set a threshold value of 110, all pixels within the editable area that have a **grayscale** value of less than 110 are protected, and all pixels within the area that have a grayscale value of more than 110 are editable.

### Smoothing

You can smooth the edges of an editable area to remove sharp angles. Smoothing averages the grayscale values of a specified number of pixels at the edge of an editable area. For example, if you specify 10 as the radius value, 10 pixels to the left and 10 pixels to the right of the edge are checked. If the editable pixels outnumber the protected pixels, the editable area is expanded; if the protected pixels outnumber the editable pixels, the protected area is expanded.

Smoothing is useful when you work with complex color **masks**. For example, when you smooth the edges of an editable area, protected areas that are isolated within the editable areas are often removed.

### Applying color or a paint effect

You can apply color or a paint effect along the edges of an editable area to emphasize or blend the boundary between the editable and protected areas. You can also reapply color or a paint effect along the edges of an editable area. Repeating a brushstroke lets you enhance the effect.

### To prevent jagged edges in an editable area

- 1 In the toolbox, click a **mask** tool.
- 2 Click the **Anti-aliasing** button  on the property bar.



**Anti-aliasing** is enabled by default when you use the **Ellipse**, **Freehand**, **Lasso**, and **Magic wand** tools to define an **editable area**.

Anti-aliasing is not available for the **Rectangle mask** tool.

### To feather the edges of an editable area

- 1 Click **Mask** ► **Mask outline** ► **Feather**.
- 2 Type a value in the **Width** box.
- 3 From the **Direction** list box, choose one of the following:
  - **Inside** — **feathers** in from the edge of the editable area and appears to blend the protected area into the **editable area**

- **Outside** — feathers out from the edge of the editable area and blends the editable area so that it appears to overlap the [protected area](#)
  - **Middle** — places an equal number of feathered pixels on the inside and outside of the edge of the editable area
  - **Average** — samples all the pixels in the area you specified in the **Width** box and assigns an average color value to each
- 4 Choose an edge type from the **Edges** list box.

If you want to preview the results, click **Preview** .



You can also feather the edges of an editable area by clicking the **Feather mask** button  on the property bar.

### To apply a sharp edge to a feathered editable area

- 1 Click **Mask ▶ Mask outline ▶ Threshold**.
- 2 Type a value in the **Level** box.

### To smooth the edges of an editable area

- 1 Click **Mask ▶ Mask outline ▶ Smooth**.
- 2 Type a value in the **Radius** box.

### To apply color or an effect along the edges of an editable area

- 1 Click one of the following:
  - **Paint tool** 
  - **Effect tool** 
  - **Image Sprayer tool** 
  - **Eraser tool** 
  - **Replace color brush tool** 
- 2 Set the tool's attributes on the property bar.
- 3 Click **Mask ▶ Create ▶ Brushstroke from mask**.
- 4 Choose one of the following positions:
  - **Middle of mask border** — centers the stroke on the edge of the [editable area](#)
  - **Inside of mask** — places the stroke inside the edge of the editable area
  - **Outside of mask** — places the stroke outside the edge of the editable area.



You can reapply color or an effect along the edges of an editable area by clicking **Edit ▶ Repeat brushstroke**, and clicking the **Repeat stroke on mask** button  in the **Repeat stroke** dialog box.

## Adjusting the transparency of masks

You can adjust the [transparency](#) of a [mask](#) to control the extent to which [pixels](#) in the image are protected from changes. When you adjust the transparency of a mask, you use a [grayscale](#) representation of the mask. Any color that you apply to the image appears in its corresponding shade of gray; therefore, the darker the shade that is applied to the mask, the less the color and effects can change the image. For example, if you use a brush to apply a color with a grayscale value of 127 (the midpoint of the 256 shades of gray) to an image area, this area receives only 50 percent of any effect that is later applied to it.

Because you are editing a grayscale representation of the mask, you can use a color, object, effect, or another mask to modify the transparency of the mask. You can also change the transparency of the mask by pasting images from the [Clipboard](#); the grayscale values of the pasted images are applied to the mask.

### To adjust the transparency of a mask

- 1 Click **Mask ▶ Paint on mask**.
- 2 Apply a color, [mask](#), [object](#), or effect to the areas in which you want to change the [transparency](#) of the mask.
- 3 Click **Mask ▶ Paint on mask**.



The darker the shade of gray applied, the less editable the underlying [pixels](#) become.

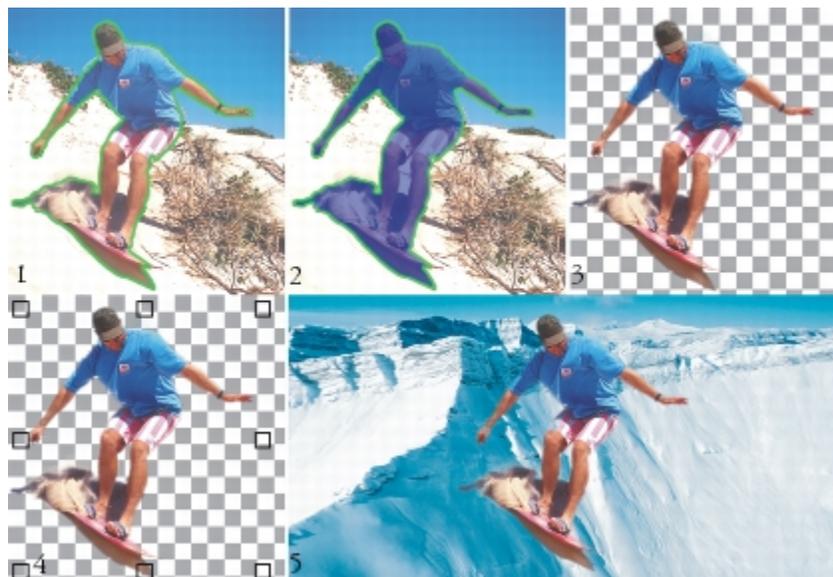
## Cutting out images

The Cutout Lab lets you cut out image areas from the surrounding background. This feature allows you to isolate image areas and preserve edge detail, such as hair or blurred edges.

To cut out an image area, you draw a highlight over its edges and then apply a [fill](#) to define the inside of the area. To evaluate the results, you can preview the cutout with the background removed or against a background of gray, white, or black. You can also preview the cutout with the original image showing underneath and with the highlight and fill displayed. If necessary, you can touch up the cutout by adding or removing detail along its edges.

If you make a mistake, you can erase and redo sections of the highlighted and filled area, undo or redo an action, or revert to the original image.

By default, the cutout is placed as an object in the image window and the original image is removed. You can also choose to keep both the cutout and the original image, or create a [clip mask](#) from the cutout.



*Cutout Lab workflow: (1) Highlight the edges of the image area; (2) Add a fill to the inside. (3) Preview the cutout and touch it up if needed. (4) Bring the cutout into the image window. (5 — optional) Place the cutout against a background image.*

You can set options for some of the tools in the Cutout Lab. For example, you can customize the thickness of the highlight by changing the nib size of the **Highlighter** tool. If an image area has hard edges, you can use a thinner line to define its edges more precisely. Conversely, if

an image area has blurred or wispy edges that are hard to define, you can use a thicker line. Also, you can change the highlight and the fill color to make them more visible.

You can also [zoom](#) in to get a closer look at image detail or zoom out to view a larger area of the image. You can [pan](#) to view image areas that fall outside the preview window.

## To cut out an image area

1 Click **Image** ▶ **Cutout Lab**.

2 Click the **Highlighter** tool .

3 In the preview window, draw a line along the edges of the image area that you want to cut out. The line should slightly overlap the surrounding background.

4 Click the **Inside fill** tool , and click inside the area you want to cut out.

5 Click **Preview**.

If you want to touch up the cutout, click the **Add detail**  or **Remove detail**  tool, and drag over an edge.

6 From the **Cutout results** area, choose any of the following options:

- **Cutout** — creates an object from the cutout and discards the original image
- **Cutout and original image** — creates an object from the cutout and preserves the original image
- **Cutout as clip mask** — creates a [clip mask](#) from the cutout and attaches the clip mask to the original image. A clip mask is a mask that is attached to an object and lets you change the transparency of an object without permanently affecting it. If you created a cutout from a background image, the background is converted to an object.

## You can also

Erase the highlight and fill

Click the **Eraser** tool , and drag over the highlight and fill that you want to delete. The **Eraser** tool is available before you click **Preview**.

Undo or redo an action

Click the **Undo**  or **Redo**  button.

Revert to the original image

Click **Reset**.

Set preview options

In the **Preview settings** area, enable any of the following check boxes:

- **Show highlight** — displays the highlight around the cutout
- **Show fill** — displays the fill inside the cutout
- **Show original image** — displays the original image underneath the cutout

From the **Background** list box, choose any of the following options:

- **None** — displays the cutout against a black-and-white checkered pattern. If the **Show original image** check box is enabled, the removed areas appear under a semitransparent black-and-white checkered pattern.
- **Grayscale** — displays the cutout against a gray background. If the **Show original image** check box is enabled, the removed areas are tinted gray.
- **Black matte** — displays the cutout against a black background. If the **Show original image** check box is enabled, the removed areas are tinted black.
- **White matte** — displays the cutout against a white background. If the **Show original image** check box is enabled, the removed areas are tinted white.



The Cutout Lab supports **RGB**, **CMYK**, **grayscale**, **paletted**, and **Lab** images. When brought into the Cutout Lab, grayscale, paletted, and Lab images are automatically converted to RGB or CMYK images, which may result in a slight color shift. The original image colors are restored after you apply or cancel the **Cutout Lab** command.



You can switch from the **Highlighter** to the **Eraser** tool, and from the **Eraser** to the **Highlighter** tool by right-clicking and dragging in the preview window.

You can switch from the **Add detail** to the **Remove detail** tool, and from the **Remove detail** to the **Add detail** tool by right-clicking and dragging in the preview window.

### To set tool options in the Cutout Lab

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Cutout Lab**.
- 2 Perform a task from the following table.

To	Do the following
Set the nib size of the <b>Highlighter</b> , <b>Eraser</b> , <b>Add detail</b> , and <b>Remove detail</b> tools	Choose a nib size from the <b>Nib size</b> list box.
Change the highlight color	Choose a highlight color from the <b>Highlight color</b> picker.
Change the fill color	Choose a fill color from the <b>Fill color</b> picker.



You can change the nib size of the **Highlighter**, **Eraser**, **Add detail**, and **Remove detail** tools interactively by holding down **Shift** while dragging a tool.

### To view an image in the Cutout Lab

- 1 Click **Image** ► **Cutout Lab**.
- 2 Perform a task from the following table.

To	Do the following
Zoom in and out	Using the <b>Zoom in</b>  or <b>Zoom out</b> tool  , click in the preview window.
Display an image at its actual size	Click the <b>100%</b>  button.
Fit an image in the preview window	Click the <b>Zoom to fit</b>  button.
Pan to another area of an image	Using the <b>Pan</b> tool  , drag the image until the area you want to see is visible.





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Using paths to define image areas

**Paths** let you create precise, curved lines or outlined shapes in an image. You can use paths to edit a **mask**, apply text or brushstrokes, or export irregularly shaped images contained within the path.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Creating paths” (page 245)
- “Managing paths” (page 247)
- “Shaping paths” (page 249)
- “Adding and deleting path nodes” (page 250)
- “Joining and breaking paths” (page 251)
- “Changing node types” (page 252)
- “Applying brushstrokes to paths” (page 253)
- “Working with clipping paths” (page 254)

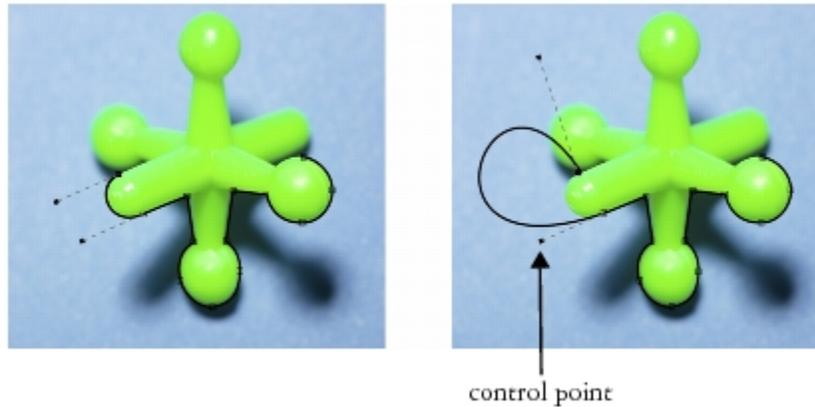
### Creating paths

**Paths** are line and curve segments connected by square endpoints called **nodes**. You can create paths from scratch, from a **mask**, or by duplicating an existing path. You can create more than one path on an image, but only one path is displayed on the image at a time.

#### Drawing paths

You can create Bézier paths and freehand paths. When you draw a path from scratch, the first path is Path 1, and subsequent paths are incrementally numbered.

You can create a Bézier path by placing nodes on an image. Straight or curved line segments join the nodes. Control points indicate the direction of the curve segment and its angle relative to the node. After you draw the path, you can edit the shape more precisely. For more information about shaping the path, see “[Shaping paths](#)” on page 249.



Examples of Bézier paths

You can create a freehand path in the same way you would draw a line with a pencil. When you finish drawing the path, the number and type of nodes needed are automatically inserted along the path.

### Converting paths and masks

You can convert masks to paths for more flexible editing features. When you convert a mask to a path, you create a path that follows the edge between an [editable area](#) and a [protected area](#). A path lets you modify the shape of the editable area using the path editing features. For example, if you create a mask around an intricately shaped building in an image, you can convert the mask to a path and place nodes to precisely outline the building. You can then convert the path back to a mask.

You can also convert a path to a mask so that you can select, cut, or copy a defined area. Converting paths to masks lets you modify the shape using the mask tools.

When you convert a path to a mask, the mask is created in addition to the path so that both display on the image. You can then create an object from the editable area and move the object without affecting the position of the path. For more information, see [“Creating objects” on page 312](#).

### Duplicating paths

When you duplicate a path, you create a copy of the path. You can make changes to the duplicated path without affecting the original path.

### To draw a Bézier path

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Bézier** button on the property bar.
- 3 Click where you want to place the first **node**.
- 4 Point to where you want to end the line segment, and do any of the following:
  - Click to place a node for a straight line.
  - Drag to set the control points for a curved line.
- 5 Click the **Bézier** button to complete the **path**.



You can draw a new path by clicking the **New path** button in the **Path** docker. If the **Path** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Path**.

You can create a closed path by clicking the path's starting node.

## To draw a freehand path

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Freehand** button on the property bar.
- 3 Drag in the image window to draw the **path**.



You can draw a new path by clicking the **New path** button in the **Path** docker. If the **Path** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Path**.

## To convert a mask to a path

- 1 Define an **editable area**.
- 2 Click **Mask ▶ Create ▶ Path from mask**.
- 3 Move the **Smoothing** slider.

Lower values tend to create more **nodes** for more precise editing, while higher values tend to create fewer nodes for a smoother **path**.

## To convert a path to a mask

- Click **Mask ▶ Create ▶ Mask from path**.



When you convert an open **path** to a **mask**, the start and end **nodes** are connected automatically.



If you have more than one path, select the one you want to convert by clicking the path thumbnail in the **Path** docker. If the **Path** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Path**.

## To duplicate a path

- 1 Click a **path** in the **Path** docker.  
If the **Path** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Path**.
- 2 Click the flyout button in the **Path** docker, and click **Duplicate**.



The duplicate path is listed in the **Path** docker with the word "Copy."

## Managing paths

### Saving, exporting and deleting paths

You can save one or more **paths** with an image when you save the image to the Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT) file format. You can also export paths for use in other applications, such as CorelDRAW (CDR) or Adobe Illustrator (AI). If you want to use a path in other Corel PHOTO-PAINT images, you must export the path to the Corel Presentation Exchange (CMX) file format. You can delete a path at any time.

### Importing paths and vector graphics

You can import a path into a Corel PHOTO-PAINT image. You can open more than one path and switch between them in the image window. Corel PHOTO-PAINT also lets you import **vector graphics** from other drawing applications. When vector graphics are converted to paths, each point on the vector is converted to a **node**. To import text from CorelDRAW, you must first convert the text to curves.

## Viewing a path

By default, a path displays in black. You can hide a path when you are working on an image, or you can change the default color of the path to make it more visible.

## To save a path with an image

- 1 Click **File** ► **Save as**.
- 2 Choose the folder where you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a name for the image in the **File name** box.
- 4 Choose **Corel PHOTO-PAINT image** from the **Save as type** list box.



You must export a [path](#) if you want to use it in other Corel PHOTO-PAINT images or other applications. For information about exporting paths, see [“To export a path” on page 248](#).

## To export a path

- 1 Click a [path](#) in the **Path** docker.  
If the **Path** docker is not open, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Path**.
- 2 Click the flyout button in the **Path** docker, and click **Export path**.
- 3 Choose the folder where you want to save the path.
- 4 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 5 Choose a file type from the **Save as type** list box.

## To delete a path

- 1 Click a [path](#) in the **Path** docker.  
If the **Path** docker is not open, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Path**.
- 2 Click the **Delete current path** button  in the **Path** docker.

## To import a path or vector graphic

- 1 Click the flyout button in the **Path** docker, and click **Import path**.  
If the **Path** docker is not open, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Path**.
- 2 Choose the folder where the [path](#) or [vector graphic](#) is stored.
- 3 Double-click the filename.



Large, complex vector images are not suitable for importing as paths, because they contain too many [nodes](#).

## To hide a path

- Click the **Show/hide path** button in the **Path** docker.  
If the **Path** docker is not open, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Path**.

## To change the default path color

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.

- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Display**.
- 3 Open the **Path color** picker, and click a color.

## Shaping paths

You can change the shape of a [path](#) by selecting and moving its [nodes](#), [segments](#), or [control points](#).

### Selecting nodes

You must select a node before you can move it to another location, delete it, or drag its associated control points. Selecting several nodes lets you perform the same operation simultaneously on one or more path segments.

### Moving path segments

You can move path segments by dragging nodes. When you drag a single node, the segments attached to it move with the node and remain connected. When you drag two or more adjacent nodes, the path segments between the nodes retain their form and move with the nodes.

### Rotating and skewing path segments

Rotating paths lets you turn them around a pivot point, called the center of rotation, whereas skewing paths lets you slant them to one side while the opposite side remains stationary.

### Sizing path segments

You can change the length or width of the path segments that you select, and you can scale selected path segments. When you scale path segments, they can either keep their proportion or become distorted as you size the path.

### Reshaping a curve segment by using control points

When you select a single node on a curve segment, two control points extend from it in opposite directions. You can change the shape of a curve by repositioning the control points. You may need to change the node type to achieve the shape you want. For more information about node types, see [“Changing node types” on page 252](#).

### To select a path node

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Click a [node](#).

#### You can also

Select multiple nodes Hold down **Shift**, and click the nodes you want to select.

Select all nodes Hold down **Ctrl + Shift**, and click a node.



You can also select multiple nodes by clicking the **Shape** button and [marquee selecting](#) a group of nodes.

You can deselect a node by holding down **Shift** and clicking a node.

### To move a path segment

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Select the [nodes](#) on a [path segment](#).
- 4 Drag the nodes to a new location.



You can move path segments in precise increments by pressing an **Arrow** key to move the selected nodes the **nudge** distance, or by holding down **Shift** and pressing an **Arrow** key to move the selected nodes the **super nudge** distance.

### To rotate a path segment

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Select the **nodes** on a **path segment**.
- 4 Click **Object** ▶ **Edit Path** ▶ **Rotate and skew nodes**.
- 5 Drag a **rotation handle**.



You can also drag the center of rotation to a new location.

### To skew a path segment

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Select the **nodes** on a **path segment**.
- 4 Click **Object** ▶ **Edit path** ▶ **Rotate and skew nodes**.
- 5 Drag a **skewing handle**.

### To size a path segment

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Select the **nodes** on a **path segment**.
- 4 Click **Object** ▶ **Edit path** ▶ **Stretch and scale nodes**.
- 5 On the highlighting box, drag any of the following **handles**:
  - side selection handles — stretch the selected path segments
  - corner selection handles — scale the selected path segments



You can also size path segments by clicking the **Elastic mode** button on the property bar.

### To shape a curve using the control points

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Select a curve **node**.
- 4 Drag the **control points**.

## Adding and deleting path nodes

Increasing or decreasing the number of **nodes** on a **path** lets you change the shape of the line and curve **segments** with greater control.

## Adding and deleting nodes

You can add nodes to a path if the existing segments, nodes, and [control points](#) do not let you shape a path the way you want. You can add one node at a time or several at once. When you add a node, you can choose where it displays on the line segment.

When you delete nodes, the shape of the path can change, depending on the position of the nodes that are removed.

## Smoothing paths

Paths you create from [masks](#) or draw freehand style can contain more nodes than required to maintain their shape. These extra nodes can give paths a rough appearance. You can smooth the path by removing the extra nodes from the entire path or from a section of the path.

### To add a node to a path

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Click where you want to add a [node](#) on the [path](#).
- 4 On the property bar, click the **Add node** button .



You can add a node at the midpoint of a path [segment](#) by selecting a node and clicking the **Add node** button on the property bar. The node is added between the selected node and the node that precedes it in the path.

You can also add a node by double-clicking where you want to add the node to a path segment.

### To delete a node from a path

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Select a [node](#).
- 4 On the property bar, click the **Delete node** button .



You can also delete a node by double-clicking it.

### To smooth a path

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Select an area of a [path](#).
- 4 On the property bar, type a value in the **Smoothing** box.

You can enter values from 1 to 100. Lower values remove some [nodes](#) that are not necessary to maintain the shape of the path. Higher values remove more nodes, while still preserving the path shape.

## Joining and breaking paths

You can join or break [path segments](#) to create open or closed paths on an image. Because [nodes](#) act as connective joints for a path, you can join or break segments only at a node. If a node does not exist at the point where you want to break segments, you must add a node at that point.

You can join two nodes in a path if they are at the end of open segments. For example, if you want to close an open path, you can join the start and end nodes. You can also join [subpaths](#).

If you want to open a closed path or create subpaths, you can break the connection between two nodes. When you break a path, new nodes are added to the ends of the disconnected segments, creating two [subpaths](#).

### To join path nodes

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Select two [nodes](#) positioned at the open end of [path segments](#) or [subpaths](#).
- 4 On the property bar, click the **Join nodes** button .



When you join two nodes that are far apart, they join in the middle of their original positions.

### To break a path

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Select a [node](#).
- 4 On the property bar, click the **Break node** button .
- 5 Drag the node away from the [path](#).

## Changing node types

When you change a [node](#) type, you change the way [segments](#) attached to the node behave. While a new node type may not immediately affect a [path's](#) shape, it will change the shape when you move the [control points](#) to modify the path.

By changing the node type, you can change a line segment to a curve segment or change a curve segment to a line segment. When you change a line segment to a curve segment, you must select the nodes at either end of the segment to view the curve's control points.

There are three types of curve nodes: smooth, symmetrical, and sharp. Symmetrical nodes force the curve on one side of a node to mirror the curve on the other side of the node. Sharp nodes add sharp bends to a path. Smooth nodes create a smooth transition between two segments.



*Node types from left to right: Symmetrical, sharp, and smooth.*

## To change a path segment to a curve or a line

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Select one or more **nodes** on a **path segment**.
- 4 On the property bar, click one of the following buttons:
  - **To line**
  - **To curve**



You can also change a path segment to a curve or a line by clicking on the segment and clicking the **To line** or **To curve** buttons on the property bar.

## To change the curve type of a path node

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Click the **Shape** button on the property bar.
- 3 Select a **node**.
- 4 On the property bar, click one of the following buttons:
  - **Symmetrical curve** 
  - **Sharp curve** 
  - **Smooth curve** 



When a curve segment is connected to a line segment with a smooth node, you can only move the control point on the curve side along an imaginary line that follows the extension of the line segment.

A curve node that is connected to a line segment must be **Smooth** or **Sharp**.

## Applying brushstrokes to paths

You can paint along a **path** to apply precise brushstrokes to an image. For information about applying brushstrokes, see “[Drawing and painting](#)” on page 265.

You can also repeat a saved brushstroke along a path. You can edit the saved brushstroke to create new effects by adjusting the size, number, angle, and color of the brushstroke.

## To apply a brushstroke along a path

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Path** tool .
- 2 Select a **path**.
- 3 Click one of the following:
  - **Paint tool** 
  - **Effect tool** 
  - **Clone tool** 
  - **Image sprayer tool** 

- Eraser tool 
- Replace color brush tool 

4 On the property bar, set any attributes for the tool.

5 Click **Object** ▶ **Edit path** ▶ **Brushstroke from path**.

If you want to reapply the brushstroke, click **Edit** ▶ **Repeat brushstroke**.



You can reverse the direction of a stroke by clicking **Object** ▶ **Edit path** ▶ **Reverse brushstroke from path**.

You can paint along a specific part of a path by selecting the area with a [mask](#) tool. For information on masking, see “[Working with masks](#)” on page 223.

### To repeat a saved brushstroke along a path

1 Click one of the following:

- Paint tool 
- Effect tool 
- Clone tool 
- Image sprayer tool 
- Eraser tool 
- Replace color brush tool 

2 On the property bar, set the attributes for the tool.

3 Click **Edit** ▶ **Repeat brushstroke**.

4 In the **Repeat stroke** dialog box, choose a stroke from the **Stroke** list box.

5 Modify any attributes.

6 Click the **Repeat stroke along path** button .



You can load a [path](#) for the brushstroke by clicking the flyout button above the **Stroke** list box, and clicking **Load path as stroke**. Choose the folder where the path file is stored and double-click the filename before modifying the attributes in the **Repeat stroke** dialog box.

## Working with clipping paths

Clipping [paths](#) let you create non-rectangular images by outlining the area selected by a path, and making the rest of the image transparent when the image is viewed in another application. For example, if you have a Corel PHOTO-PAINT image of a vase on a table, you can create a clipping path around the vase and export the vase image area to another application. If you do not use a clipping path, the entire image is encased in a square or rectangular frame, losing the shape of the vase area.

To send a clipping path to another application, you must export the contents of the path as an encapsulated PostScript (EPS) file.

### To create a clipping path

1 Create a [path](#) around an image area.

- 2 Click the flyout button in the **Path** docker, and click **Set as clipping path**.

If the **Path** docker is not open, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Path**.



A **clipping path** icon displays beside the path filename in the **Path** docker.

### To save a clipping path as an EPS file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Save as**.
- 2 Choose the folder where you want to save the clipping path.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Choose **Encapsulated PostScript** from the **Save as type** list box.
- 5 Click **Save**.  
The **EPS Export** dialog box opens.
- 6 In the **Clipping** area, enable the **Clip to** check box.
- 7 Enable the **Clipping path** option.
- 8 Type a value in the **Flatness** box.
- 9 Enable the **Crop image to clipping region** check box.



You can save an entire image with a **path** by disabling the **Crop image to clipping region** check box. However, only the selection inside the clipping path is printed on a PostScript printer.





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Managing multiple masks with alpha channels

You can use [alpha channels](#) to work with multiple [masks](#) in a single image. Since only one mask can be applied to an image at a time, storing masks in alpha channels lets you edit an image with one mask and then load another mask to edit the image further.

This section contains the following topics:

- [“Creating and editing alpha channels”](#) (page 257)
- [“Saving masks and alpha channels”](#) (page 258)
- [“Loading masks and alpha channels”](#) (page 259)
- [“Managing alpha channels”](#) (page 260)

### Creating and editing alpha channels

When you create a [mask](#) in the Corel PHOTO-PAINT application, it appears in a new [channel](#) as the current mask. Each new mask you create replaces the current mask. However, you can create [alpha channels](#) to store multiple masks in an image. You can create an alpha channel from the current mask to copy the current mask’s [editable](#) and [protected areas](#), or you can create a blank alpha channel. A blank alpha channel is uniformly opaque and, therefore, contains no editable areas.

You can edit the mask stored in an alpha channel by adding the current mask to an alpha channel. This adds the editable areas of the current mask to that alpha channel, thereby expanding the editable area in the alpha channel.

You can also edit the mask stored in an alpha channel in many of the same ways you edit a mask in the Paint on [mask mode](#). For information about editing a mask in the Paint on mask mode, see [“Adjusting the transparency of masks”](#) on page 240.



An alpha channel (1); an alpha channel displayed with the current mask (2); the mask is added to the alpha channel (3)

### To create an alpha channel from the current mask

- Click **Mask** ▶ **Save** ▶ **Save as channel**.



You can use this procedure to save the current [mask](#) to an [alpha channel](#) in the image.

### To create a blank alpha channel

- 1 Click the **New alpha channel** button  in the **Channels** docker.  
If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Channels** or **Image** ▶ **Channels**.
- 2 In the **Channel properties** dialog box, type a name for the [channel](#) in the **Name** box.
- 3 Click a color for the [mask overlay](#).
- 4 Type a value in the **Opacity** box to set the [opacity](#) of the overlay color.  
If you want to invert the mask overlay, enable the **Invert overlay** check box.
- 5 Enable one of the following options:
  - **Fill black** — lets you create an alpha channel that contains no [editable areas](#)
  - **Fill white**— lets you create an alpha channel that contains no [protected areas](#)

### To add the current mask to an alpha channel

- 1 In the **Channels** docker, click an [alpha channel](#).  
If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Channels** or **Image** ▶ **Channels**.
- 2 Click the **Save to current channel** button .

## Saving masks and alpha channels

Since only one [mask](#) can be active in an image, each new mask you create replaces the current mask. However, before you create a mask, you can save the current mask to an [alpha channel](#) in the image so that it can be reused. When you save an image to a file format that supports mask information, such as Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT) or TIFF, the current mask and all alpha channels are saved with the image.

You can also save the current mask or an alpha channel to disk as a separate file. Saving a mask or an alpha channel lets you use masks in other images. This is especially useful if you want to save an image to a file format that doesn't support mask information but you want to keep copies of the masks used to edit that image. A color mask can also be saved to disk as a separate file. For more information about color masks, see [“Defining editable areas by using color information”](#) on page 229.

### To save the current mask to an alpha channel in an image

- 1 Click **Mask** ▶ **Save** ▶ **Save as channel**.
- 2 Type the name of the new or existing [alpha channel](#) in the **Asbox**.

### To save a mask to disk

- 1 Click **Mask** ▶ **Save** ▶ **Save mask to disk**.
- 2 Choose the folder where you want to save the [mask](#).
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Choose a file type from the **Save as type** list box.
- 5 Click **Save**.

### To save an alpha channel to disk

- 1 In the **Channels** docker, click an [alpha channel](#).  
If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Channels** or **Image** ▶ **Channels**.
- 2 Click the **Flyout** button , and click **Save as**.
- 3 In the **Save an alpha channel to disk** dialog box, choose the folder where you want to save the alpha channel.
- 4 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 5 Choose a file type from the **Save as type** list box.
- 6 Click **Save**.

### To save a color mask to disk

- 1 Click **Mask** ▶ **Color mask**.
- 2 Create a color [mask](#).
- 3 Click the flyout button, and click **Save color mask**.
- 4 Choose the folder where you want to save the color mask.
- 5 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 6 Click **Save**.

## Loading masks and alpha channels

You can modify the current [mask](#) in an image by loading a mask saved to an [alpha channel](#).

When you load a mask saved to an alpha channel in the image, you can choose the [mask mode](#) that is used to apply the mask. Depending on the mask mode you choose, the saved mask either replaces the current mask or is combined with it.

You can also load a mask or a color mask from disk and replace the current mask. You can apply the mask over a specific image area or over the entire image.

When you load an alpha channel from disk, you can apply the mask saved in the alpha channel to the current image.

### To load a mask from an alpha channel

- 1 In the toolbox, click a [mask](#) tool.
- 2 In the **Channels** docker, choose an [alpha channel](#) from the **Channels** list.  
If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Channels** or **Image** ▶ **Channels**.
- 3 On the property bar, click one of the following buttons:

- Normal mode 
- Additive mode 
- Subtractive mode 
- Overlap mode 

4 Click **Mask** ▶ **Create** ▶ **Channel** to mask.

### To load a mask from disk

- 1 Click **Mask** ▶ **Load** ▶ **Load from disk**.
- 2 Click a filename.  
You can view a [thumbnail](#) of the [mask](#).
- 3 Click **Open**.
- 4 Drag in the image window to define the area to which you want to apply the mask.



You can apply the mask to the entire image by clicking in the image window. If the dimensions of the image in which the mask was created are different from the dimensions of the active image, the mask stretches or compresses to fit the active image.

### To load a color mask from disk

- 1 Click **Mask** ▶ **Color mask**.
- 2 Click the flyout button, and click **Open color mask**.
- 3 In the **Open** dialog box, choose the folder where the color [mask](#) is stored.
- 4 Double-click the filename.



If you load a color mask before you save the current color mask, the current color mask is lost.

### To load an alpha channel from disk

- 1 In the **Channels** docker, click the flyout button, and click **Open**.  
If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Channels** or **Image** ▶ **Channels**.
- 2 In the **Load an alpha channel from disk** dialog box, choose the folder where the [alpha channel](#) is stored.
- 3 Double-click the filename.



If you load a [mask](#) that was created in an image with different dimensions than those of the active image, the mask stretches or compresses to fit the entire active image; however, the mask's [aspect ratio](#) may change.

## Managing alpha channels

You can specify which [alpha channels](#) display and how they display. For example, you can display an alpha channel alone in the image window, or in combination with other alpha or [color channels](#). If you display one alpha channel, it is represented as a [grayscale](#) image. If you display an alpha channel with one or more color channels, the protected areas in the alpha channel are covered by a tinted mask [overlay](#) with varying degrees of [opacity](#). You can see the mask overlay only when you display the alpha channel with a color channel.

You can also delete alpha channels you no longer need to reduce the file size of the image. You can modify an alpha channel's properties. For example, you can change the name, the color and opacity of the mask overlay, and whether the mask overlay covers the [protected areas](#) or the [editable areas](#) of the mask.

### To display an alpha channel

- In the **Channels** docker, click the **Eye** icon beside an [alpha channel](#).

If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Channels** or **Image ▶ Channels**.



If you want to change the order of an alpha channel in the list, drag it to a new position.

### To delete an alpha channel

- 1 In the **Channels** docker, choose an [alpha channel](#) from the **Channels** list.  
If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Channels** or **Image ▶ Channels**.
- 2 Click the **Delete current channel** button .

### To change the properties of an alpha channel

- 1 In the **Channels** docker, choose an [alpha channel](#) from the **Channels** list.  
If the **Channels** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Channels** or **Image ▶ Channels**.
- 2 Click the flyout button, and click **Channel properties**.
- 3 In the **Channel properties** dialog box, change the properties you want.



# Painting and special effects

Drawing and painting.....265

Applying special effects..... 283





# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Drawing and painting

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you create images or modify existing ones by using a variety of shape and paint tools.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Drawing shapes and lines” (page 265)
- “Applying brushstrokes” (page 268)
- “Spraying images” (page 272)
- “Painting symmetrical patterns and orbits” (page 274)
- “Repeating brushstrokes” (page 276)
- “Creating custom brushes” (page 276)
- “Using a pressure-sensitive pen” (page 278)
- “Understanding merge modes” (page 280)

### Drawing shapes and lines

You can add shapes, such as squares, rectangles, circles, ellipses, and polygons, to images. You can also add rectangles and squares that have rounded, scalloped, or chamfered corners. By default, shapes are added to images as new [objects](#). Shapes can be outlined, filled, or [rendered](#) as separate, editable objects. For more information about objects, see “[Creating objects](#)” on [page 312](#).

You can also add lines to images. When you add lines, you can specify the width and [transparency](#), as well as the way line segments join together. The current foreground color determines the color of a line.

#### To draw a rectangle or square

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Rectangle** tool .
- 2 On the property bar, click one of the following buttons:
  - **Uniform fill** 
  - **Fountain fill** 
  - **Bitmap fill** 
  - **Texture fill** 
- 3 Choose a fill from the **Fill** picker.

If you want to edit the fill, click the **Edit fill** button  on the property bar.

4 Drag in the image window until the rectangle is the size you want.

If you want to draw a square, hold down **Ctrl** as you drag.

#### You can also

Disable the fill

Click the **No fill** button on the property bar.

Apply an outline

Type a value in the **Outline** box on the property bar to specify the outline width in pixels.

Change the color of an outline

Click the **Outline color** button  on the property bar.

Change the transparency

Type a value in the **Transparency** box in the property bar.



The current fill is displayed in the color control area of the toolbox. For information about fills, see “Filling images” on page 201.



You can use this procedure to create an **object** by clicking the **New object** button  on the property bar after you click the **Rectangle** tool.

### To draw a rectangle or square with round, scalloped, or chamfered corners

1 In the toolbox, click the **Rectangle** tool .

2 On the property bar, click one of the following options:

- **Round corner**  — produces a curved corner
- **Scalloped corner**  — replaces a corner with an edge that has a curved notch
- **Chamfered corner**  — replaces a corner with a flat edge

3 On the property bar, type a value in the **Corner size** box.

4 Drag in the image window until the rectangle is the size you want.

If you want to draw a square, hold down **Ctrl** as you drag.

### To draw an ellipse or circle

1 In the toolbox, click the **Ellipse** tool .

2 On the property bar, click one of the following buttons:

- **Uniform fill** 
- **Fountain fill** 
- **Bitmap fill** 
- **Texture fill** 

3 Choose a fill from the **Fill** picker.

If you want to edit the fill, click the **Edit fill** button  on the property bar.

4 Drag in the image window until the rectangle or ellipse is the size you want.

If you want to draw a circle, hold down **Ctrl** as you drag.

## You can also

Disable the fill

Click the **No fill** button on the property bar.

Apply an outline

Type a value in the **Outline** box on the property bar to specify the outline width in pixels.

Change the color of an outline

Click the **Outline color** button  on the property bar.

Change the transparency

Type a value in the **Transparency** box in the property bar.



The current fill is displayed in the color control area of the toolbox. For information about fills, see “Filling images” on page 201.



You can draw a circle with the **Ellipse** tool by holding down **Ctrl** as you drag.

You can use this procedure to create an [object](#) by clicking the **New object** button  on the property bar after you click the **Rectangle** or **Ellipse** tool.

## To draw a polygon

1 In the toolbox, click the **Polygon** tool .

2 On the property bar, click one of the following buttons:

- **Uniform fill** 
- **Fountain fill** 
- **Bitmap fill** 
- **Texture fill** 

3 Choose a fill from the **Fill** picker.

If you want to edit the **fill**, click the **Edit fill** button  on the property bar.

4 Click where you want to set the anchor points of the polygon, and double-click to set the last anchor point.

## You can also

Disable the fill

Click the **No fill** button  on the property bar.

Apply an outline to the polygon

Type a value in the **Outline** box on the property bar to specify the outline width in pixels.

Change the color of an outline

Click the **Outline color** button on the property bar.

Change the way outline segments join

Choose a join type from the **Shape joints** list box on the property bar.

Change the transparency

Type a value in the **Transparency** box on the property bar.



You can create 45-degree angles by holding down **Ctrl** while dragging the **Polygon** tool .

You can use this procedure to create an [object](#) by clicking the **New object** button  on the property bar after you click the **Polygon** tool.

## To draw a line

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Line** tool .
- 2 Type a value in the **Outline** box on the property bar.
- 3 Click the **Line color** button on the property bar, and choose a color.
- 4 On the property bar, click one of the following buttons:
  - **Mitered corners**  — creates pointed corners where line segments are joined
  - **Rounded corners**  — creates lines with rounded corners
  - **Beveled corners**  — creates lines with flattened corners
  - **Butted corners**  — creates lines with sharp, notched corners
- 5 Drag in the image window to draw a single line segment.

## You can also

Draw a line with multiple segments

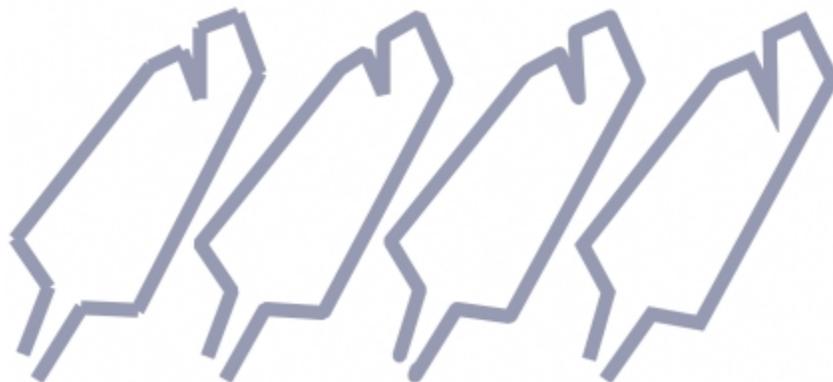
In the image window, click where you want to start and end each segment, and double-click to end the line.

Change the transparency

Type a value in the **Transparency** box on the property bar.



You can use this procedure to create an **object** by clicking the **New object** button  on the property bar after you click the **Line** tool .



*You can specify how lines join: Butted corners, Beveled corners, Rounded corners, or Mitered corners.*

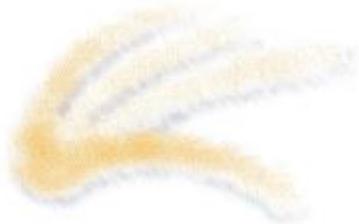
## Applying brushstrokes

Paint tools let you imitate a variety of painting and drawing media. For example, you can apply brushstrokes that imitate watercolors, pastels, felt markers, and pens. By default, brushstrokes are added to the **active object** or background. Brushstrokes can also be **rendered** as separate **objects**. For information about objects, see “[Creating objects](#)” on page 312.

## Preset brush type



*Airbrush*

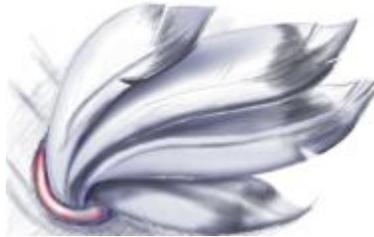


*Spray can*



*Camel hair brush*

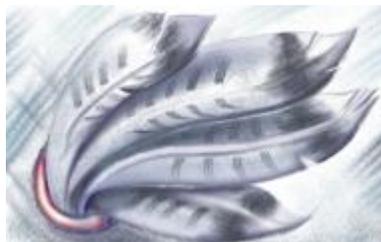
## Painting an image



*The Airbrush is used for shading.*



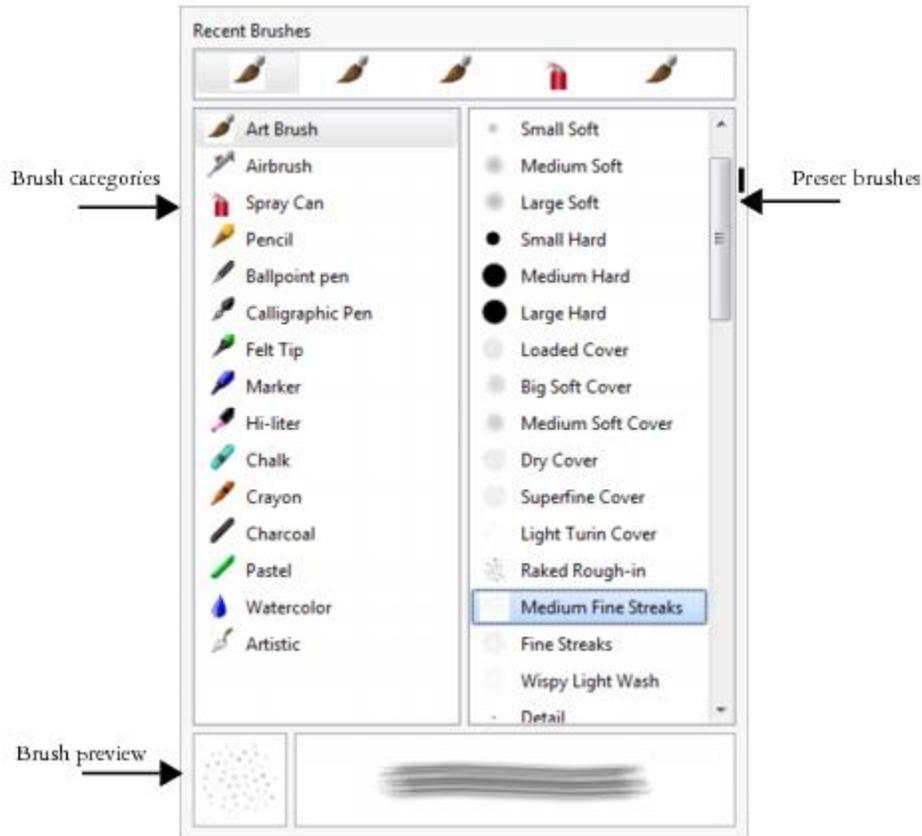
*Colors are splattered to add texture.*



*A decorative effect is added by using a Camel hair brush.*

## Choosing preset brushes

The paint tool and brush type that you choose determine the appearance of the brushstroke on the image. When you paint with a preset brush, the brush attributes of the paint tool are predetermined. You can choose a preset brush from the **Brush** picker, which displays all the brush categories and preset brushes. In addition, the **Brush** picker provides a nib and brushstroke preview and shows you the last five most recently used brushes.



The Brush picker lets you preview and choose preset brushes, which are organized in brush categories.

## Painting with color and fills

The color of the brushstroke is determined by the current foreground color, which is displayed in the color control area. You can choose a foreground color by clicking a color swatch on a color palette. For more information about choosing colors, see [“Working with color”](#) on page 159.

In addition to painting with color, you can apply images and textures by painting with a fill. You can also apply a brushstroke to a [path](#). For more information, see [“Applying brushstrokes to paths”](#) on page 253.

## Blending colors

[Merge modes](#) control the way the foreground colors blend with underlying colors. Merge modes let you combine these colors in various ways to create new colors and effects. For more information about merge modes, see [“Understanding merge modes”](#) on page 280.

## To paint with a preset brush

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 2 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose a brush category, and then choose a brush.  
To preview a brush, point to it.
- 3 In the color control area of the toolbox, double-click the **Foreground color swatch**, and choose a color.
- 4 Drag in the image window.

If you want to constrain the brush to a straight horizontal or vertical line, hold down **Ctrl** while you drag, and press **Shift** to change direction.

## You can also

Choose the default preset brush in a brush category

Change the brush shape

Change the brush size

Change the transparency

Change the feathering

Double-click a brush category.

Choose a brush shape from the **Nib shape** picker on the property bar.

Type a value in the **Nib size** box on the property bar.

Type a value in the **Transparency** box on the property bar.

To adjust the brushstroke transparency interactively, hold down **Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a transparency slider.

Type a value in the **Feather** box on the property bar.

To change the feathering interactively, hold down **Ctrl + Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a feathering slider.



The property bar provides options for changing the attributes of a preset brush. After you change an attribute, the brush name changes to **Custom art brush**. For more information about custom brushes, see [“Creating custom brushes” on page 276](#).



You can use this procedure to create an [object](#) by clicking **Object ▶ Create ▶ New object** before you drag in the image window. You can also choose a preset brush by clicking a brushstroke sample in the **Artistic media** docker. If the **Artistic media** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Artistic media**.

You can quickly choose a square or round brush shape by clicking the **Round nib** button  or the **Square nib** button  on the property bar.

## To paint with a color sample from an image

- 1 Click the **Eyedropper** tool .
- 2 Click a color in the image window.
- 3 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 4 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose the **Clone from fill** brush category, and then choose a brush.
- 5 Drag in the image window.

## To paint with a fill

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Fill** tool .
- 2 On the property bar, choose a **fill** type.
- 3 In the toolbox, click the **Clone** tool .
- 4 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose a brush category, and then choose a brush.
- 5 Drag in the image window.



You can paint with any type of fill. For information about fills, see [“Filling images” on page 201](#).

## To change the merge mode

- 1 In the toolbox, click a paint tool.
- 2 Choose a **merge mode** from the **Merge mode** list box on the property bar.



For more information on merge modes, see “Understanding merge modes” on page 280.

## Spraying images

You can paint with small-scale, full-color **bitmaps**, instead of a brush. For example, you can enhance landscapes by spraying clouds across the sky or foliage across the ground.

Corel PHOTO-PAINT includes a variety of images, which are used to create spraylists. You can load a preset spraylist, edit a preset, or create a spraylist by saving images in an image list. You can edit the source images at any time.

Corel Content provides an online collection of image lists that you can access and search. When you find an image list that you like, you can download it and use it.

For more information about accessing image lists, see “Accessing content” on page 88.



*In this example, butterflies have been sprayed around the rose.*

## To spray images

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Image sprayer** tool .
- 2 Choose a preset image list from the **Brush type** list box on the property bar.
- 3 Type a value in the **Size** box on the property bar.
- 4 Drag in the image window.

### You can also

Choose the sequence of images in the spraylist

Choose an option from the **Image sequence** list box on the property bar.

Change the transparency of the spraylist images

Type a value in the **Transparency** box on the property bar.

## You can also

Specify the number of images sprayed in each dab of the brush

Specify the distance between dabs along the length of a stroke

Specify the distance between dabs along the width of a brushstroke

Change the rate at which paint fades in a brushstroke

To adjust the brushstroke transparency interactively, hold down **Alt**, and click in the image window without releasing the mouse button to display a transparency slider.

Type a value in the **Images per dab** box on the property bar.

Type a value in the **Image spacing** box on the property bar.

Type a value in the **Spread** box on the property bar.

Type a value in the **Fade out** box on the property bar. Negative numbers fade in while positive numbers fade out.



The minimum and maximum numeric values for a box on the property bar can be displayed by right-clicking in the box to open the **Settings** dialog box.

## To load an image list

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Image sprayer** tool .
- 2 Click the **Browse** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Choose the folder where the image list is stored.
- 4 Click a filename.  
If you want to view a **thumbnail** of the image list, enable the **Preview** check box.
- 5 Click **Import**.

## To create a spraylist

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Image sprayer** tool .
- 2 Choose a preset image list from the **Brush type** list box on the property bar.
- 3 Click the **Create spraylist** button  on the property bar.
- 4 In the **Create spraylist** dialog box, specify the contents of the spraylist.

## To create an image list from an object

- 1 Using the **Object pick**  tool, select the **objects** you want to use as source images.
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Image sprayer** tool .
- 3 On the property bar, click the **Save as image list** button, and click **Save objects as image list**.
- 4 Choose the folder where you want to save the image list.
- 5 Type a filename in the **Filename** box.

## To create an image list from an image

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Image sprayer** tool .
- 2 On the property bar, click the **Save as image list** button, and click **Save document as image list**.
- 3 Type values in any of the following boxes:
  - **Images per row** — lets you specify the number of horizontal tiles in the image list

- **Images per column** — lets you specify the number of vertical tiles in the image list
- **Number of images** — lets you specify the number of images to include in the list

- 4 Click **OK**.
- 5 Choose the folder where you want to save the image list.
- 6 Type a filename in the **Filename** box.

### To edit a source image

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Image sprayer** tool .
- 2 In the **Brush settings** docker, click the flyout button , and click **Edit current image list**.

If the **Brush settings** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Brush settings**.

- 3 Edit the source image.

If you want to overwrite the last version of the image list, click **File** ▶ **Save as**, and click **Save** in the **Save an image to disk** dialog box.



After you edit an image list, you must reload it in the **Image sprayer** tool to activate the changes.

### To access and use an online image list

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Image sprayer** tool .
- 2 Click the **More image lists** button  on the property bar.

The **Corel Content - image lists** dialog box appears, displaying thumbnails of available image lists.

- 3 Click a thumbnail, and click **Download**.
- 4 Spray with the image list.

### You can also

Search for an image list

Type a search term in the **Search** box, and press **Enter**.

Display thumbnails of available image lists

Click the **Home** button .



Watermarked image lists cannot be downloaded. Content appears watermarked if you have not signed in or do not have the required membership. To sign in, click the **Sign in/Sign out** button in the upper-right corner of the dialog box. For information about memberships, see [“CorelDRAW memberships” on page 9](#).

## Painting symmetrical patterns and orbits

Corel PHOTO-PAINT gives you tools to create symmetrical and orbital patterns.

### Painting symmetrical patterns

You can paint symmetrical patterns on an image by using the radial or mirror brush symmetry mode. When you paint in radial mode, satellite brush nibs, called satellite points, create brushstrokes around a center point. When you paint in mirror mode, an identical brushstroke is created on the horizontal plane, the vertical plane, or both.

## Painting with orbits

You can create spiral effects by painting an image with orbits. Orbits are circular paths that rotate around a center point. Orbits let you paint spirals, pods, and rings. For example, you can draw a single spiral and adjust the size and closeness of the coils. You can also vary the size of the coils to create rounded segments called pods, or increase the number of orbits to create rings.

### To paint symmetrical patterns

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 2 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose a brush category, and then choose a brush.
- 3 Click **Window** ▶ **Toolbars** ▶ **Symmetry bar**.
- 4 On the **Symmetry** bar, click one of the following buttons:
  - **Radial symmetry**  — lets you add satellite points at intervals along the radius of a brush nib. Type a value in the **Radial points** box to specify the number of satellite points.
  - **Mirror symmetry**  — lets you create an identical stroke on the horizontal or vertical plane of an image. Click the **Horizontal mirror** button , the **Vertical mirror** button , or both.
- 5 Click the **Set symmetry center** button , and click the image to position the center point for the symmetry.
- 6 Drag in the image window.



Click the **No symmetry** button  on the **Symmetry** bar to disable the brush symmetry mode.

### To paint with orbits

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 2 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose a brush category, and then choose a brush.
- 3 Click the **Orbits** button  on the property bar.
- 4 Click the **Orbits** bar in the **Brush settings** docker.  
If the **Brush settings** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Brush settings**.
- 5 Type a value in any of the following boxes:
  - **Number of orbits** — lets you specify the number of orbits that are distributed around the center of a brushstroke. Use a value from 1 to 128. Use lower values for spirals and higher values for rings.
  - **Radius** — lets you specify the distance between the center of a brushstroke and the orbits. Use a value from 1 to 999. A smaller nib requires higher values.
  - **Rotation speed** — lets you specify the speed at which the orbits rotate around a brushstroke. Use a value from 0 to 100. Higher values result in closer coils.
  - **Grow speed** — lets you specify the speed at which the orbits move toward the center of a brushstroke. Use a value from 0 to 100. Higher values increase the frequency of the size variation.
  - **Grow amount** — lets you specify the distance that the orbits move when rotating toward the center of a brushstroke. Use a value from 0 to 100. Higher values increase the size variation and create pods.
- 6 Drag in the image window.



You can hide or display the point around which the orbits rotate clicking the **Include center** button  on the **Orbits** bar in the **Brush settings** docker.

## Repeating brushstrokes

You can save a brushstroke and then reapply it to the same image or other images. You can also repeat a brushstroke along the border of a [path](#) or [mask](#). For information about applying a brushstroke to a path, see [“Applying brushstrokes to paths” on page 253](#).

You can edit a saved brushstroke to create new effects by adjusting attributes such as the size, number, angle, and color of the brushstroke.

### To save a brushstroke

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 2 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose a brush category, and then choose a brush.
- 3 Click **Edit ▶ Repeat brushstroke**.
- 4 In the **Repeat stroke** dialog box, click the **Stroke** flyout arrow, and click **Add last tool stroke**.
- 5 Choose the folder where you want to save the brushstroke.
- 6 Type a filename in the **Filename** box.

### To apply a saved brushstroke

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 2 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose a brush category, and then choose a brush.
- 3 Click **Edit ▶ Repeat brushstroke**.  
If there are two menu items called **Repeat brushstroke**, click the second one.
- 4 Choose a brushstroke from the **Stroke** list box.
- 5 Click in the image window to apply the brushstroke.  
If you want to apply more than one brushstroke, continue clicking.

### To edit a saved brushstroke

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 2 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose a brush category, and then choose a brush.
- 3 Click **Edit ▶ Repeat brushstroke**.  
If there are two menu items called **Repeat brushstroke**, click the second one.
- 4 In the **Repeat stroke** dialog box, choose a saved brushstroke from the **Stroke** list box.
- 5 In the **Repeat stroke** dialog box, modify any attributes.
- 6 Click in the image window to apply the brushstroke.

## Creating custom brushes

You can create a custom brush by modifying brush attributes. Once you have created a custom brush, you can save it and use it again.

### Nib properties

The shape of a brush is determined by the brush nib. The preset nib shapes can be modified or a nib can be created from an [editable area](#) and saved. The nib attributes you can adjust are

- **Transparency** — lets you specify the [transparency](#) level for the nib
- **Rotate** — lets you specify the angle at which the nib is rotated

- **Flatten** — lets you specify the amount by which the nib is flattened along one dimension
- **Soft Edge** — lets you specify the transparency and width of the edges of the nib

### Stroke attributes

The stroke attributes you can modify are

- **Smoothing** — lets you specify a value for the smoothing of the stroke when the mouse moves fast. A higher value results in a rounder curve.
- **Fade out** — lets you specify the **intensity** of the fade-out effect for the brushstroke. A higher value results in a shorter brushstroke, i.e., the brushstroke runs out of paint faster. A negative value results in a fade-in effect.

### Dab attributes

The dab attributes you can adjust are

- **Number of dabs** — lets you specify the number of dabs in a brushstroke
- **Spacing** — lets you specify the amount of space between dabs along the length of the brushstroke. A value of 1 produces a solid line. A higher value separates the dabs in the brushstroke.
- **Spread** — lets you specify the distance between dabs along the width of the brushstroke. A higher value results in a thicker brushstroke.
- **Hue** — lets you specify the **hue** variation in the brushstroke
- **Saturation** — lets you specify the **saturation** variation in the brushstroke
- **Lightness** — lets you specify the lightness variation in the brushstroke

### Brush texture

Loading a preset brush texture gives you additional design options. The texture attributes you can adjust are

- **Brush Texture** — lets you specify how much of the texture is applied to the brushstroke
- **Edge texture** — lets you specify how much of the texture is applied to the edges of the brushstroke. The **Edge Texture** box is available only if the nib has a soft edge.
- **Bleed** — lets you specify the extent to which brushstrokes become diluted throughout the stroke. If a **Sustain Color** value is specified, traces of the paint remain throughout the brushstroke.
- **Sustain color** — lets you specify the extent to which traces of the paint color appear in a brushstroke with a specified bleed value

### Color variation

The color attributes you can modify are

- **Hue range** — lets you specify the amount of **hue** variation in the brushstroke
- **Hue speed** — lets you specify how fast the hue value changes
- **Saturation range** — lets you specify the amount of **saturation** variation in the brushstroke
- **Saturation speed** — lets you specify how fast the saturation value changes
- **Lightness range** — lets you specify the amount of lightness variation in the brushstroke
- **Lightness speed** — lets you specify how fast the lightness value changes

### To create a custom brush

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 2 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose a brush category, and then choose a brush.
- 3 Choose a preset brush in the **Brush type** list box on the property bar.
- 4 In the **Brush settings** docker, move the **Size** slider.  
If the **Brush settings** docker is not open, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Brush settings**.
- 5 In the **Brush settings** docker, click the roll-down arrow on any of the following bars, and specify values for any attributes:
  - **Nib properties**
  - **Stroke attributes**
  - **Dab attributes**

- Brush texture
- Color variation

You can also

Add a custom nib to the Nib shape picker

Click the **Nib options** button  on the **Nib properties** bar, and click **Add current nib**.

Save a custom brush

Click the flyout arrow  on the **Brush settings** docker, and click **Save brush**. In the **Save brush** dialog box, type a filename.

### To create a brush nib from an editable area

- 1 Define an [editable area](#).
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 3 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose a brush category, and then choose a brush.
- 4 In the **Brush settings** docker, click the **Nib options** button  on the **Nib properties** bar.  
If the **Brush settings** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Brush settings**.
- 5 Click **Create from contents of mask**.
- 6 Type a value in the **Nib size** box.

### To load a preset brush texture

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 2 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose a brush category, and then choose a brush.
- 3 In the **Brush settings** docker, click the **Load texture** button  on the **Brush texture** bar.  
If the **Brush settings** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Brush settings**.
- 4 Choose the folder where the texture file is stored.
- 5 Double-click the filename.
- 6 In the **Brush settings** docker, click the roll-down arrow on the **Brush texture** bar, and type a value from 0 to 100 in any of the following boxes:
  - **Brush texture** — lets you adjust the amount of texture applied to a brushstroke
  - **Edge texture** — lets you adjust the amount of texture applied to the edge of a brushstroke

## Using a pressure-sensitive pen

Corel PHOTO-PAINT provides settings that let you control brushstrokes when you use a [pressure-sensitive pen](#), or [stylus](#). The pressure applied with the pen on a pen tablet determines the size, [opacity](#), and other attributes of the brushstroke.

Corel PHOTO-PAINT automatically configures pen tablets. You can manually configure older pen tablets.

You can assign a different tool to each pressure-sensitive pen and eraser available with the pen tablet. You can also set the pen attributes. Some pressure-sensitive pen attributes are set in percentages; others are set in angles; size is set in [pixels](#). Positive values increase a brush tool attribute as you add pressure to the pen, resulting in a more pronounced effect. Negative values make a brush tool attribute less pronounced as you add pressure.

The pressure-sensitive pen attributes can be saved for future use when you save a custom brush. For more information about custom brushes, see [“Creating custom brushes” on page 276](#).

When using various brush tools, such as the **Paint** tool, **Touch-up** brush tool, and **Liquid** tools, you can enable or disable the pressure of your digital pen.

### To configure a pen tablet

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **General**.
- 3 In the **Pen tablet** area, click the **Configure** button.
- 4 Using a full range of pressure, apply five strokes.



Corel PHOTO-PAINT automatically configures many **pressure-sensitive pens**. If your pressure-sensitive pen has been configured automatically, the **Configure** button appears grayed.

### To assign a tool to a pressure-sensitive pen

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **General**.
- 3 In the **Pen tablet** area, enable the **Save last used tool for each stylus** check box.
- 4 Click **OK**.
- 5 Click a paint tool with the **pressure-sensitive pen**.

### To assign a tool to the eraser of a pressure-sensitive pen

- 1 In the **Brush settings** docker, click the **Eraser options** button  on the **Pen settings** bar.  
If the **Brush settings** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Brush settings**.
- 2 Click a tool.

### To set the attributes of a pressure-sensitive pen

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 2 Open the **Brush** picker on the property bar, choose a brush category, and then choose a brush.
- 3 In the **Brush settings** docker, click the flyout arrow on the **Pen settings** bar.  
If the **Brush settings** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Brush settings**.
- 4 Type values in any of the following boxes:
  - **Pressure range** — lets you specify the pressure. Use a value from -999 to 999.
  - **Opacity** — lets you adjust the **transparency** of the brushstroke. Positive or negative values have no impact if the transparency of the tool is set to 0 or is already set to the maximum. Use a value from -99 to 100.
  - **Soft edge** — lets you specify the width of the transparent edge along a brushstroke. Use a value from -99 to 100.
  - **Hue** — lets you shift the hue of the paint color around the Color Wheel up to the specified degree
  - **Saturation** — represents the maximum variation in the **saturation** of the paint color. Use a value from -100 to 100.
  - **Lightness** — represents the maximum variation of lightness of the paint color. Use a value from -100 to 100.
  - **Texture** — lets you specify the amount of texture visible for the current paint tool. Use a value from -100 to 100.
  - **Bleed** — lets you specify how quickly a brushstroke runs out of paint. Use a value from -100 to 100.
  - **Sustain color** — works in conjunction with the **bleed** value to adjust the traces of paint that remain throughout the brushstroke. Use a value from -100 to 100.
  - **Elongation** — represents the amount of tilt and rotation of the pen. Use a value from 0 to 999.
- 5 Drag the pen, varying the amount of pressure you apply to the tablet, to test the attributes.



To vary the shape of artistic nibs which do not support pressure-sensitive sizing, use variants of circular and rectangular nibs.

### To enable or disable pen pressure

- 1 In the toolbox, click a brush tool.
- 2 Click the Pen pressure button  on the property bar.

## Understanding merge modes

On computers, colors have numeric values, and **merge modes** let you perform mathematical calculations with these color values. Merge modes combine a source and a base color in an image to produce a new color or effect, called a result color. In some programs, merge modes are also known as blending modes.

For paint tools, merge modes alter the way brushstrokes combine with an image. For **objects**, merge modes alter the way the colors of an object combine with the background behind the object or with underlying objects.

### Merge mode



**Normal** replaces the base color with the source color. This is the default merge mode.



**Add** adds the values of the source and base colors.



**Subtract** adds the values of the source and base colors and subtracts 255 from the result. Because this merge mode treats the color channels as subtractive, the result color is never lighter than the base color. For example, painting blue on white yields blue, and painting blue on black yields black.



**Difference** subtracts the source color value from the base color value and applies the absolute value of the result. If the value of the current source color is 0, the base color does not change.



**Multiply** multiplies the values of the source and base colors and divides the result by 255. Unless you paint on white, the final result is always darker than the original base color. Multiplying black with any color produces black. Multiplying white with any color leaves the color unchanged.



**Divide** divides the base color value by the source color value, and ensures that the result is less than or equal to 255.



**If lighter** replaces the base color with the source color when the source color is lighter than the base color.



**If darker** applies the source color to the base color when the source color is darker than the base color.

## Merge mode



**Texturize** converts the source color to grayscale and multiplies the grayscale value by the base color value.

**Color** uses the hue and saturation values of the source color and the lightness value of the base color to create a result. This merge mode is the opposite of the **Lightness** merge mode.

**Hue** uses the hue value of the source color and the saturation and lightness values of the base color to create a result color.

**Saturation** uses the saturation value of the source color and the lightness and hue values of the base color to create a result color.

**Lightness** uses the lightness value of the source color and the hue and saturation values of the base color to create a result color. This merge mode is the opposite of the **Color** merge mode.

**Invert** creates a result color using the complementary color to the source color. This merge mode inverts the value of the current source color and applies the inverted value to the base color. If the value of the source color is 127, the color does not change, because this value lies in the center of the color wheel.

**Logical AND** applies the Boolean algebraic formula "AND" to the source and base color values.

**Logical OR** applies the Boolean algebraic formula "OR" to the source and base color values.

**Logical XOR** applies the Boolean algebraic formula "XOR", or exclude, to the source and base color values.

**Behind** applies the source color to those areas of the image that are transparent. The effect is similar to looking through the clear, silver-free areas on a 35-mm negative.

**Screen** inverts the source and base color values, multiplies them, and then inverts the result. The result color is always lighter than the base color.

**Overlay** multiplies or screens the source color according to the value of the base color.

**Soft light** applies a soft, diffused light to the base color.

**Hard light** applies a hard, direct spotlight to the base color.

## Merge mode



**Color dodge** simulates the photographic technique called dodging, which lightens image areas by decreasing the exposure.

**Color burn** simulates the photographic technique called burning, which darkens image areas by increasing the exposure.

**Red** applies the source color to the red channel of an RGB image. This merge mode is available only when the active image is an RGB image.

**Green** applies the source color to the green channel of an RGB image. This merge mode is available only when the active image is an RGB image.

**Blue** applies the source color to the blue channel of an RGB image. This merge mode is available only when the active image is an RGB image.

**Cyan** applies the source color to the cyan channel of a CMYK image. This merge mode is available only when the active image is a CMYK image.

**Magenta** applies the source color to the magenta channel of a CMYK image. This merge mode is available only when the active image is a CMYK image.

**Yellow** applies the source color to the yellow channel of a CMYK image. This merge mode is available only when the active image is a CMYK image.

**Black** applies the source color to the black channel of a CMYK image. This merge mode is available only when the active image is a CMYK image.

In addition, the **Pass through** merge mode is available for grouped objects. The **Pass through** merge mode allows the merge modes of individual objects within a group to affect how their colors blend with underlying objects. For more information, see [“Choosing a merge mode for grouped objects”](#) on page 324.



# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Applying special effects

Corel PHOTO-PAINT provides special-effects [filters](#) that let you apply a wide range of transformations to images. For example, you can transform images to simulate drawings, paintings, etchings, or abstract art.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Working with special effects” (page 283)
- “Applying preset styles” (page 285)
- “Applying color and tone effects” (page 285)
- “Special effects categories” (page 286)
- “Applying Bevel effects” (page 293)
- “Applying the Bokeh Blur effect” (page 293)
- “Applying Lens Flare effects” (page 295)
- “Applying Lighting effects” (page 295)
- “Adding photo frames” (page 296)
- “Gallery of special effects” (page 297)
- “Managing plug-ins” (page 306)

### Working with special effects

Corel PHOTO-PAINT special effects let you change the appearance of an image. You can apply a special effect to the entire image, or you can use a [mask](#) or a [lens](#) to transform only part of an image.

#### Applying special effects

The following are all the categories of special effects available, each of which includes several different effects. For more information, see “[Special effects categories](#)” on page 286.

- |               |                   |           |
|---------------|-------------------|-----------|
| • 3-D effects | • Color transform | • Distort |
| • Art strokes | • Contour         | • Noise   |
| • Blur        | • Creative        | • Texture |
| • Camera      | • Custom          |           |

When you apply a special effect, you can adjust its settings to control how the effect transforms an image. For example, when you use a vignette effect to frame an image, you can increase the offset value and decrease the fade value to decrease the size and [opacity](#) of the

frame. With a watercolor effect, you can decrease the size of the brush to show more image detail or increase the size of the brush for an abstract effect.

### Applying special effects to part of an image

You can apply special effects to part of an image by defining an [editable area](#). For information about editable areas, see “[Working with masks](#)” on page 223.

You can also use a lens to apply a special effect to part of an image. The following special effects are also preset lens types:

- Jaggy despeckle
- Smooth
- Soften
- Psychedelic
- Sharpen
- Scatter
- Pixelate
- Add noise
- Remove noise
- Invert
- Posterize
- Threshold
- Solarize

When you use a lens, changes are not applied to the image; instead, they are seen on the screen through the lens. For information about lenses, see “[Working with lenses](#)” on page 147.

### Repeating and fading special effects

You can repeat a special effect to intensify its result. You can also fade an effect to diminish its [intensity](#), and you can define how the effect is [merged](#) with the image. For information about repeating and fading a special effect that you’ve applied, see “[Undoing, redoing, repeating, and fading actions](#)” on page 75. For information about merge modes, see “[Understanding merge modes](#)” on page 280.

### To apply a special effect

- 1 Click **Effects**, choose a special effect category, and click an effect.
- 2 Adjust the settings of the special effect [filter](#).



If the image contains one or more [objects](#), the special effect is applied only to the background or the selected object.



When you preview the special effect in the image window, you can press and hold **F2** to hide the special effect dialog box.

Some special effects can affect the shape of the object they are applied to. You can retain an outline of the object’s original shape by enabling the **Lock object transparency** button  on the **Object manager** docker. The areas that remain between the outline of the original shape and the new shape of the object are filled with black. If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Object manager**.

### To apply a special effect to an editable area

- 1 Define an [editable area](#).
- 2 Click **Effects**, choose a special effect category, and click an effect.
- 3 Adjust the settings in the dialog box.

### To repeat a special effect

- Click **Effects** ▶ **Repeat**, and click one of the following:
  - **Repeat [last effect]** — applies the last applied effect
  - **[Last effect] to all visible** — applies the last applied effect to all visible elements in an image
  - **[Last effect] to all selected** — applies the last applied effect to all selected [objects](#) in an image

## Applying preset styles

Some special effects include preset styles. You can apply different preset styles and modify their settings to get the effect you want. When you are satisfied with an effect, you can save the customized settings as a preset style to apply it to other images. When you no longer need a preset style, you can delete it.

The following special effects include preset styles:

- The Boss
- Lens flare
- Lighting effects
- Spot filter
- Glass
- Frame
- Alchemy
- Bump map
- Mesh warp
- Whirlpool
- Bevel effects

### To apply a preset style

- 1 Click **Effects**, choose a special effect category, and click an effect that includes preset styles.
- 2 Choose a preset style from the **Style** or **Presets** list box.

### To create a custom preset style

- 1 Click **Effects**, choose a special effect category, and click an effect that includes preset styles.  
If you want to base the custom preset style on an existing preset style, choose a preset style from the **Style** or **Presets** list box.
- 2 Adjust the settings of the special effect.
- 3 Click the **Add preset** button .
- 4 Type a name in the dialog box.

### To delete a custom preset style

- 1 Click **Effects**, choose a special effect category, and click an effect that includes preset styles.
- 2 Choose a preset style from the **Style** or **Presets** list box.
- 3 Click the **Delete preset** button .



You cannot delete the default or the last-used preset style.

## Applying color and tone effects

You can transform the color and tone of an image to produce a special effect. For example, you can create an image that looks like a photographic negative or flatten the appearance of an image.

### To apply color and tone effects

- Click **Image** ► **Transform**, and click one of the following effects:
  - **Invert** — lets you reverse the colors of an image. Inverting an image creates the appearance of a photographic negative.
  - **Posterize** — lets you reduce the number of tonal values in an image to remove gradations and create larger areas of flat color
  - **Threshold** — lets you specify a **brightness** value as a **threshold**. **Pixels** with a brightness value higher or lower than the threshold appear as white or black, depending on the threshold option you specify.

If a dialog box appears, adjust the effect settings.



The **Deinterlace** effect is a transformation effect that lets you remove lines from images. For information about the **Deinterlace** effect, see [“Improving scanned images” on page 119](#).

## Special effects categories

The following are all the categories of special effects available, each of which includes several different effects that you can apply.

- [“3-D special effects” \(page 286\)](#)
- [“Art strokes special effects” \(page 287\)](#)
- [“Blur special effects” \(page 287\)](#)
- [“Camera special effects” \(page 288\)](#)
- [“Color transform special effects” \(page 289\)](#)
- [“Contour special effects” \(page 290\)](#)
- [“Creative special effects” \(page 290\)](#)
- [“Custom special effects” \(page 291\)](#)
- [“Distort special effects” \(page 291\)](#)
- [“Noise special effects” \(page 292\)](#)
- [“Texture special effects” \(page 292\)](#)

For information about the Sharpen special effects, see [“Sharpening images” on page 125](#). For information about the Remove moiré and Remove noise effects, see [“Improving scanned images” on page 119](#).

For information about applying special effects, see [“To apply a special effect” on page 284](#).

## 3-D special effects

You can apply three-dimensional special effects to an image to create the illusion of depth. For sample images, see [“3-D effects” on page 297](#).

The three-dimensional special effects are

- **3-D rotate**— lets you rotate an image by adjusting an interactive, three-dimensional model
- **Bevel effect**— lets you create the appearance of a raised surface by applying a sloped edge along an [editable area](#). For more information, see [“Applying Bevel effects” on page 293](#).
- **Cylinder**— shapes an image into a cylinder
- **Emboss**— transforms an image into a relief, with details appearing as ridges and crevices on a flat surface. You can choose the embossing color or depth, as well as the direction of the light source.
- **Glass**— places a three-dimensional, glass-like surface over an editable area. You can specify the width of the bevel, the area that is slanted to produce the three-dimensional look, the sharpness of the bevel's edges, and the angle at which the light is bent at the edges. You can also specify the [brightness](#), direction, and angle of the light that strikes the bevel. The Glass effect lets you apply preset styles and create custom preset styles.
- **Page curl**— makes one of the corners of an image roll in on itself. You can specify a corner and set the curl orientation, [transparency](#), and size. You can also choose a color for the curl and the background that is exposed where the image curls away from the paper.
- **Perspective**— gives an image three-dimensional depth, as if the image recedes into the distance. You can also skew an image into different shapes.
- **Pinch/punch**— warps an image by pinching it toward you or punching it away from you. You can position the effect by setting a center point.
- **Sphere**— wraps an image around the inside or outside of a sphere. You can set a center point around which an image wraps, and you can control the wrapping. Positive values expand the central [pixels](#) toward the edges of an image resulting in a convex shape. Negative values compress pixels toward the center of an image resulting in a concave shape.

- **The Boss**— raises the area of the image that falls along the edges of a [mask](#). You can specify the width, height, and smoothness of the raised edge, as well as the brightness, sharpness, direction, and angle of the light sources. **The Boss** effect lets you apply preset styles and create custom preset styles.
- **Zig zag**— creates waves of straight lines and angles that twist an image outward from an adjustable center point. You can choose the type of waves and specify their number and strength.

## Art strokes special effects

The art strokes special effects give images a hand-painted look. You can use these effects to make images look like pastel drawings, sponge paintings, and watercolors, or to create textured backgrounds. For sample images, see [“Art strokes” on page 298](#).

The art strokes special effects are

- **Charcoal**— makes an image look like a black-and-white charcoal drawing
- **Conte crayon**— simulates textures produced with a conté crayon. You can select multiple crayon colors and set the crayon pressure and the granularity of the texture.
- **Crayon**— makes an image look like a wax crayon drawing. You can specify the crayon pressure and create dark outlines around elements in the image.
- **Cubist**— groups similarly colored [pixels](#) into squares to produce an image that resembles a cubist painting. You can specify the square size, the amount of light, and the paper color.
- **Dabble**— makes image pixels look like dabs of paint. You can choose from a variety of brushstrokes and specify the brushstroke size.
- **Impressionist**— makes an image look like an impressionist painting. You can customize the dabs of color or the brushstrokes and specify the amount of light in the image.
- **Palette knife**— creates the impression that an image was created by spreading paint on a canvas with a palette knife. You can specify the amount of smudging and the size and direction of the brushstrokes.
- **Pastels**— makes an image look like a pastel drawing. You can specify the size and color variation of the brushstrokes.
- **Pen and ink**— makes an image look like a pen-and-ink drawing created with a cross-hatching or stipple technique
- **Pointillist**— analyzes the main colors of an image and converts them to small dots. You can specify the size of the dots and the amount of light in the image.
- **Scraperboard**— scrapes away a black surface to reveal white or another color, making an image look like a sketchy drawing. You can specify the density of the paint and the brushstroke size.
- **Sketch pad**— makes an image look like a pencil sketch
- **Watercolor**— makes an image look like a watercolor painting. You can specify the brush size, granulation level, and image brightness. You can also specify the intensity of the colors and determine the degree to which the colors blend.
- **Water marker**— makes an image look like an abstract sketch created with color markers. You can change the brushstrokes by selecting different modes. You can also specify the size and color variation of the brushstrokes.
- **Wave paper**— makes an image look like a painting created on textured wave paper. You can create a black-and-white painting, or you can preserve the original color of the image.

## Blur special effects

The blur special effects change the [pixels](#) of an image to soften them, smooth their edges, blend them, or create motion effects. For sample images, see [“Blur” on page 299](#).

The blur special effects are

- **Tune blur**— lets you apply any of four blurring effects, which are represented by [thumbnails](#), to an image. You can adjust the blur effect and preview the image with softer or sharper focus while you are editing it. The **Tune blur** filter lets you improve image quality or create exciting visual effects.
- **Directional smooth**— smooths the regions of gradual change in an image while preserving edge detail and texture. You can use this filter to subtly blur the edges and surfaces of images without distorting the focus.
- **Gaussian blur**— produces a hazy effect, blurring the focus of an image according to Gaussian distribution, which spreads the pixel information outward using bell-shaped curves
- **Jaggy despeckle**— scatters colors in an image, creating a soft, blurred effect with minimal distortion. It is most effective for removing the jagged edges that can appear in line art or high-contrast images. The **Jaggy despeckle** effect is also a preset lens type.
- **Low pass**— removes sharp edges and detail from an image, leaving smooth gradients and low-frequency areas. The higher the settings you specify, the more image detail is erased.

- **Motion blur**— creates the illusion of movement in an image. You can specify the direction of movement.
- **Radial blur**— creates a blurring effect in an image that spins around or radiates outward from a center point that you specify
- **Bokeh blur** — lets you control the amount of blur applied to the outside of an editable area and adjust the transition between the area in focus and the blurred area. For more information, see [“Applying the Bokeh Blur effect” on page 293](#).
- **Smooth**— mutes the differences between adjacent pixels to smooth an image without losing detail. It is especially useful for removing the **dithering** that is created when you convert an image from the **paletted** mode to the **RGB** mode. The **Smooth** effect produces a more pronounced effect than the **Soften** effect. The **Smooth** effect is also a preset **lens** type.
- **Soften**— smooths and tones down the harsh edges in an image without losing important image detail. The difference between the **Smooth** and **Soften** effects is subtle but is often apparent when images are viewed at high **resolution**. The **Soften** effect is also a preset lens type.
- **Zoom**— blurs image pixels outward from a center point. The pixels closest to the center point are the least blurry.
- **Smart blur**— blurs an image but retains the edge detail. This effect is useful if you want to retain the sharp lines and edges, such as the ones that form the letters in text, when you export an image to a file format that would normally reduce the amount of detail. This effect is ideal for removing noise and artifacts from JPEG images.

## Camera special effects

The Camera special effects let you simulate the effect produced by photographic **filters**, such as spot filters and diffusion filters. You can also add lighting effects, such as sun flares or spot lights. For sample images, see [“Camera” on page 300](#).

The camera special effects are

- **Colorize** — lets you replace all colors in an image with a single color (or hue) to create a duotone image. You can then adjust the saturation or vividness of the color. A color with 100% saturation contains no white. A color with 0% saturation corresponds to a shade of gray. With this effect, you can create various single-color images. For example, a brownish hue can create a sepia effect, simulating the color of old photographs.
- **Diffuse**— softens images by distributing image **pixels** to fill in blank spaces and remove **noise**. The result simulates the soft focus of a photographer's diffusion filter. You can make this effect smooth or blurry.
- **Photo filter**— lets you simulate the effect of placing a colored filter in front of a camera lens. You can choose the color of the filter and then adjust the color density and luminosity.
- **Lens flare**— produces rings of light on an **RGB** image, simulating the flare that appears on a photograph when the camera is aimed towards a direct, bright light. For more information, see [“Applying Lens Flare effects” on page 295](#).
- **Lighting effects**— lets you add light sources to an **RGB** or **grayscale** image to create the illusion of spotlights, floodlights, or sunlight. You can also apply a texture to create embossed reliefs. You can use a preset light or texture style, or customize a preset style and save it in the preset list. For more information, see [“Applying Lighting effects” on page 295](#).
- **Sepia toning** — simulates the look created when you take a photo with sepia film. Sepia-toned images are similar to black-and-white photos (also known as grayscale photos), except the tones are brown instead of gray.
- **Spot filter**— lets you control the focus area in an image and de-emphasize the surrounding area by applying a Gaussian blur to imitate a photographer's use of depth of field. You can set the position and **radius** of the area in focus, control the edges and degree of the blur, and decrease light in the surrounding areas. You can use a preset style or customize a preset style and save it in the preset list.
- **Time machine** — lets you walk your image back through history to recreate some popular photographic styles from the past. You can choose from seven styles, which range from the year 1839 to the 1960s.



*The Time machine effect recreates photographic styles from the past.*

## Camera effects



*Original*



*Colorize*



*Sepia toning*



*Time machine*

## Color transform special effects

The color transform special effects let you create dramatic effects by changing the color of an image. For sample images, see “[Color transform](#)” on page 301.

The color transform special effects are

- **Bit planes**— reduces an image to basic **RGB** color components and displays tonal changes using solid colors. You can adjust the tonal values of each color component individually or as a group.
- **Halftone**— gives an image the appearance of a color **halftone**. A color halftone is an image that has been converted from a continuous tone image to a series of dots of various sizes that represent different tones. You can specify the size of the biggest dot and vary the color pattern.
- **Psychedelic**— changes the colors in an image to bright, electric colors, such as orange, hot pink, cyan, and lime green. The **Psychedelic** effect is also a preset **lens** type.
- **Solarize**— transforms colors in an image by reversing image tones. The **Solarize** effect is also a preset lens type.

## Contour special effects

The contour special effects detect and accentuate the edges of **objects**, items, and **editable areas** in an image. You can adjust the level of edge detection, the type of edges that are detected, as well as the color of the edges that are detected. For sample images, see [“Contour” on page 301](#).

The contour special effects are

- **Edge detect**— detects the edges in an image and converts them to lines on a single-color background. You can customize this effect by specifying the intensity of the outline and the background color.
- **Find edges**— locates edges in an image and lets you convert these edges to soft or solid lines. When you convert edges to soft lines you create a smooth blurred outline. Converting edges to solid lines creates a sharper outline. The **Find edges** filter is particularly useful for high-contrast images, such as images that contain text.
- **Trace contour**— highlights the edges of image elements using a 16-color palette. Trace contour lets you specify which edge **pixels** are highlighted.

## Creative special effects

The creative special effects use a variety of shapes and textures to transform an image into abstract art. They use craft items, crystals, fabric, glass, game pieces, frames, whirlpools, or raindrops as the foundation for creating something new. For sample images, see [“Creative” on page 302](#).

The creative special effects are

- **Crafts**— makes an image look as though it was created with craft shapes, such as puzzle pieces, gears, marbles, candy, ceramic tile, and poker chips. You can specify the size and angle of the shapes, as well as the **brightness** of the effect.
- **Crystalize**— makes an image look as though it was created with crystals. You can control the effect by specifying the dimensions of the crystals. Lower values produce smaller crystals, causing less distortion. Higher values produce larger crystals and create a more abstract effect.
- **Fabric**— makes an image look as though it was created with textiles, such as needlepoint, rug hooking, quilts, strings, ribbons, and tissue collage. You can specify the size and angle of the textile, as well as the brightness.
- **Frame**— lets you frame an image with a preset frame, another image, or an area defined by a **mask**. You can change the color, **opacity**, and alignment of a frame, and you can save customized settings as preset styles.
- **Glass block**— makes an image look as though it is being viewed through thick glass blocks. You can control the effect by specifying the dimensions of the glass blocks.
- **Kid's play**— makes an image look as though it was created with light pegs, building blocks, finger paint, or paint-by-numbers. You can specify the size and angle of the elements, as well as the brightness of the effect.
- **Mosaic**— breaks an image into unequal elliptical pieces to form the appearance of a mosaic. You can specify the size of the pieces and the background color. You can also frame the mosaic.
- **Particles**— lets you add sparkle to an image by using white or colored bubbles and star particles. You can specify the size, number, and transparency of the particles, as well as the amount of color they contain.
- **Scatter**— distorts an image by scattering pixels. You can specify the direction of the scattering. The **Scatter** effect is also a preset lens type.
- **Smoked glass**— applies a transparent colored tint to images. You can specify the color of the smoked glass, the opacity of the tint, and the amount of blurring.
- **Stained glass**— transforms images into stained-glass artwork. You can adjust the size of the glass pieces and create solder between them.

- **Vignette**— lets you add an elliptical, circular, rectangular, or square frame around an image. You can specify the color and fade rate of the effect.
- **Vortex**— produces a swirl around a center point that you specify in an image. You can specify the direction of the swirl's inner and outer pixels.
- **Weather**— lets you apply snow, rain, and fog effects to an image. You can specify the effect's intensity and the size of the elements.

## Custom special effects

The custom special effects offer you a wide range of effects to transform an image. You can create an artistic media painting, overlay an image with a customized image, or use a variety of blur, sharpen, and edge detect effects.

The custom special effects are

- **Alchemy**— transforms images into artistic media paintings by applying brushstrokes to images. You can create a brush and specify color, size, angle, and **transparency** settings. You can also choose from a variety of preset brushes, and save customized brushes.
- **Band pass**— adjusts the sharp and smooth areas on images. Sharp areas are areas where abrupt changes take place (for example, colors, edges, noise). Smooth areas are areas where gradual changes take place.
- **Bump map**— adds texture and patterns to an image by embedding its surface with a relief based on the **pixel** values of a bump map image. The pixel values of the bump map image represent surface elevation. You can use a preset bump map or load a custom bump map image. You can specify the surface and lighting properties of the effect.
- **User defined**— lets you create blur, sharpen, or edge detect special effects by defining a new color value for each pixel based on the color values of adjacent pixels. You define the value of the selected pixel numerically, by typing values in a grid. The central box in the grid represents the selected pixel, and the boxes around it represent the adjacent pixels. The number you type in the central box of the grid is multiplied by the original color value of the selected pixel. The resulting number (the new color value of the selected pixel) can be further modified by choosing how much it is influenced by the values of the adjacent pixels, which can be added to or subtracted from the value of the selected pixel. For example, if you type 0 in all the boxes surrounding the central pixel, the pixel's value is not influenced by the adjacent pixels, but only by the number you type in the central box. All numbers you type in the grid are multiplied by the corresponding pixel values and added together to create a new value for the pixel. The new pixel value is then divided by a divisor value you choose. If the divisor is the same as the number you type in the central box, then they will cancel each other out, and the new pixel value will depend only on the values of the adjacent pixels. The result of all numerical operations in the grid represents the final color value (1 to 255) of the pixel.

## Distort special effects

The distort special effects transform the appearance of images without adding depth. For sample images, see [“Distort” on page 303](#).

The distort special effects are

- **Blocks**— breaks down the image into scrambled block pieces. You can specify the size of the blocks, the distance between the blocks, and the color of the background (exposed when the effect is applied).
- **Displace**— shifts an active image according to the values of a secondary image known as a displacement map. Values from the displacement map display as forms, colors, and warp patterns in the image.
- **Mesh warp**— lets you distort an image by repositioning the **nodes** on a superimposed **grid**. You can increase the number of nodes on the grid by increasing the number of gridlines to a maximum of 10. Increasing the number of nodes on the grid provides finer control over small details in the image. You can use any of the preset mesh warp styles, and you can create and save custom mesh warp styles.
- **Offset**— changes an image's position by shifting it according to the parameters you specify. When an image is offset, empty areas display where the image was previously positioned. You can fill the empty areas by tiling or stretching the image, or by applying color.
- **Pixelate**— breaks an image into square, rectangular, or circular cells. The **Pixelate** effect is also a preset **lens** type.
- **Ripple**— distorts an image with one or more waves. You can specify the strength of the primary wave to set the warping of the image or add an additional perpendicular wave to increase the distortion.
- **Shear**— maps the shape of an image to the shape of a line segment
- **Swirl**— creates a swirl across an image according to the direction, number of whole rotations, and angle that you specify
- **Tile**— reduces the image's dimensions and reproduces it as a series of tiles on a grid. You can use this effect in combination with a flood fill to create a background or to create a wallpaper effect for a webpage.
- **Wet paint**— creates the illusion of wet paint on images. You can specify the size of the drips and the range of colors that are affected in the image.

- **Whirlpool**— applies a fluid, swirling pattern across an image. You can use a preset whirlpool style, or you can create a custom style by setting the smear length, spacing, twist, and streak detail of the effect. You can also save custom whirlpool styles.
- **Wind**— blurs an image in a specific direction, creating the effect of wind blowing across the image. You can specify the strength and direction of the blur, as well as the transparency of the effect.

## Noise special effects

In bitmap editing, **noise** is defined as the random **pixels** that display across an image, which resemble static on television screens. The noise special effects let you create, control, or eliminate noise. For sample images, see [“Noise” on page 304](#).

The noise special effects are

- **Tune noise**— lets you apply any of nine noise effects. Each effect is represented by a **thumbnail** which lets you preview the image as you apply an effect.
- **Add noise**— creates a granular effect that adds texture to a flat or overly blended image. You can specify the type and amount of noise that is added to the image. The **Add noise** effect is also a preset **lens** type.
- **3-D stereo noise**— creates a **dithered** noise pattern giving an image the appearance of three-dimensional depth when viewed a certain way. This effect is particularly suited to high-contrast line art and **grayscale** images. This effect may be very difficult to perceive.
- **Maximum**— removes noise by adjusting the color value of a pixel based on the maximum color values of its neighboring pixels. This effect also produces a mild blurring effect when applied more than once.
- **Median**— removes noise and detail by adjusting the color value of a pixel according to the median color value of the surrounding pixels
- **Minimum**— removes noise by adjusting the color value of a pixel, based on the minimum color values of its neighboring pixels

## Texture special effects

The texture special effects let you add texture to an image using a variety of shapes and surfaces. You can use bricks, bubbles, canvas, elephant skin, plastic, and stone; or you can create etchings and underpaintings. You can also use these effects to make an image look as though it is painted on a plaster wall or as though you are viewing it through a screen door. For sample images, see [“Texture” on page 305](#).

The texture special effects are

- **Brick wall**— groups **pixels** into a series of interlocking cells to make an image look like a painting on a brick wall. You can specify the brick size and the density of the brick pattern.
- **Bubbles**— creates a bubbling foam on an image. You can specify the size of the bubbles and the amount of the image that is covered.
- **Canvas**— applies a textured surface to an image by letting you use another image as a canvas. You can choose a preset canvas map, or you can load any image as a canvas map. For best results, choose images that have high to medium **contrast**.
- **Cobblestone**— makes an image look as though it was created with cobblestones. You can specify the size, spacing, and granularity of the cobblestones.
- **Elephant skin**— gives an image a wrinkled look by creating an overlay of wavy lines. You can specify the age of the elephant skin (up to 100 years) as well as the skin color.
- **Etching**— transforms an image into an etching. You can control the depth of the etching, the amount of detail, the direction of the light, and the color of the metal surface.
- **Plastic**— makes an image look as though it is made of plastic. You can specify the image depth, as well as the color and angle of light shining on the plastic.
- **Plaster wall**— redistributes pixels so that an image looks as though it was painted on a plaster wall
- **Relief sculpture**— transforms an image into a relief sculpture. You can set the smoothness of the relief, the amount of detail it contains, the direction of the light, and the surface color.
- **Screen door**— makes an image look as though it is being viewed through a screen door. You can specify the mesh detail and brightness, the softness within the image, as well as whether the image is color or black-and-white.
- **Stone**— gives an image a stone texture. You can specify the amount of detail, the density of the pattern, and the angle of the light hitting an image. You can apply a preset stone style or create and save a custom stone style as a preset.
- **Underpainting**— makes an image look like a painting created on a canvas that is subsequently covered with layers of paint. You can specify the degree to which the original image is painted over and adjust the **brightness** of the image.

## Applying Bevel effects

Bevel effects let you create the appearance of a raised surface by applying a sloped edge along an [editable area](#). For example, you can use bevel effects to add depth to text or create 3D buttons for the web. You can change the angle, direction and color of the lighting, as well as apply a texture along the beveled edge. You can use a preset style or customize a preset style and save it in the preset list.

### To apply a bevel

- 1 Select an [editable area](#).
- 2 Click **Effects** ▶ **3D Effects** ▶ **Bevel effect**.
- 3 Click the **Bevel** tab, and adjust the following sliders:
  - **Width** — lets you specify the width of the bevel in [pixels](#)
  - **Height** — lets you specify the depth of the bevel. The height and width settings determine the angle of the bevel.
  - **Smoothness** — lets you specify the roundness of the beveled edge. Higher values produce rounder edges.
- 4 Click the **Lighting** tab, and specify the settings you want.

### You can also

Change the color of the light

Open the **Color** picker, and click a color.

Apply a texture to the beveled edge

Open the **Texture** picker, and click a texture.

Apply lighting and texture settings to the area inside the bevel

Disable the **Preserve interior** check box.

## Applying the Bokeh Blur effect

The Bokeh Blur effect lets you control the amount of blur applied to the outside of an editable area and adjust the transition between the area in focus and the blurred area. You can also choose between circular and hexagonal aperture shapes. The aperture shape can affect light patterns that appear in the out-of-focus areas. This effect is most noticeable in small pinpoints of light on a dark background. For example, it can be used to simulate the way a camera lens handles lights that are out of focus.

This effect can also be used effectively in combination with the **Planar mask** tool. For more information, see [“Editable areas defined by using the Planar Mask tool” on page 226](#).



The Bokeh blur effect has been used to define an area of focus in the middle, leaving the rest of the photo out of focus.

### To apply the Bokeh Blur effect

- 1 Using a mask tool, select the area of the image that you want to keep in focus.
- 2 Click **Effects** ► **Blur** ► **Bokeh blur**.
- 3 In the **Bokeh blur** dialog box, perform a task from the following table.

<b>To</b>	<b>Do the following</b>
Invert the selected area	Enable the <b>Invert mask</b> check box.
Adjust the amount of blur in the area that is out of focus	Move the <b>Blur amount</b> slider.  Moving the slider to the right increases the blur; moving the slider to the left decreases the blur.
Specify the aperture shape for the blurred area	Enable one of the following options in the <b>Aperture shape</b> area: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Circular</b></li> <li>• <b>Hexagonal</b></li> </ul>
Adjust the transition between the area in focus and the blurred area	Move the <b>Feather edge</b> slider.  Moving the slider to the right increases the feathering; moving the slider to the left decreases the feathering.
Fine-tune the size of the area in focus	Move the <b>Focus range</b> slider to the left to shrink the area in focus, or move the slider to the right to expand the area in focus to the edge of the selection.



Make your selection slightly larger than the area you want to keep in focus, and then fine-tune the edge of the selection by using the **Focus range** slider.

## Applying Lens Flare effects

You can add rings of light to an [RGB](#) image to simulate the flare that appears on a photograph when the camera is aimed towards a direct, bright light. For example, you can create the appearance of sunlight reflecting off a surface or create a space scene with nebulas and galaxies. You can control many elements of a lens flare effect:

- flare — the brightest part of the reflected light
- halo — a ring of light that appears around the flare
- reflection tail — a series of smaller circles moving away from the flare
- rays — lines of light that radiate from the flare
- anamorphic light — a streak of light that passes through the flare

You can set the position, size, [brightness](#), and color of these elements, and add [noise](#) to create a more natural looking effect.

### To apply a lens flare

- 1 Select an image, [editable area](#), or [object](#).
- 2 Click **Effects** ▶ **Camera** ▶ **Lens flare**.
- 3 Click the **Flares** tab, and set the properties you want.  
If you want to modify the halo or reflection tail, choose **Halo** or **Reflection tail** from the list box, and modify the settings you want.
- 4 Click the **Rays** tab, and set the properties you want.  
If you want to modify the anamorphic light, choose **Anamorphic light** from the list box, and modify the settings you want.

## Applying Lighting effects

You can add light sources to an [RGB](#) or [grayscale](#) image to create the illusion of spotlights, floodlights, or sunlight. You can specify the type and number of light sources, the intensity of the light, and the color of the light. You can also create embossed reliefs by applying a preset or modifying [color channel](#) information. You can use a preset light and texture style, or you can customize a preset style and save it in the preset list.

### To apply a lighting effect

- 1 Click **Effects** ▶ **Camera** ▶ **Lighting effects**.
- 2 Click the **Light source** tab.
- 3 Enable the **Spotlight** option in the **Type** area.
- 4 In the preview window, drag the **Light source selector**  to set the position and direction for the light.
- 5 Type a value in the **Angle** box to set the angle of the light relative to the image.
- 6 Move any of the following sliders:
  - **Brightness**— lets you set the intensity of the light source
  - **Cone size**— lets you set the width of the light beam. Higher values produce a wider, more diffused light beam.
  - **Edge**— lets you set the diffusion of the light along the edge of the beam
  - **Opacity**— lets you set the density of the light
- 7 Click the **Atmosphere** tab, and move the **Brightness** slider to adjust the [brightness](#) of the entire image.

### You can also

Change the color of the light

Click the **Color** picker, and choose a color swatch.

Add a light with the same properties as the last light applied

Click the **Add light** button .

## You can also

Delete the last light applied

Click the **Delete light** button .

Hide/Reveal the Light source selector

Click the **Hide/Reveal Light source** button .

Add three-dimensional texture using a preset

Click the **Presets** tab, choose a preset that adds texture to the image, and click the **Image texture** tab to set the properties you want.

Add three-dimensional texture using color channels

Click the **Image texture** tab, choose a color channel from the **Channels** list box, and modify the settings you want.

## Adding photo frames

You can frame photos and other images by adding preset photo frames. Corel Content includes an online collection of photo frames that you can access and search. When you find a photo frame you like, you can download it and apply it to an image. For more information, see ["Accessing content" on page 88](#).

You can overlay two or more frames on an image. In addition, you can customize preset frames by changing their color, opacity, edges, and alignment. Customized photo frames can be saved as presets for future use. For more information, see ["To create a custom preset style" on page 285](#).

### To add a photo frame

1 Click **Effects** ► **Creative** ► **Frames**.

2 In the **Frames** dialog box, open the frame picker, and choose a frame.

The filename of the photo frame and its location appear in the **View and select frame** box next to the frame picker.

## You can also

Access online photo frames

In the **Frame** dialog box, open the frame picker, and click **More**.

The **Corel Content - photo frames** dialog box appears, displaying thumbnails of available photo frames.

Download an online photo frame

Click a thumbnail, and then click **Download**.

Downloaded photo frames can be accessed from the frame picker.

To apply the photo frame, click **OK** in the **Frame** dialog box.

Search for an online photo frame

Type a search term in the **Search** box, and press **Enter**.

Display thumbnails of available photo frames

Click the **Home** button .

Customize a photo frame

In the **Frames** dialog box, click the **Modify** tab, and choose the settings you want.

Overlay frames

Click an empty row in the **View and select frame** box, and choose a frame from the frame picker.

Show or hide a frame

Click the Eye icon.

Remove a frame from the **View and select frame** box

Click a frame, and click the **Delete** button.



Watermarked photo frames cannot be downloaded. Content appears watermarked if you have not signed in or do not have the required membership. To sign in, click the **Sign in/Sign out** button in the upper-right corner of the dialog box. For information about memberships, see “CorelDRAW memberships” on page 9.

## Gallery of special effects

### 3-D effects



*Original*



*3-D Rotate*



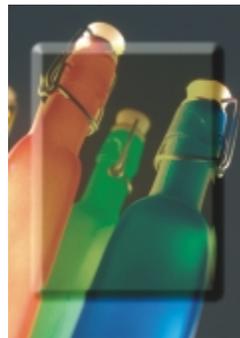
*Bevel*



*Cylinder*



*Emboss*



*Glass*



*Page curl*



*Perspective*



*Pinch/Punch*



*Sphere*



*The Boss*



*Zig Zag*

**Art strokes**



*Original*



*Charcoal*



*Conte crayon*



*Crayon*



*Cubist*



*Dabble*



*Impressionist*



*Palette knife*



*Pastels*



*Pen & ink*



*Pointillist*



*Scraperboard*



*Sketch pad*



*Watercolor*



*Water marker*



*Wave paper*

## Blur



*Original*



*Gaussian blur*



*Radial blur*



*Zoom*



*Original*



*Low pass*



*Motion blur*



*Smart blur*

## Camera



*Original*



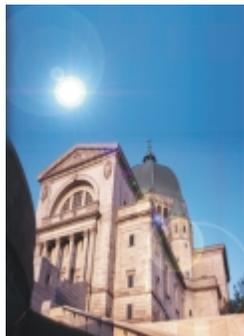
*Diffuse*



*Spot filter*



*Original*



*Lens flare*



*Lighting effects*



*Original*



*Photo filter*

### Color transform



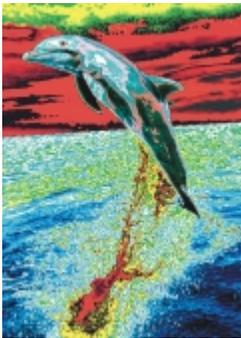
*Original*



*Bit planes*



*Halftone*



*Psychedelic*



*Solarize*

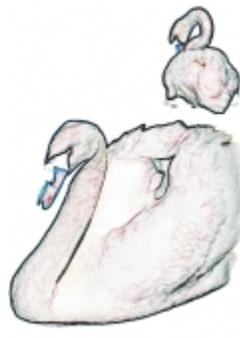
### Contour



*Original*



*Edge detect*



*Find edges*



*Trace contour*

**Creative**



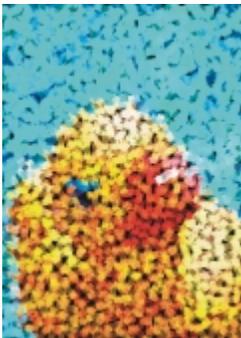
*Original*



*Crafts*



*Crystalize*



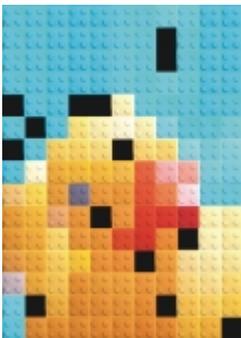
*Fabric*



*Frame*



*Glass block*



*Kid's play*



*Mosaic*



*Particles*



*Scatter*



*Smoked glass*



*Stained glass*



*Vignette*



*Vortex*



*Weather*

## Distort



*Original*



*Blocks*



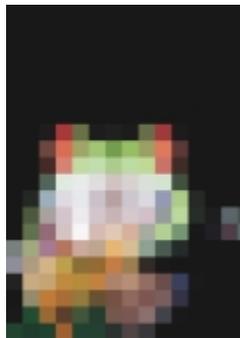
*Displace*



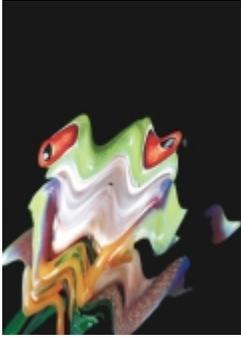
*Mesh warp*



*Offset*



*Pixelate*



*Ripple*



*Shear*



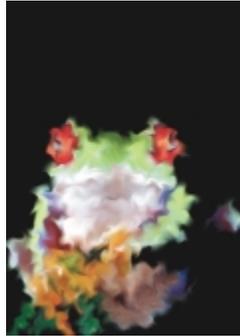
*Swirl*



*Tile*



*Wet Paint*



*Whirlpool*

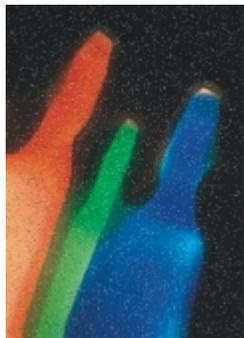


*Wind*

## Noise



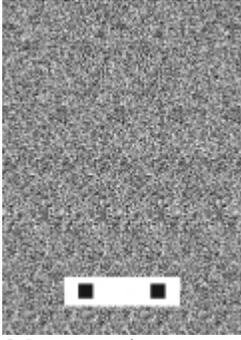
*Original*



*Tune noise*



*Add noise*



3-D stereo noise



Maximum



Median



Minimum

## Texture



Original



Brick wall



Bubbles



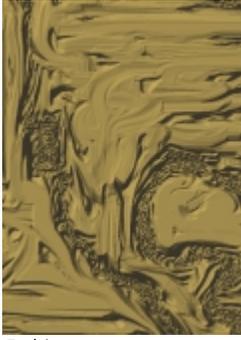
Canvas



Cobblestone



Elephant skin



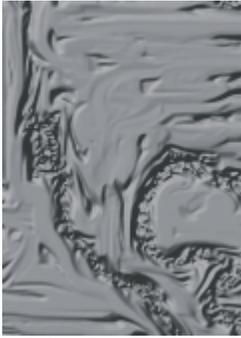
*Etching*



*Plastic*



*Plaster wall*



*Relief sculpture*



*Screen door*



*Stone*



*Underpainting*

## Managing plug-ins

Plug-ins provide additional features and effects for image editing in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. Special-effect plug-in filters process image information and alter an image according to preset specifications.

At startup, Corel PHOTO-PAINT automatically detects and loads plug-ins placed in the plug-ins folder. You can add more plug-ins to the plug-ins folder or you can add plug-ins installed in other locations. Note that third-party plug-ins must be installed in a folder for which you have read and write access. You can disable plug-ins you are not using.

### To install a plug-in from another location

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Plug-ins**.
- 3 Click **Add**.
- 4 Choose the folder where the plug-in is stored.

## To disable a plug-in

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Plug-ins**.
- 3 Disable the check box next to the plug-in you want to disable.



If your plug-ins are installed in the CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7\Plug-ins folder, you must add individual plug-ins to the list on the Plug-ins page, and disable the first check box in the list (the CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7\Plug-ins folder) before you can disable individual plug-ins. To add individual plug-ins to the list, see [“To install a plug-in from another location” on page 306](#).



You can also disable a plug-in and remove it from the plug-in list by clicking a plug-in to highlight it and clicking the **Remove** button.



# Objects

Working with objects.....	311
Modifying objects.....	327
Linking and embedding objects.....	339

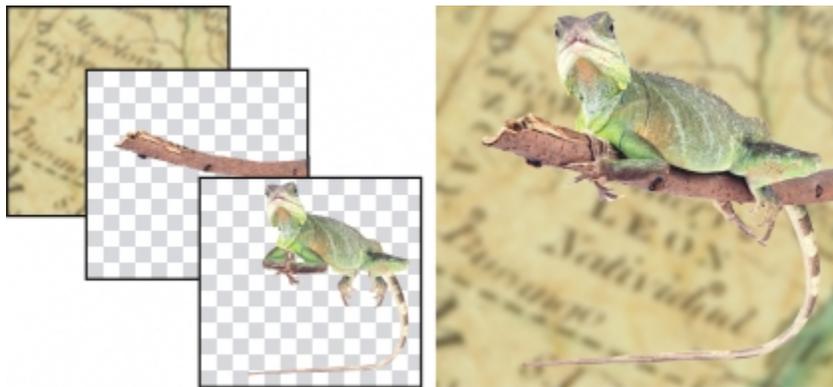




Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Working with objects

You can increase your image-editing capabilities by using [objects](#), which are independent image elements that float above the background. Objects are transparent layers that stack on top of one another. The background forms the bottom layer, and when you create new objects, they are added to the top of the stack. For example, when you open a photo, it becomes the background. You can then add shapes, brushstrokes, sprayed images, and other objects on top of the photo.



*Objects are like layers that you can stack on top of one another. This image consists of the background and two photo objects.*

This section contains the following topics:

- “Creating objects” (page 312)
- “Changing object properties” (page 313)
- “Selecting objects” (page 314)
- “Moving, copying, and deleting objects” (page 315)
- “Displaying and arranging objects” (page 317)
- “Aligning and distributing objects” (page 318)
- “Using alignment guides” (page 320)
- “Locking objects” (page 322)
- “Grouping and combining objects” (page 322)
- “Choosing a merge mode for grouped objects” (page 324)
- “Working with clipping groups” (page 325)

## Creating objects

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can create [objects](#) from

- brushstrokes
- shapes
- the background
- editable areas

You can create objects from scratch by applying brushstrokes or creating shapes, or you can add brushstrokes and shapes to an existing object. For more information about applying brushstrokes and creating shapes, see [“Drawing and painting” on page 265](#).

You can also create an object by using an entire image background. The background cannot be edited or moved in the stacking order unless it is converted to an object.

Another way you can create an object is to define an [editable area](#) on an image background or another object. When you create an object from an editable area, you can include only the visible elements in that area. If an object is obscured by other objects, and you cannot see it, it will not be included in the editable area. For information about defining editable areas, see [“Working with masks” on page 223](#).



*You can create an object by using part of an image background. Here, an editable area is defined and then the selection is copied and moved.*

All objects in an image have the same [resolution](#) and [color mode](#). As you add objects to a file, the file size and memory requirements increase. To decrease file size, you can flatten an image by combining objects. For more information on combining objects, see [“Grouping and combining objects” on page 322](#).

To retain objects when you save an image, you must save the image in the native Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT) file format. For more information on saving images, see [“Saving and closing” on page 79](#).

### To create an object by using a brush tool

- 1 Click **Object** ► **Create** ► **New object**.
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 3 Set the attributes on the property bar.
- 4 Drag in the image window to create a brushstroke.



When the **Show object marquee** command in the **Object** menu is enabled, a dashed outline, called a [marquee](#), surrounds the new object.

All brushstrokes and sprayed images are added to the active object by default.



You can also create an object by clicking the **New object** button  in the **Object manager** docker. If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Object manager**.

### To create an object by using a shape tool

- 1 In the toolbox, click a shape tool.
- 2 Set the attributes on the property bar.
- 3 Drag in the image window to create a shape.



When the **Show object marquee** command in the **Object** menu is enabled, a dashed outline, called a **marquee**, surrounds the new object.

To add a shape to the active object without creating a new object, disable the **New object** button  on the property bar.

### To create an object by using the entire image background

- Click **Object ▶ Create ▶ From background**.

### To create an object by using an editable area

- 1 In the **Object manager** docker, click the **thumbnail** of the background, or of an **object**.  
If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Object manager**.
- 2 Define an **editable area**.
- 3 Click **Object ▶ Create ▶ Copy from mask**.



To remove the editable area of an image as you create an object, click **Object ▶ Create ▶ Cut from mask**.

### To create an object by using all visible elements in an editable area

- 1 Define an **editable area**.
- 2 Click **Edit ▶ Copy visible**.
- 3 Click **Edit ▶ Paste ▶ Paste as new object**.

## Changing object properties

You can rename an **object** and change its properties. When you create an object, it is given a default name, such as **Object 2**. If you have not specified settings, the default settings are applied to the object. In some programs, object properties are also known as layer options.

You can change the **opacity** of an object, choose a **merge mode**, and modify the way an object blends with underlying objects or with the background image. For more information about merge modes, see “[Understanding merge modes](#)” on page 280.

By changing object properties, you can also turn an object into a clickable area of an **image map** for the World Wide Web. For more information, see “[Creating image maps](#)” on page 382.

### To change the properties of an object

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Object pick tool** .
- 2 Select an **object** in the image window.

- 3 Right-click an object, and choose **Object properties**.
- 4 Click the **General** tab.
- 5 Type a new name in the **Name** box.

**You can also**

Change the opacity of an object

Move the **Opacity** slider.

Choose a merge mode

Choose a merge mode from the **Merge mode** list box.

Change the way an object blends with underlying objects or with the background

Modify settings in the **Blend** area.



An object's name cannot be more than 39 characters long.



You can also rename an object by double-clicking its name in the **Object manager** docker.

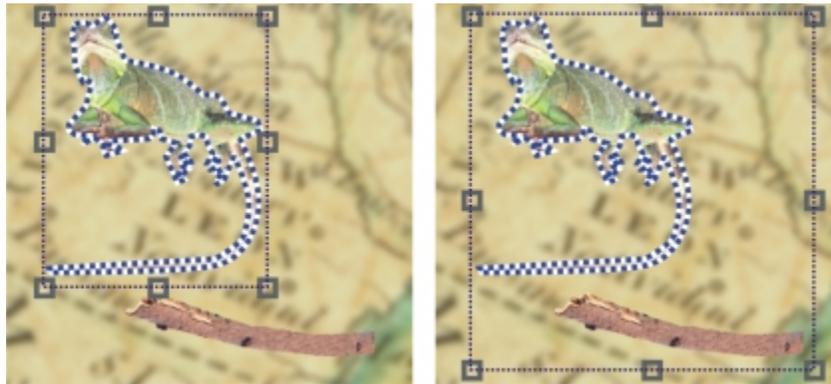
You can choose a merge mode for a group of objects from the **Merge mode** list box in the **Object manager** docker.

## Selecting objects

You must select **objects** before you can change them. You can select one object, covered objects, multiple objects, all objects, or multiple groups of objects. When you select a single object, a highlighting box with eight transformation **handles** surrounds the object. When you select multiple objects, the highlighting box expands to surround all of the objects.

You can select multiple objects, but only one object is active. The active object is outlined by a dashed outline called a **marquee**. You can edit the active object by filling it and applying special effects to it.

When you finish making changes to the selected objects, you can deselect them.



*One object is selected in the image on the left. On the right, the highlighting box indicates that both objects are selected. The object marquee appears around the lizard, which is the active object.*

### To select objects

To select

Do the following

An object

In the toolbox, click the **Object pick** tool , and click an object.

All objects in an image

Click **Objects** ► **Select all objects**.

## To select

An object covered by another object

## Do the following

In the toolbox, click the **Object pick** tool . Hold down **Alt**, and click until the highlighting box of a covered object is displayed. This shortcut key allows you to cycle through layered objects.

Multiple objects

In the toolbox, click the **Object pick** tool . Click one object, hold down **Shift**, and click the other objects.

Multiple groups of objects

In the toolbox, click the **Object pick** tool . Click an object in one group, hold down **Shift**, and click an object from each group that you want to select.



When the **Show object marquee** command in the **Object** menu is enabled, a dashed outline, called a **marquee**, surrounds the active object.

If the background is selected before you click **Objects ▶ Select all objects**, it is added to the selection — all objects and the background are now selected. If an object is selected before you click **Objects ▶ Select all objects**, the background is not included in the selection.



You can select an object by clicking a **thumbnail** in the **Object manager** docker. If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Object manager**.

You can also select objects in the **Object manager** docker stacking order using the following shortcut keys: press **Shift + N** to select the object above the current object; **Shift + P** to select the object below the current object; **Shift + T** to select the top object in the stacking order; and **Shift + B** to select the background object or the bottom object in the stacking order.

## To deselect objects

### To deselect

### Do the following

An object

In the toolbox, click the **Object pick** tool . Click anywhere outside the object's highlighting box.

Multiple objects

Click the **Object pick** tool , hold down **Shift**, and click each object in the image window that you want to deselect.

All objects

Click the **Object pick** tool , and click the background.



When you deselect an active **object**, it is still active.

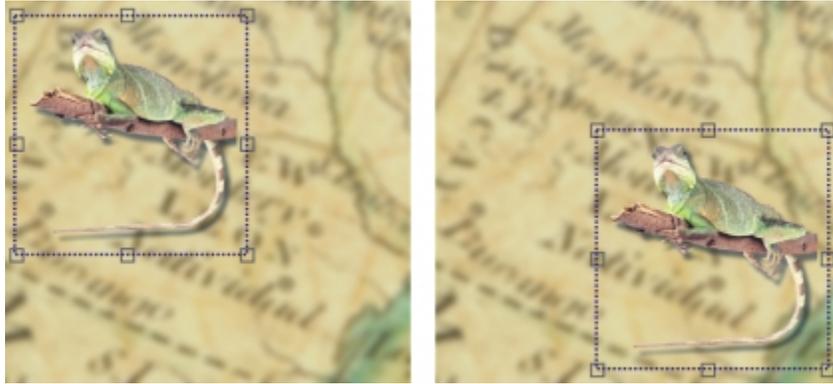
If the background is part of the selection, clicking the background in the image window does not deselect all objects.

## Moving, copying, and deleting objects

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you move an **object** or part of an object to a new location in the same image window or to another image window. You can also copy an object, or part of an object, and paste it into an image. To copy and paste between image windows, you can drag and drop an object from one window to another.

When you move or copy part of an image, you must first define an **editable area** for that part of the image. You can also move or copy an object into an editable area. For more information about defining editable areas, see “[Defining editable areas](#)” on page 225.

When you no longer need an object, you can delete it.



The selected photo object is moved from the top-left corner to the lower-right corner.

### To move an object

#### To move

An object within an image window or to another image window

An object by nudging it in preset increments

An object to a precise location relative to the image window.



For information about setting the nudge value, see “Setting options” on page 51.

#### Do the following

Select an object, and drag it to a new location.

Select an object, and press an **Arrow** key.

Select an object. Click the **Position and size** button  on the property bar, type values in the **Position** boxes, and click **Apply**.

### To move part of an object

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 Define an [editable area](#) on the object.
- 3 Click **Edit** ▶ **Cut**.
- 4 Click **Edit** ▶ **Paste** ▶ **Paste as new object**.

### To copy an object

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 Click **Edit** ▶ **Copy**.
- 3 Click **Edit** ▶ **Paste** ▶ **Paste as new object**.



If you paste the object into the same window, the copy is placed on top of the original object.



You can also copy and paste an object using **Ctrl + C** to copy and **Ctrl + V** to paste.

To copy a selected object within the same image window, click **Object** ▶ **Duplicate**.

## To copy or move an object into an editable area

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 Click **Edit**, and click one of the following:
  - Copy
  - Cut
- 3 Define an [editable area](#).
- 4 Click **Edit ▶ Paste ▶ Into selection**.

## To delete an object

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 Click **Object ▶ Delete**.



You can also delete a selected object by clicking the **Delete** button  in the **Object manager** docker. If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Object manager**.

## Displaying and arranging objects

You can hide an [object](#) from view and change the stacking order of objects.

### Displaying and hiding objects

By default, all objects are displayed in the image window. However, you can hide an object to make it temporarily invisible.

### Changing the order of objects

When you create multiple objects in an image, they are stacked on top of one another in the order in which they were created. The most recently created object is at the top of the stack, and the image background is at the bottom. You can move an object in the image window to cover an object that is lower in the stacking order; however, an object always displays behind objects that are higher in the stacking order. Changing the stacking order of objects brings hidden objects into view or places the topmost objects behind other objects.



*Changing the stacking order places the bike behind the boxes.*

## To hide or display an object

- In the **Object manager** docker, click the **Hide/Show** icon  next to an [object thumbnail](#).

If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Object manager**.



When an object is hidden, the **Hide/Show** icon  is not displayed.



When you hide the background, a checkered transparency grid displays. To customize the transparency grid, click **Tools ▶ Options**. In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Display**. In the **Display** dialog box, modify any attributes in the **Transparency grid** area.

## To change the order of objects

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 Click **Object ▶ Arrange ▶ Order**, and click one of the following:
  - **To front** — places the selected object in front of all objects in the image
  - **To back** — places the selected object behind all objects in the image
  - **Forward one** — places the selected object in front of the object it is currently behind
  - **Back one** — places the selected object behind the object it is currently in front of
  - **Reverse order** — reverses the stacking order of the selected objects. This command is available only when multiple objects are selected.



The image background is always placed at the bottom of the stacking order and no object can be placed below it.

When objects are grouped, they are considered to be at the same level in the stacking order. Therefore, you cannot place an object between individual objects in a group.



You can change the stacking order of an object by dragging its thumbnail to a new position in the **Object manager** docker. If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Object manager**.

You can also change the order of objects using shortcut keys. Move an object to the top of the stack by pressing **Shift + Page up**; move it to the bottom of the stack, but above the background, by pressing **Shift + Page down**; move it up one step in the stacking order by pressing **Ctrl + Page up**; and move it down one step by pressing **Ctrl + Page down**.

## Aligning and distributing objects

You can align an object to image elements, or distribute objects throughout an image.

### Aligning objects

Objects can be aligned to each other, to the center of the image, to the edge of the image, or to the **grid** and **guidelines**. For information about aligning objects to the grid and guidelines, see [“Using the guidelines, grid, and rulers” on page 67](#).

You can also align objects interactively by using alignment guides. For more information, see [“Using alignment guides” on page 320](#).

### Distributing objects

You can distribute objects by spacing them equal distances apart. Objects can be distributed vertically, horizontally, or both. Distribution is based on the distance between the centers of selected objects, or on the space between the adjacent edges of the objects.

### To align objects

- 1 Select the objects.
- 2 Click **Object ▶ Arrange ▶ Align and distribute**.
- 3 In the **Align** area of the docker, click one of the following buttons to use an object edge or center for aligning.

- **Align left**  — to align the left edges of objects
- **Align center horizontally**  — to align object centers along a vertical axis
- **Align right**  — to align the right edges of objects
- **Align top**  — to align the top edges of objects
- **Align center vertically**  — to align object centers along a horizontal axis
- **Align bottom**  — to align the bottom edges of objects

4 In the **Align objects to** area, perform any of the following tasks.

To

Align an object with a specific object

Do the following

Click the **Active objects** button .

If you select the objects one at a time, the last object selected is the reference point for aligning the other objects. If you marquee select the objects, the object that is positioned in the upper-left corner of the selection is used as a reference point.

Align an object with the document edge

Click the **Document edge** button .

Align an object with the document center

Click the **Document center** button .

Align an object with the closest grid line

Click the **Grid** button .

### To distribute objects

- 1 Select the objects.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Arrange** ▶ **Align and distribute**.
- 3 To distribute objects horizontally, click one of the following buttons:
  - **Distribute left**  — evenly spaces the left edges of the objects
  - **Distribute center horizontally**  — evenly spaces the center points of the objects along a horizontal axis
  - **Distribute right**  — evenly spaces the right edges of the objects
  - **Distribute space horizontally**  — places equal intervals between the objects along a horizontal axis
- 4 To distribute objects vertically, click one of the following buttons:
  - **Distribute top**  — evenly spaces the top edges of the objects
  - **Distribute center vertically**  — evenly spaces the center points of the objects along a vertical axis
  - **Distribute bottom**  — evenly spaces the bottom edges of the objects
  - **Distribute space vertically**  — places equal intervals between the objects along a vertical axis
- 5 To choose the area over which the objects are distributed, click one of the following buttons in the **Distribute objects to** area:
  - **Extent of selection**  — distributes the objects over the area of the bounding box surrounding them
  - **Extent of document**  — distributes the objects over the entire document
  - **By object spacing**  — distributes objects horizontally and vertically by the distance specified in the **Spacing** boxes

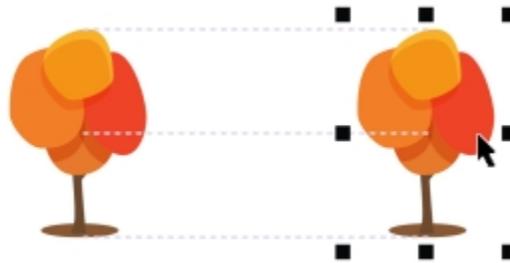


To distribute objects, you must have more than one object selected.

## Using alignment guides

You can align objects interactively by using [alignment guides](#). Alignment guides are temporary guidelines that help you align objects as you create, resize, or move them in relation to other nearby objects.

Alignment guides help you align the edge of an object with the edge of another object (edge to edge). In addition, you can align the edge of an object with the center of another object (edge to center).



*Alignment guides appear as an object is moved.*

If you want to align an object at a set distance from the edge of another object, you can set margins for the alignment guides. After you specify the margins, you can choose how the edge guides appear: they can follow either the margins, or both the margins and the edges of the object. In addition, you can use margin alignment guides that give you the ability to inset and offset an object relative to another object.

Alignment guides are turned off by default. You can easily enable or disable alignment guides, or modify their default settings. You can choose whether alignment guides appear for individual objects in a group, or for the bounding box of the group as a whole.

### To enable or disable alignment guides

- Click **View** ► **Alignment guides**.



A check mark beside the **Alignment guides** command indicates that alignment guides are enabled.



You can also enable alignment guides by pressing **Shift + Alt + A**.

### To modify alignment guide settings

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Alignment guides**.
- 2 Perform any of the following tasks.

To

Enable or disable alignment guides

Change the color of alignment guides

Change the line style of alignment guides

Set guides to align the edge of an object with the edge of another object

Do the following

Enable or disable the **Enable alignment guides** check box.

Open the **Line color** picker, and choose a color.

Open the **Line style** picker, and choose a line style.

Click the **Object edges** button .

## To

Set guides to align the edge of an object with the center of another object

Set guides to align to individual objects in a group

## To add margin alignment guides

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Alignment guides**.
- 2 Perform any of the following tasks.

## To

Add margin alignment guides

Change the line color of margins

Change the line style of margins

Set horizontal margins

Set vertical margins

Lock the ratio between vertical and horizontal margins

View only margin alignment guides

Disable horizontal margins

Disable vertical margins

## Do the following

Click the **Object centers** button .

Click the **Individual objects in a group** button .

## Do the following

Enable the **Margins** check box.

Open the **Margin line color** picker, and choose a color.

Open the **Margin line style** picker, and choose a line style.

Type a value in the **Horizontal margin** box, click the **Horizontal margin** button, and choose one of the following options:

- **Offset horizontally**  — creates a margin of the specified distance around an object
- **Inset horizontally**  — creates a margin of the specified distance within an object
- **Offset and inset horizontally**  — creates margins of the specified distance around and within an object

Type a value in the **Vertical margin** box, click the **Vertical margin** button, and choose one of the following options:

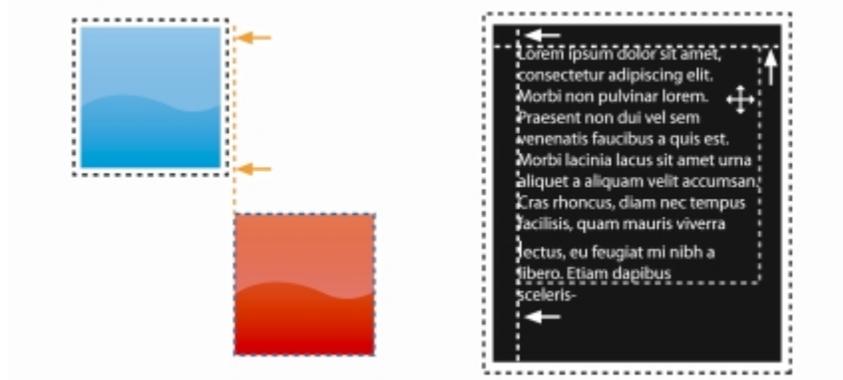
- **Offset vertically**  — creates a margin of the specified distance around an object
- **Inset vertically**  — creates a margin of the specified distance within an object
- **Offset and inset vertically**  — creates a margin of the specified distance around and within an object

Click the **Lock ratio** button .

Disable the **Object edges** button  and the **Object centers** button .

Click the **Horizontal margin** button, and choose **No horizontal margin** .

Click the **Vertical margin** button, and choose **No vertical margin** .



You can offset (left) and inset (right) margin alignment guides.

## Locking objects

Locking an object prevents you from accidentally moving, sizing, transforming, filling, selecting, or otherwise changing the object. You can lock single, multiple, or grouped objects. To modify a locked object, you need to unlock it first. You can unlock one object at a time, or all locked objects at the same time.

### To lock an object

- 1 Using the **Object pick tool**, select an **object**.
- 2 Click **Object ▶ Lock**.

### You can also

Lock multiple objects

Using the **Object pick tool**, hold down **Shift**, and click multiple objects. Click **Object ▶ Lock**.

Lock a group of objects

Using the **Object pick tool**, click an object group, and click **Object ▶ Lock**.



You can also lock an object by clicking the **Lock button**  in the **Object manager** docker.

### To unlock an object

- 1 In the **Object manager** docker, click a locked **object** or group of objects.  
If the **Object manager** docker is not displayed, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Object manager**.
- 2 Click the **Lock button** .

## Grouping and combining objects

You can group **objects** so they behave as one unit. Grouped objects can be moved, deleted, or transformed as a single entity. Even hidden objects in a group are transformed together with the visible objects.

You can add objects to, or remove objects from, an existing group. You can also nest a group of objects, which allows you to group objects within an existing group. You can also ungroup the objects when you want to edit them individually.



*Grouped objects can be moved or transformed together. In this example, the ball and the boxes are grouped and resized as a group.*

Combining objects lets you group them permanently. You can combine multiple objects into one object, or combine objects with the background. When you combine objects, you lose the ability to edit the objects independently. You can also decrease the file size of an image by combining objects.

### To group objects

- 1 In the image window, select the [objects](#).
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Arrange** ▶ **Group**.



You can also group objects in the **Object manager** docker by holding down **Ctrl**, selecting the objects that you want to group, and clicking the **New group** button .

### To add an object to a group

- 1 In the image window, select an [object](#) in a group.
- 2 Hold down **Shift**, and click the object that you want to add.
- 3 Click **Object** ▶ **Arrange** ▶ **Group**.



You can also add an object to an existing group in the **Object manager** docker by selecting the object and dragging it to the group.

### To remove an object from a group of objects

- 1 Open the **Object** docker.
- 2 In the **Object manager** docker, click the group arrow button to expand the group list.  
If the **Object manager** docker is not displayed, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Object manager**.
- 3 Select the object from the group list.
- 4 Drag it out of the group.

### To nest a group of objects

- 1 In the **Object manager** docker, click the group arrow button to expand the group list.  
If the **Object manager** docker is not displayed, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Object manager**.
- 2 Hold down **Ctrl** and select the objects in the group that you want to nest.
- 3 Click the **New group** button .

## To ungroup objects

- 1 In the image window, click a group of [objects](#).
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Arrange** ▶ **Ungroup**.

## To combine objects

### To combine

Multiple objects into one object

### Do the following

Select the objects, and click **Object** ▶ **Combine** ▶ **Combine objects together**.

One or more objects with the background

Select an object or objects, and click **Object** ▶ **Combine** ▶ **Combine objects with background**.

All objects with the background

Click **Object** ▶ **Combine** ▶ **Combine all objects with background**.



When objects are combined with the background, they become part of the background layer and can no longer be edited as individual objects.



You can also combine objects in the **Object manager** docker by holding down **Ctrl**, selecting the objects that you want to combine, and clicking the **Combine selected objects** button .

You can specify a [merge mode](#) and [transparency](#) level before you combine objects by modifying the settings in the **Merge mode** list box and **Opacity** box in the **Object manager** docker. If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Object manager**.

## Choosing a merge mode for grouped objects

When you group objects, the Pass Through merge mode is automatically assigned to the new group. With the Pass Through mode, the group has no merge properties of its own. Instead, the merge modes within the group affect the appearance of object colors within the group as well as any underlying objects. If an adjustment lens or another effect is applied to the group, it affects the colors of underlying objects or background.

You can change the merge mode for the group to create various blending effects. For more information about merge modes, see [“Understanding merge modes” on page 280](#).



The original image (left) contains grouped objects. A lens effect was applied to the group (right). The Pass Through merge mode was applied to the group so the lens changed the gray background behind the group as well.

### To choose a merge mode for a group

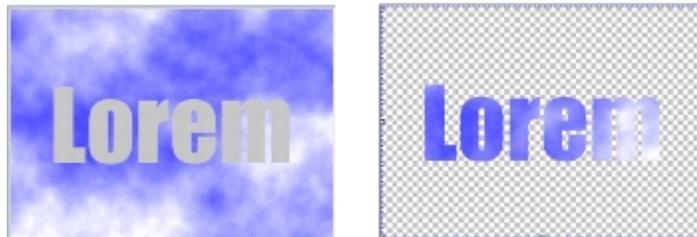
- 1 In the **Object manager** docker, click a group.  
If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Object manager**.
- 2 Choose a merge mode from the **Merge mode** list box.



You can also choose a merge mode for grouped objects and adjust their opacity from the **Group properties** dialog box.

### Working with clipping groups

Clipping groups let you combine the characteristics of objects by placing the image elements from one or more objects into the shape of another; the characteristics of child objects are inserted into the shape of the parent object. For example, if the parent object is text, and the child object is a picture of the sky, the result will be text with the color and texture of the sky. An object is the parent to objects above it in the stacking order; a child object cannot be below the parent object.



Clipping groups let you borrow the characteristics of one object and apply them to another. In this example, the text (parent object) has the color and texture of the sky (child object).

You can also create a clipping group that includes the background by converting the background image to an object. You can undo a clipping group at any time.

### To create a clipping group

- 1 In the **Object manager** docker, drag the child object above the parent object in the list.
- 2 In the image window, select the child object and drag it over the parent object.
- 3 Click the child object in the list.
- 4 Click the **Create clipping group** button .



Only areas of the child object that fall within the boundaries of the parent object are visible. Only the object **marquee** of the child object is visible in areas that fall outside the boundaries of the parent object.

### To create a clipping group that includes the background image

- 1 In the **Object manager** docker, click the background.
- 2 Click **Object ▶ Create ▶ From background**.  
The background appears as an object in the **Object manager** docker.
- 3 In the **Object manager** docker, drag the background object, which becomes the child object, above the parent object in the list.
- 4 Click the background object in the **Object manager** docker list.
- 5 Click the **Create clipping group** button .

### To undo a clipping group

- 1 In the **Object manager** docker, click the child object that is contained in the clipping group.  
If the object belongs to a clipping group, a clipping group symbol displays to the left of the object name.
- 2 Click the **Create clipping group** button  to undo the clipping group.



## Modifying objects

**Objects** are independent image elements that can be layered on top of one another. You can transform objects, change their edges, or add drop shadows. Objects can be changed without affecting the other objects, or the background, in an image.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Transforming objects” (page 327)
- “Cropping objects” (page 331)
- “Changing the edges of objects” (page 331)
- “Adding drop shadows to objects” (page 334)
- “Using clip masks” (page 336)
- “Protecting the area around an object” (page 338)

### Transforming objects

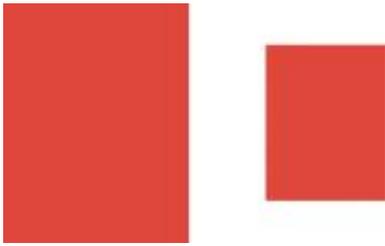
You can change the appearance of objects by using the following transformations.

Transformation	Description
Sizing	Lets you change the width and height of an object
Scaling	Lets you size an object to a percentage of its original size
Rotating	Lets you turn an object around its center of rotation
Flipping	Lets you create a horizontal or vertical mirror image of an object
Skewing	Lets you slant an object to one side
Distorting	Lets you stretch an object disproportionately
Applying perspective	Lets you give an object the appearance of depth

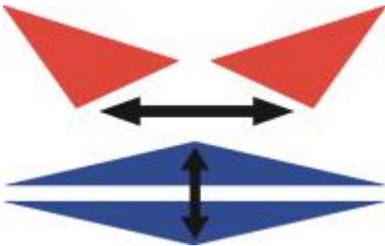
You can apply freeform transformations in the image window or manually adjust settings for more precise results.

You can apply transformations to a single object or multiple objects simultaneously.

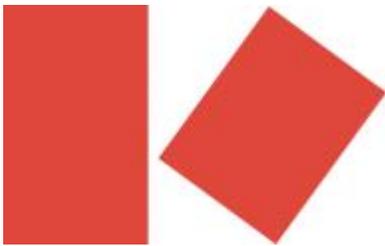
## Transformation



*Sizing and scaling*



*Flipping*



*Rotating*



*Skewing*



*Distorting*

## Applied to objects in an image



*The photo object is scaled down to fit onto the background image.*



*The object is flipped to create a reflection.*



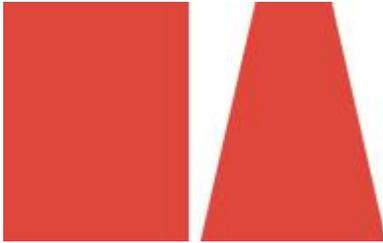
*The reflection is rotated.*



*The reflection is skewed to create a realistic angle.*



*The shadow is distorted to indicate the direction of a light source.*



Perspective



A second shadow is added and modified.

### To size an object

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 Click the **Position and size** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Drag any of the [handles](#) on the bounding box.  
If you want to cancel the transformation, double-click outside the object.
- 4 Click **Apply** on the property bar.



You can resize the object from the center by holding down **Shift** as you drag any of the handles.

You can also change the size of a selected object by typing values in the **Size** boxes, and clicking **Apply** on the property bar.

### To scale an object

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 Click the **Scale** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Drag a corner handle on the bounding box.  
If you want to cancel the transformation, double-click outside the object.
- 4 Click **Apply** on the property bar.

#### You can also

Scale an object with precision

On the property bar, type percentage values in the **Scale** boxes and click **Apply**.

Scale an object while preserving the ratio of width and height

Click the **Maintain ratio** button  on the property bar.

Scale an object from the center

Hold down **Shift** as you drag a corner handle.



When you scale, skew, or rotate an object, its edges can appear jagged. For this reason, these transformation modes enable [anti-aliasing](#) by default.

### To rotate an object

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 Click the **Rotate** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Drag a rotation handle on the bounding box.  
If you want to cancel the transformation, double-click outside the object.
- 4 Click **Apply** on the property bar.

## You can also

Rotate an object by a specific angle

Type a value in the **Angle of rotation** box on the property bar, and then click **Apply**.

Constrain the rotation to 15-degree increments

Hold down **Ctrl** as you drag a corner handle.

Change the pivot point

Drag the object's center of rotation to a new location or type a value in the **Center of rotation** box on the property bar.



When you scale, skew, or rotate an object, its edges can appear jagged. For this reason, these transformation modes enable **anti-aliasing** by default.



You can also switch to rotate mode by clicking an object twice. As you cycle through the transformation modes, the **handles** surrounding an object will change to indicate the active mode.

## To flip an object

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 Hold down **Ctrl**, and drag a middle **handle** on the highlighting box across the object, past the middle handle on the opposite side. If you want to cancel the transformation, double-click outside the object.
- 3 Click **Apply** on the property bar.



You can flip a selected object disproportionately by not holding down **Ctrl** while dragging a middle handle of the highlighting box across the middle handle on the opposite side.

## To skew an object

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 Click the **Skew** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Drag a skewing handle on the bounding box. If you want to cancel the transformation, double-click outside the object.
- 4 Click **Apply** on the property bar.



When you scale, skew, or rotate an object, its edges can appear jagged. For this reason, these transformation modes enable **anti-aliasing** by default.



You can also skew an object by typing values in the **Skew angle** boxes on the property bar and clicking **Apply**.

## To distort an object

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 Click the **Distort** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Drag a distortion **handle** on the bounding box.

If you want to cancel the transformation, double-click outside the object.



You can also switch to distort mode by clicking an object two times. As you cycle through the transformation modes, the handles surrounding an object will change to indicate the active mode.

### To apply perspective to an object

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 Click the **Perspective** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Drag a perspective handle on the bounding box.

If you want to cancel the transformation, double-click outside the object.



You can also switch to perspective mode by clicking an object three times. As you cycle through the transformation modes, the handles surrounding an object will change to indicate the active mode.

## Cropping objects

You can crop an object to remove unwanted areas or to change its shape. You can use a mask tool to select the [editable area](#) of the object that you want to keep, and then you can discard the rest. For more information, see “[Defining editable areas](#)” on [page 225](#).

### To crop an object

- 1 In the **Object manager** docker, click the [thumbnail](#) of the background, or of an [object](#).  
If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Object manager**.
- 2 Define an [editable area](#) for the selected object.
- 3 Click **Object ▶ Crop object to mask**.

## Changing the edges of objects

You can adjust the appearance of an [object](#) by changing the characteristics of its edges. You can blend the edges of an object with the background by [feathering](#), [defringing](#), and removing black and white edges. To emphasize a certain object in an image, you can sharpen its edges. You can also customize the object [marquee](#).

### Feathering

Feathering softens the edges of an object by gradually increasing the [transparency](#) of the edge [pixels](#). You can specify the width of the feathered section of the object and the transparency gradient you want to use.



*The object on the right has been feathered to soften its edges.*

### Defringing

An object created from an [editable area](#) sometimes includes stray pixels along its edges. This is apparent when the editable area is surrounded by pixels of a different [brightness](#) or color. Defringing replaces the color of the stray pixels with a color from the object so that the object blends with the background.

### Removing black or white object edges

You can remove black or white edges from a feathered object by making pixels along the edges more transparent or more [opaque](#).

### Sharpening

Sharpening defines the edges of an object by making the edges crisp. You can do this by specifying the [grayscale](#) threshold for the pixels located along the object's edges. The edges become sharper as the pixels below the threshold become transparent and the pixels within the threshold become opaque.



*The object on the right has been sharpened to define its edges and make them more crisp.*

### Changing the appearance of the object marquee

You can customize the appearance of the object marquee by changing its color and threshold value. Changing the marquee threshold value modifies the location of the visual boundary of the active object. You can also change the color of the object marquee to make it more visible against the image background.

You can also hide the object marquee.

### To feather the edges of an object

- 1 Select an [object](#).
- 2 Click **Object** ► **Feather**.

- 3 Type a value in the **Width** box.
- 4 From the **Edges** list box, choose one of the following:
  - **Linear** — changes the edge **transparency** in even increments from the beginning to the end of the **feathered** section
  - **Curved** — results in small transparency increments at the beginning of the feathered edge, larger transparency increments in the middle, and small transparency increments at the end

If you want to view the effect in the image window, click **Preview** .



You can also feather the edges of an editable area by clicking the **Feather mask** button  on the property bar.

### To defringe an object

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Matting** ▶ **Defringe**.
- 3 Type a value in the **Width** box.

Higher values create a more gradual transition between the edges of the object and the background.

### To remove black or white edges from an object

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Matting**, and click one of the following:
  - **Remove black matte** — makes edge **pixels** more **transparent**
  - **Remove white matte** — makes edge pixels more **opaque**

### To sharpen the edges of an object

- 1 Select an **object**.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Matting** ▶ **Threshold**.
- 3 Type a value from 1 to 255 in the **Level** box.

Higher values include fewer semitransparent **pixels**.

### To change the object marquee

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Display**.
- 3 Type a value from 1 to 255 in the **Object threshold** box.  
Lower values enclose more of the object's **pixels**.
- 4 Open the **Object marquee** color picker, and click a color.



When you change the threshold value of the object **marquee**, the area enclosed by the marquee changes, but the object itself does not change. Pixels that are not completely **opaque** can lie outside the marquee even though they are still part of the object.

### To hide the object marquee

- Click **Object** ▶ **Show object marquee**.



You can also hide or display the **object marquee** by clicking the **Object marquee** button  on the standard toolbar. If the standard toolbar is not displayed, click **Window ▶ Toolbars ▶ Standard**.

## Adding drop shadows to objects

There are three types of drop shadows: glow, flat, and perspective. Glow drop shadows silhouette **objects** and are centered horizontally and vertically; they simulate a light source shining straight onto an object. Flat drop shadows simulate the effect of directional light, so shadows are offset. Perspective drop shadows create three-dimensional depth. You can add a drop shadow to any object, including text.



*The object on the left has a flat drop shadow, while the object on the right has a perspective drop shadow.*

You can create and adjust drop shadows in the image window. You can also change the color, position, direction, and **transparency** of a drop shadow directly in the image window.

You can also apply preset drop shadows. When you apply a preset, you can modify it to create a custom drop shadow. For example, you can change its direction and distance from an object, its color, and its **opacity**. By default, the edges of drop shadows feature squared **feathering**. You can choose another feathering type, such as a Gaussian blur which creates a realistic-looking drop shadow. You can also copy a custom drop shadow or save it as a preset.

When you change the shape or transparency of an object that has a drop shadow, the drop shadow automatically also changes.

You can remove a drop shadow at any time.

### To add a flat or perspective drop shadow

1 In the toolbox, click the **Drop shadow** tool .

2 Select an **object**.

If you want to create a flat drop shadow, drag from the center of the object.

If you want to create a perspective drop shadow, drag from the edge of an object.

#### You can also

Change the color of the drop shadow

Drag a color swatch from the color palette to the end node on the drop shadow arrow.

Move the drop shadow

Drag the end node on the drop shadow arrow.

Flip a flat drop shadow from the center of the object or a perspective drop shadow to the edge of the object.

Drag the start node on the drop shadow arrow.

## You can also

Change the direction of or offset the drop shadow

Adjust the drop shadow's opacity

Adjust the edge feathering

Drag the drop shadow arrow head.

Drag the triangular **Transparency** handle on the drop shadow arrow.

Drag the triangular **Feather** handle on the drop shadow arrow. By default, squared feathering is used, but you can choose another type from the **Feather edge** picker  on the property bar. For example, the Gaussian blur creates a realistic drop shadow.

## To add a glow drop shadow

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Drop shadow** tool .
- 2 Select an [object](#).
- 3 On the property bar, choose one of the following presets from the **Preset** list box:
  - **Large glow**
  - **Medium glow**
  - **Small glow**

## You can also

Change the color of the drop shadow

Adjust the drop shadow's opacity

Adjust the edge feathering

Drag a color swatch from the color palette to the end node on the drop shadow arrow.

Drag the triangular **Transparency** handle on the drop shadow arrow.

Drag the triangular **Feather** handle on the drop shadow arrow. By default, squared feathering is used, but you can choose another type from the **Feather edge** picker  on the property bar. For example, the Gaussian blur creates a realistic drop shadow.

## To add a preset or custom drop shadow

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Drop shadow** tool .
- 2 Select an [object](#).
- 3 Choose a preset from the **Preset** list box on the property bar.  
If you modify the preset by changing any of the values on property bar, the preset name changes to **Custom** in the **Preset** list box.
- 4 Open the **Shadow color** picker on the property bar, and click a color.
- 5 On the property bar, type values in any of the following boxes:
  - **Shadow direction** — lets you specify the angle of the shadow in relation to the object
  - **Shadow offset** — lets you specify the distance of the shadow from the object's point of origin
  - **Shadow fade** — lets you specify the percentage by which a perspective drop shadow fades as it moves away from the object
  - **Shadow stretch** — lets you specify the length of a perspective shadow
  - **Shadow transparency** — lets you specify the [transparency](#) of the shadow
  - **Shadow feathering** — lets you specify the number of [pixels](#) on the edge of the shadow that are feathered to create a soft edge.  
By default, squared feathering is used, but you can choose another type from the **Feather edge** picker  on the property bar. For example, if you want to create a realistic drop shadow, choose the Gaussian blur. You can also specify a direction for the feathered pixels from the **Feathering direction** picker .

## You can also

Save a custom drop shadow as a preset

Click the **Add preset** button  on the property bar, and type a name for the drop shadow in the **Save preset as** box.

Specify the offset and the feather width of the offset as a percentage of the size of the drop shadow

In the **Save as preset** dialog box, enable the **Shadow relative** check box.



After you choose a preset, you can modify many drop shadow attributes by adjusting the **nodes** and triangle **handles** on the drop shadow arrow.

## To copy a drop shadow

- 1 Select the **object** to which you want to apply a drop shadow.
- 2 In the toolbox, click the **Drop shadow** tool .
- 3 Click the **Copy shadow properties** button  on the property bar.
- 4 Click the object that has the drop shadow properties you want to copy.

## To remove a drop shadow

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Drop shadow** tool .
- 2 Select an **object** with a drop shadow.
- 3 Press **Delete**.



You can also remove a drop shadow by choosing **None** from the **Preset** list box on the property bar.

## Using clip masks

A **clip mask** is a layer that floats above an object, which allows you to make changes to the object transparency without permanently modifying the object. You can create a clip mask that shows the object, so you can apply transparency to specific areas of the object. For example, if you want to reveal the image background through the object. Conversely, you can create a clip mask that hides the object, so you can apply transparency to gradually reveal only parts of the object. You can also convert an object transparency into a clip mask, so you can modify or remove the transparency effect.



*The grayscale object (left) was stacked over the colored object (center), and a clip mask was created from the grayscale object (left). With the clip mask selected, the **Paint** tool was used to reveal the color in the butterfly's wings (right).*

In addition, you can conditionally remove an unwanted part of an object by defining an **editable area** to create a clip mask. For more information about editable areas, see [“Working with masks” on page 223](#).

If you are satisfied with the clip mask results, you can apply the change to the object permanently by combining the clip mask with the object.

You can also disable a clip mask to reveal the object, while preserving the clip mask, or delete a clip mask.

You can also apply a clip mask to an object group.

### To modify the transparency of an object or object group by using a clip mask

- 1 Select an **object** or an object group.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Clip mask** ▶ **Create**, and click one of the following:
  - **To show all** — creates a **clip mask** that reveals the entire object or object group
  - **To hide all** — creates a clip mask that makes the object or object group appear fully transparent
- 3 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 4 Click a color from the color palette.  
Choose a lighter color, such as light grey, to apply less transparency. Choose a darker color, such as black, to apply more transparency.
- 5 Drag in the image window.



You can change only the active clip mask. The active clip mask has a red border around its thumbnail in the **Object manager** docker.



You can also create a clip mask that reveals the entire object or object group from the **Object manager** docker by clicking the **Create clip mask** button .

When you apply a clip mask to an object group, you can modify the view of individual objects in the clipped mask area by selecting them in the **Object manager** docker and moving them around.

### To create a clip mask from an object transparency

- 1 Select an **object** or object group that has a transparency.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Clip mask** ▶ **Create** ▶ **From object transparency**.

### To remove editable areas by using a clip mask

- 1 Select an **object** or object group.
- 2 In the toolbox, choose a Mask tool.
- 3 In the image window, define an editable area.
- 4 Click **Object** ▶ **Clip mask** ▶ **Create**, and click one of the following:
  - **From mask** — hides the area surrounding the editable area
  - **From inverted mask** — hides the editable area while revealing only the area that surrounds it



You can also create a clip mask that reveals the entire object or object group from the **Object manager** docker by clicking the **Create clip mask** button .

### To combine a clip mask with an object or object group

- 1 Select an **object** or object group that has a clip mask.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Clip mask** ▶ **Combine**.

### To disable a clip mask

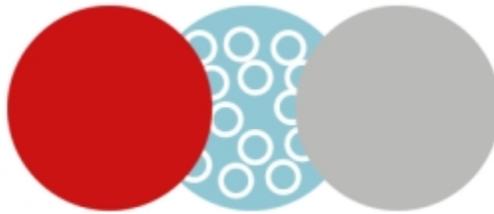
- 1 Select an **object** or object group that has a clip mask.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Clip mask** ▶ **Disable**.

### To delete a clip mask

- 1 Select an [object](#) or object group that has a clip mask.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Clip mask** ▶ **Remove**.

### Protecting the area around an object

You can protect the area that surrounds an object, so you can isolate any changes that you make to the selected object only. For example, you can apply brushstrokes to an object, without applying unintentional strokes of color beyond the object's border.



*The area surrounding the blue circle is protected. As a result, the white bubble brushstrokes are not applied to the red and gray circles.*

### To protect the area around an object

- 1 Click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Object manager**.
- 2 In the **Object manager** docker, click an object.
- 3 Click the **Lock transparency** button .



Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Linking and embedding objects

Object linking and embedding (OLE) is a method of exchanging information between applications. Using OLE, you can take selected [objects](#) or entire files from one application, called the source application, and place them into another application, called the destination application.

You can freely move objects and files between applications as long as all the applications involved support OLE. Linking results in a larger file size but is useful when you want to use an object or file in multiple files. To change every instance of the object or the file, you only need to change the object in the source application. Linking is also useful when the destination application does not directly support files created in the source application. Embedding is useful when you want to include all objects in one file. Embedded objects are not linked to the source file, and result in a smaller file size in the destination application.

This section contains the following topics:

- [“Inserting linked or embedded objects into another application”](#) (page 339)
- [“Editing linked or embedded objects”](#) (page 340)

### Inserting linked or embedded objects into another application

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you create OLE [objects](#) that you can insert into other applications. You can link an object by copying it from Corel PHOTO-PAINT and pasting into another application. You can also embed an object from Corel PHOTO-PAINT into another application as an OLE object.

#### To insert a linked object

- 1 In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, select an [object](#).  
Make sure that the file is saved first.
- 2 Click **Edit ▶ Copy**.
- 3 Click **Edit ▶ Paste special** in the destination application.
- 4 Enable the **Paste link** option.

#### To insert an embedded object

- 1 In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, select an [object](#).
- 2 Drag the selected object to the destination application window.



When you insert an embedded object by dragging, the application windows of both Corel PHOTO-PAINT and the destination application must be visible.

Dragging an object from one application to another deletes the object from the source application and places it in the destination application. If you want to leave a copy of the object in Corel PHOTO-PAINT, hold down **Ctrl + Shift** while you're dragging.

## Editing linked or embedded objects

You can edit a linked or embedded [object](#) created in Corel PHOTO-PAINT and inserted into another application as an OLE object. You can edit a linked object by editing its source file in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. Any changes you make to the source file are automatically applied to the linked object.

### To edit a linked or embedded object

- 1 Double-click the linked or embedded [object](#) to start Corel PHOTO-PAINT.
- 2 Edit the object.
- 3 Save the changes.
- 4 Close Corel PHOTO-PAINT.
- 5 Return to the active application window to review the edits.



You can also edit a linked or embedded object by starting Corel PHOTO-PAINT and opening the file directly.

**Text**

Creating and formatting text..... 343

Working with text in different languages..... 361





# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Creating and formatting text

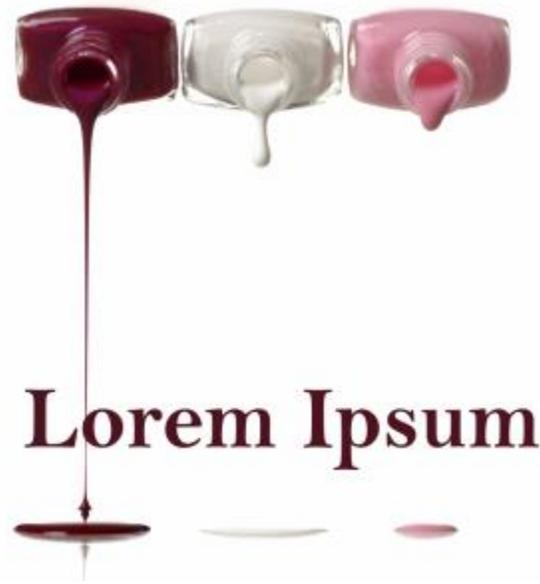
In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can add text to images and create interesting text effects. You can also move, edit, and format text. Fitting text to a [path](#) lets you place text along an uneven line. You can even capture a font from any source and identify it, so that you can reuse it in your own artwork. If you are using an Asian operating system, you can take advantage of the Asian text formatting capabilities available with Corel PHOTO-PAINT. For information, see [“Working with Asian and Middle Eastern text”](#) on page 362.

This section contains the following topics:

- [“Adding and selecting text”](#) (page 343)
- [“Adding color to text”](#) (page 344)
- [“Formatting text”](#) (page 346)
- [“Working with OpenType features”](#) (page 347)
- [“Inserting special characters, symbols, and glyphs”](#) (page 351)
- [“Kerning, shifting, and rotating text”](#) (page 354)
- [“Aligning text”](#) (page 354)
- [“Adjusting line, character, and word spacing”](#) (page 355)
- [“Anti-aliasing text”](#) (page 355)
- [“Fitting text to a path”](#) (page 356)
- [“Previewing fonts”](#) (page 357)
- [“Choosing fonts with Font Playground”](#) (page 358)
- [“Identifying fonts”](#) (page 360)
- [“Working with legacy text”](#) (page 360)

### Adding and selecting text

You can add text to enhance images. You can specify the text [font](#), size, and alignment, as well as the character spacing and line spacing.



*Text was created with the Text tool.*

Text is created as an **object** by default; therefore, you can move, size, scale, rotate, flip, skew, distort, and apply perspective; however, you will lose distortion or perspective effects if you add, remove, or edit text characters. For more information about working with objects, see “Working with objects” on page 311. Text can also be rendered as an **editable area** of a mask. For more information about creating editable areas, see “Working with masks” on page 223.

You can also change the text color by filling or painting. In addition, you can fill text with **patterns** and **textures**.

You can also kern, shift, or rotate text. For more information see, “Kerning, shifting, and rotating text” on page 354.

### To add text

- 1 Click the **Text** tool .
- 2 Choose a **font** from the **Font** list box on the property bar.
- 3 Choose a font size from the **Font size** list box on the property bar.
- 4 Click in the image window, and type the text.



You can **render** the text as an **editable area** by selecting the text with the **Text** tool  and clicking the **Create mask** button  on the property bar. This produces a text-shaped editable area to which you can apply effects.

### To select text for modifying

- 1 Click the **Text** tool .
- 2 Point to the text until the pointer becomes a cursor.
- 3 Select the text.

### Adding color to text

You can quickly change both the fill and outline color of text. You can change the fill, outline, and background color of text. In addition, you can change the appearance of text by painting it. This allows you to add different effects to the text.

# Lorem Ipsum

*You can fill text with patterns and textures.*

## To change the text color

- 1 Click the **Text** tool .
- 2 Point to the text until the pointer becomes a cursor.
- 3 Select the text.
- 4 In the color control area, double-click the **Foreground** color swatch , and choose a color.

## To paint text

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Object pick** tool .
- 2 Select the text object.
- 3 Click **Object** ▶ **Text** ▶ **Render as object**.
- 4 In the color control area, double-click the **Foreground** color swatch , and choose a color.
- 5 In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool .
- 6 Specify any tool settings on the property bar.
- 7 Drag across the text.



Ensure that the text is correct before you paint, because the paint effects are lost if you add, remove, or edit text characters.

## To fill text

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Object pick** tool .
- 2 Select the text object.
- 3 In the toolbox, click the **Fill** tool .
- 4 Specify any tool settings on the property bar.
- 5 Click each text character that you want to fill.

You must click directly in a character; otherwise, the fill is applied to the entire image. You can undo an unwanted fill by clicking **Edit** ▶ **Undo flood fill**.



Ensure that the text is correct before you paint, because the paint effects are lost if you add, remove, or edit text characters.



You can quickly **zoom** into a text character by clicking the **Zoom** tool  in the toolbox and dragging in the image to enclose the text character.

You can **render** the text as an **editable area** by selecting the text **object** with the **Text** tool  and clicking the **Create mask** button  on the property bar. This produces a text-shaped editable area to which you can apply fills.

## Formatting text

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you format text to enhance its appearance. You can change the **font** attributes, such as style and size, and you can underline, strikethrough, and overline text. You can also change the position and appearance of characters by displaying them as subscript or superscript, which is useful in drawings with scientific notations. In addition, you can also change the text case.

If you select an OpenType font that supports subscript, superscript, or case, you can apply the OpenType feature. However, if you select a font, including an OpenType font, that does not support these features, you can apply a synthesized version of the character, which Corel PHOTO-PAINT produces by altering the characteristics of the default font character. For more information, see [“Working with OpenType features” on page 347](#).

You can also add underlines, strikethrough lines, and overlines to selected characters.

### To change font attributes

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click **Object** ► **Text** ► **Text properties**.
- 3 In the **Text properties** docker, perform a task from the following table.

To	Do the following
Choose the typeface	Choose a typeface from the <b>Font</b> list box.
Set the font size	Type a value in the <b>Font size</b> box.
Change the font style	Choose an option from the <b>Font style</b> list box.



You can also choose a typeface from the **Font** list box on the property bar.

You can also change the font style of selected text by clicking the **Bold**  button or the **Italicize**  button on the property bar.

### To underline, strikethrough, and overline text

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click **Object** ► **Text** ► **Text properties**.
- 3 In the **Text properties** docker, click the advanced arrow to display additional options.
- 4 Perform an action from the following table.

To	Do the following
Underline the text	Click the <b>Underline</b> button and choose an option from the list.
Add a line through the text	Click the <b>Character strikethrough</b> button and choose an option from the list.
Add a line above the text	Click the <b>Character overline</b> button and choose an option from the list.



You can add a single underline to selected text by clicking the **Underline**  button on the property bar.

## To add superscript or subscript text

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click **Object ▶ Text ▶ Text properties**.
- 3 In the **Text properties** docker, choose one of the following from the **Position** list box:
  - **None** — turns off all the features in the list
  - **Superscript (auto)** — applies the OpenType feature if the font supports it, or applies a synthesized version if the font does not support superscript
  - **Subscript (auto)** — applies the OpenType feature if the font supports it, or applies a synthesized version if the font does not support subscript
  - **Superscript (synthesized)** — applies a synthesized version of the superscript feature, which looks the same as in previous versions of Corel PHOTO-PAINT
  - **Subscript (synthesized)** — applies a synthesized version of the subscript feature, which looks the same as in previous versions of Corel PHOTO-PAINT



Some OpenType fonts may appear to support features that are unsupported. For example, Superscript and Subscript options may appear available, but are not. If you apply one of these OpenType fonts, Corel PHOTO-PAINT cannot provide a synthesized version of Superscript and Subscript.

## To change the text case

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click **Object ▶ Text ▶ Text properties**.
- 3 In the **Text properties** docker, choose one of the following from the **Caps** list box:
  - **None** — turns off all of the features in the list
  - **All caps** — substitutes lowercase characters with upper case equivalents
  - **Titling caps** — applies the OpenType version of the feature if the font supports it
  - **Small caps (auto)** — applies the OpenType version of the feature if the font supports it
  - **All small caps** — substitutes characters with a scaled-down version of the upper case characters
  - **Small caps from caps** — applies the OpenType version of the feature if the font supports it
  - **Small caps (synthesized)** — applies a synthesized version of **Small caps**, which appears the same as in previous versions of Corel PHOTO-PAINT



If the font that you selected is not an OpenType font that supports Caps styles, Corel PHOTO-PAINT provides a synthesized version of the Small caps.

Some OpenType fonts may appear to support features that are unsupported.

## Working with OpenType features

Corel PHOTO-PAINT supports OpenType fonts so you can take advantage of their advanced typographic features. OpenType features allow you to choose an alternate appearance for an individual character (also referred to as a **glyph**) or a sequence of characters. For example, you can choose alternate glyphs for numbers, fractions, or ligature sets.

You can access OpenType commands and options in the **Text properties** docker. You can also let Corel PHOTO-PAINT prompt you which OpenType features you can apply by enabling the Interactive OpenType option. When you select text, an indicator arrow appears below the text if an OpenType feature is available. You can click the indicator to access a list of the most popular OpenType features that are available for the selected text.

The OpenType font specification was created jointly by Adobe and Microsoft. Based on Unicode, OpenType fonts extend the capabilities of older font technologies. The most notable advantages of OpenType are:

- cross-platform support (Windows and Mac)
- extended character sets that offer better language support and advanced typographic features
- coexistence with Type 1 (PostScript) and TrueType fonts
- support for a larger glyph limit (64k)

### OpenType features

The following table describes the OpenType features that you can apply in Corel PHOTO-PAINT provided that the feature is included in the font.

In addition, Corel PHOTO-PAINT also provides synthesized versions of some Caps and Position OpenType features. For example, if a font does not support a feature, such as Small Caps, Corel PHOTO-PAINT produces its own version of the glyph by scaling the font.

OpenType feature	Description	Example
Caps	Changes the case of text, which is useful for inserting titles and acronyms	LOREM
Position	Displays characters as superscript or subscript, which is useful for inserting footnotes or mathematical symbols. If you select an OpenType font that does not support subscript and superscript, or a non-OpenType font, you can apply a synthesized glyph.	Lore <sup>m</sup>
Number styles	Includes features for controlling the appearance of numbers	See examples below
Number styles — Proportional lining	Displays numbers of varying width, which is best suited for inserting numbers in body text. However, the numbers have a fixed height, which generally match the height of capital letters.	123
Number styles — Tabular lining	Displays numbers of equal width, spacing, and height, which is useful for aligning text and displaying text in a table	123
Number styles — Proportional Old Style	Displays numbers of varying width and height. The style is best suited for blending numbers with mixed case text.	123
Number styles — Tabular Old Style	Displays numbers of equal width, but varying height	123
Fraction	Displays numbers separated by a slash as fractions. The number of available fractions vary from font to font. Apply this feature only to the numbers that you want to display as a fraction.	See examples below

OpenType feature	Description	Example
Fraction — Numerator	Displays a numerator, such as 456/, as a fraction glyph. This is useful for displaying a non-standard fraction, such as 456/789, as a fraction. Use the Numerator feature in conjunction with the Denominator feature to display non-standard fractions as fractions.	<sup>99</sup> /100
Fraction — Denominator	Displays a denominator, such as /789, as a fraction glyph. This is useful for displaying a non-standard fraction, such as 456/789, as a fraction. Use the Denominator feature in conjunction with the Numerator feature to display non-standard fractions as fractions.	99/100
Fraction — Fraction	Displays standard fractions as fraction glyphs	<sup>99</sup> / <sub>100</sub>
Fraction — Alternate fraction	Displays a fraction using a horizontal dividing line, instead of a slant or slash	
Ordinals	Displays ordinals using a number and a suffix in superscript. For example, you can display "first" as 1 <sup>st</sup> or "second" as 2 <sup>nd</sup> . Apply this feature only to the text that you want to display as an ordinal.	1 <sup>st</sup>
Slashed zero	Displays zeros with a diagonal slash, which makes them easy to distinguish from the letter O. This feature is useful for displaying numbers in financial reports.	Ø
Ornaments	Substitutes a character with an ornament that was created by the font designer to match the font's motif	
Stylistic Alternates	Applies an alternate design to characters	rrr
Stylistic sets	Applies an alternate design to a text selection	Lor Lor
Swash Variants	Inserts calligraphic-type decorative characters	KK
Contextual Alternates	Lets you fine-tune text by applying an alternate design to a single character, or a sequence of characters, based on its surrounding characters. For example, you	Not available

OpenType feature	Description	Example
Case-sensitive forms	can apply this feature to script-based text so that it flows more naturally.	Not available
Standard Ligatures	Shifts the position of punctuation marks so they align with capitalized text or lining numbers	ff ff
Discretionary Ligatures	Replaces a letter pair (or a sequence of letters) with one glyph, which is called a ligature. Many OpenType fonts include standard ligatures for fi, fl, ff, ffi, and ffl. Their purpose is to improve text readability.	st st
Contextual ligatures	Replaces a non-standard letter combination with a ligature. Discretionary ligatures designed to be decorative and are not supported by the majority of OpenType fonts.	Not available
Historical ligatures	Inserts a glyph that best suits the surrounding characters. Contextual ligatures are designed to increase readability by improving the joining behavior between the characters of a ligature.	Not available
Historical forms	Substitutes a letter pair, or a letter sequence, with a ligature that is based on historical usages. Historical ligatures are designed to be ornamental and are not supported by the majority of OpenType fonts. The most commonly-used historical ligatures are the letter s combined with another character, such as sh si sl ss, and st.	Not available
Historical forms	Substitutes modern characters with characters that were commonly used in historical documents. Historical forms are useful for recreating historical text.	Not available

### To apply an OpenType feature to text

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select a single character or a sequence of characters.
- 2 Click **Object** ► **Text** ► **Text properties**.
- 3 In the **Text properties** docker, click an OpenType feature button, and, if applicable, choose a feature from the list.



Some OpenType fonts may appear to support features that are unsupported.

### To enable the onscreen OpenType feature indicator

- Click the **Text** tool  in the toolbox, and click the **Interactive OpenType** button  on the property bar. If an OpenType feature is available for the selected text, an arrow displays below the text.

## You can also

View a list of the most popular OpenType features onscreen

Click the arrow below the text.

Apply an OpenType feature to a text selection

Hover over an option in the OpenType feature list and click an option.

## Inserting special characters, symbols, and glyphs

Using the **Insert character** docker, you can find and insert special characters, symbols, and glyphs (variations of individual characters or character combinations) of OpenType fonts.

### Filtering

All characters, symbols, and glyphs included in a font are displayed by default, but you can filter character subsets to display only the characters you want. For example, you can display only currency symbols or numbers, or you can display only Cyrillic characters and symbols.

Characters included in a font are organized in the following categories:

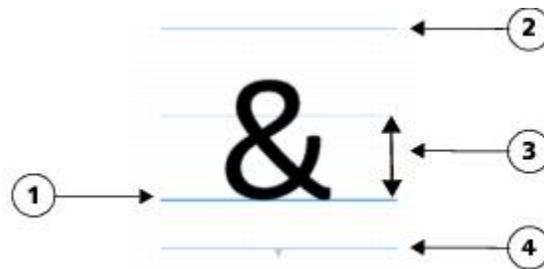
- **Common** — includes arrows, currency, mathematical symbols, numbers, punctuation marks, and separators as well as CJK symbols and punctuation marks (used in Asian scripts)
- **Scripts** — includes the scripts that the selected font supports, such as Latin, Greek, Cyrillic, Hiragana and Katakana, Han, Arabic, or Hebrew scripts
- **OpenType** — includes the OpenType features provided by the selected font such as standard ligatures, discretionary ligatures, fraction, alternate annotation forms, and more. For more information about OpenType features, see [“Working with OpenType features” on page 347](#).

### OpenType fonts

The **Insert character** docker is ideal for viewing and applying the OpenType features provided by OpenType fonts. The default view shows a list of characters in which the glyphs for individual characters appear grouped. Alternatively, you can display a longer list that shows available glyphs at a glance.

### Viewing character position

Each selected character appears against a set of blue lines that let you preview its position in relation to the text baseline.



1) Text baseline  
2) Ascender line

3) Font x-height  
4) Descender line

### Most recently used special characters

You can use the list of most recently used special characters to copy characters that you use often. The list retains the font attributes of most recently used characters and any OpenType features that were applied. You can manage the list by removing characters that you no longer need.

### To add a special character, symbol, or glyph

1 Using the **Text** tool , click where you want to add the special character.

- 2 Click **Object** ► **Text** ► **Insert character**.
- 3 In the **Insert character** docker, choose a font from the **Fontlist** box.
- 4 Double-click a character in the **Character and glyph** list.  
If you cannot find the character you want, open the **Character filter** list box, and enable the **Entire font** check box.

#### You can also

Copy a character

Click a character in the **Character and glyph** list, and click **Copy**.

View information about a selected character

Click the arrow button  at the bottom of the **Character and glyph** list to view any of the following attributes that are applicable: character name, ID, Unicode number, keyboard shortcut for inserting the character, the OpenType feature name, and the language for glyphs that can be displayed properly only in a specific language.

Zoom in and out

Move the **Zoom** slider.

To zoom in and out in preset increments, click the zoom buttons to the right and left of the **Zoom** slider.

Navigate to a special character by using an Alt code

Click in the **Character and glyph** list, hold down **Alt**, and type the Alt code for the character you want.

Navigate to a character

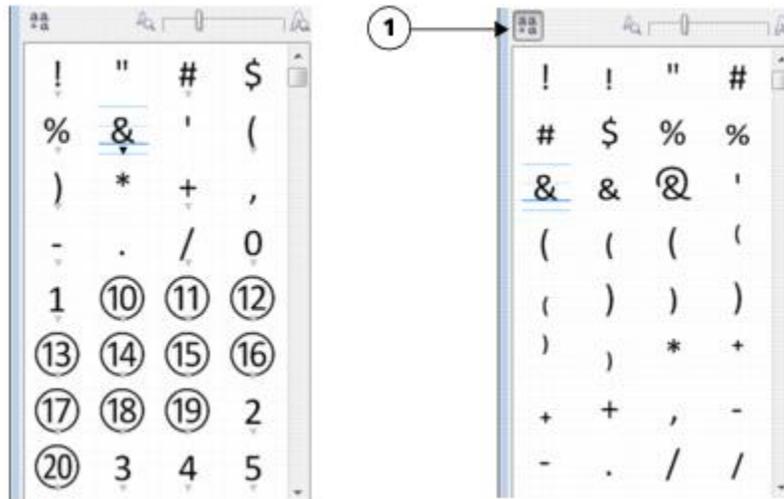
Press the corresponding key on the keyboard.

#### To filter special characters, symbols, and glyphs

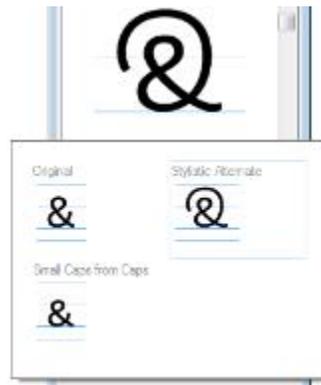
- 1 Click **Object** ► **Text** ► **Insert character**.
- 2 In the **Insert character** docker, choose a font from the **Fontlist** box.
- 3 Open the **Character filter** list box, and enable the check boxes for the character subsets that you want to display.
- 4 Click **Close**.

#### To view glyphs of OpenType features

- 1 Click **Object** ► **Text** ► **Insert character**.
- 2 In the **Insert character** docker, choose an OpenType font from the **Fontlist** box.
- 3 Open the **Character filter** list box, and in the **OpenType** area, enable any of the check boxes for the available OpenType features.
- 4 Do one of the following:
  - To display a list that includes grouped glyphs, make sure that the **Show all glyphs** button  does not appear pressed. To view all glyphs in a group, click a character, and then click the OpenType feature indicator. Click a glyph to display it in the **Character and glyph** list.
  - To display a list that includes all available glyphs, click the **Show all glyphs** button .



Left: The OpenType feature indicators below individual characters show that more glyphs are available.  
 Right: When the Show all glyphs button (1) is pressed, you can see available glyphs at a glance.



Viewing grouped glyphs



The **Show all glyphs** button is not available for fonts that do not support OpenType features.

Some glyphs provided by OpenType features vary depending on the context in which they appear and cannot be shown in the **Insert character** docker. You can view and insert such glyphs in the document window by using the Interactive OpenType option. For more information, ["To enable the onscreen OpenType feature indicator" on page 350.](#)

### To use the list of most recently used special characters

- 1 Click **Object** ► **Text** ► **Insert character**.
- 2 In the list of most recently used special characters, perform a task from the following table.

#### To

View the font and OpenType attributes of a character

Copy a character from the list

Remove characters from the list

#### Do the following

Point to the character.

Right-click the character, and click **Copy**.

Right-click a character, and click **Remove** or **Remove all**.

## Kerning, shifting, and rotating text

You can **kern** text, which lets you adjust the space between individual characters within a range of selected text. Kerning refers to the repositioning of two characters to balance the optical space between them. For example, kerning is often used to decrease the space in character pairs such as AW, WA, VA, or TA. Such character pairs are known as “kerning pairs.” Kerning increases readability and makes letters appear balanced and proportional, especially at larger font sizes.

You can modify the appearance of text by shifting the characters vertically or horizontally, which changes the position of the selected characters relative to the surrounding characters. You can also rotate characters by specifying an angle of rotation.

### To kern text

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Text** ▶ **Text properties**.
- 3 In the **Text properties** docker, type a value in the **Range kerning** box.

### To shift characters

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Text** ▶ **Text properties**.
- 3 In the **Text properties** docker, perform a task from the following table.

To	Do the following
Shift characters horizontally	Type a value in the <b>Horizontal character offset</b> box.
Shift characters vertically	Type a value in the <b>Vertical character offset</b> box.



Positive horizontal values move the characters to the right; negative horizontal values move them to the left. Positive vertical values move the characters up; negative vertical values move the characters down.

### To rotate text

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Text** ▶ **Text properties**.
- 3 In the **Text properties** docker, type a value in the **Character angle** box.

## Aligning text

You can align a text object horizontally, which aligns the text in relation to its bounding box. If characters have not been shifted horizontally, applying no alignment produces the same result as applying left alignment.

### To modify text alignment

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click the **Text alignment** button on the property bar, and choose one of the following options:
  - None — applies the default alignment setting
  - Left — aligns text with the left side of the text frame or the bounding box of artistic text
  - Center — centers text within the text frame

- Right — aligns text with the right side of the text frame and the bounding box of artistic text
- Full justify — aligns text, with the exception of the last line, with the left and right sides of the text frame
- Force justify — aligns text, including the last line, with the left and right sides of the text frame



You can also align text by clicking an alignment button in the **Text properties** docker.

## Adjusting line, character, and word spacing

You can change the spacing between lines of text, which is also known as “**leading**” or “interline spacing.” When changing the line spacing for artistic text, it applies only to the lines of text that are separated by a hard return.

You can change the spacing between characters (also known as “letter spacing”) in a block of text. For example, fully justifying a block of text may insert too much space between characters, which creates a visual imbalance. To improve readability, you can decrease the character spacing. You can also adjust the spacing between words.

### To adjust line spacing

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Text** ▶ **Text properties**.
- 3 In the **Text properties** docker, choose one of the following unit of measurement options from the **Vertical spacing units** list box:
  - **% of Char. height** — lets you use a percentage value that is relative to the character height
  - **Points** — lets you use points
  - **% of Pt.size** — lets you use a percentage value that is relative to the character point size
- 4 Type a value in the **Line spacing** box.

### To adjust character spacing

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Text** ▶ **Text properties**.
- 3 In the **Text properties** docker, type a value in the **Character spacing** box.

### To adjust word spacing

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click **Object** ▶ **Text** ▶ **Text properties**.
- 3 In the **Text properties** docker, type a value in the **Word spacing** box.

## Anti-aliasing text

You can use anti-aliasing to smooth the appearance of text. Anti-aliasing can improve the legibility of on-screen text, especially text that uses a small font size. When adding text to an image, anti-aliasing is applied by default. You can, however, remove text anti-aliasing.

### To apply anti-aliasing to text

- 1 Select the text by using the **Text** tool .
- 2 Choose one of the following options from the **Text antialiasing** list box on the property bar:
  - **Soft** — produces text that is softer in appearance, but remains true to the font shape
  - **Hard** — produces text that is very clear and sharp

## To remove anti-aliasing from text

- 1 Select the text by using the **Text tool** .
- 2 Choose **None** from the **Text antialiasing** list box on the property bar.

## Fitting text to a path

After you create a **path**, you can fit text to it to place text along a line or shape. After you fit text to a path, you can adjust the position of the text in relation to the path. For example, you can place text on the inside or outside of the path, or you can adjust the distance between text and a path.

You can **render** text as an **object** to separate it from a path; the text retains the shape of the path to which it was fitted. You can also straighten text to separate it from the path without retaining the path shape. For more information about creating paths, see “[Creating paths](#)” on page 245.

## To fit text to a path

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Object pick tool** .
- 2 Select the text.
- 3 Click **Object** ▶ **Text** ▶ **Fit text to path**.
- 4 Click a path at the point where you want the text to begin.



You can also fit text to a **path** by clicking the **Text tool** , moving the pointer over a path, and clicking where you want the text to begin. When you move the pointer over the path, the pointer changes. This change indicates that you can now click and type.



*You can create text along a path.*

## To adjust the position of text fitted to a path

- 1 Select the text by using the **Text tool** .
- 2 On the property bar, choose a setting from any of the following list boxes:

- **Text orientation** — sets the orientation of text
- **Vertical placement**— sets the vertical position of text
- **Text placement** — sets the placement of text
- **Distance from path** — sets the distance between the text and the [path](#)
- **Offset** — sets the horizontal position of text

If you want to move text to the opposite side of the path, click the **Place on other side** button  on the property bar.



You can also adjust text by selecting the text with the **Object pick** tool , choosing a mode from the property bar, and dragging the selection [handles](#) in the image window.

### To render text as an object

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Object pick** tool .
- 2 Select the text.
- 3 Click **Object** ▶ **Text** ▶ **Render as object**.



You can [render](#) the text as an [editable area](#) by selecting the text [object](#) with the **Text** tool , and clicking the **Create mask** button  on the property bar. This produces a text-shaped editable area that you can modify.

### To straighten text

- 1 In the toolbox, click the **Object pick** tool .
- 2 Select the text.
- 3 Click **Object** ▶ **Text** ▶ **Straighten text**.

## Previewing fonts

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you preview fonts before you use them. You can also preview a font in all available styles, such as bold and italic; and you can change the size of the font names displayed in the **Font list** box.

### To preview a font

- 1 Click the **Text** tool .
- 2 On the property bar, click the **Font list** box.

The font name appears in the given font.

If text is selected in the document window, you can point to fonts to preview the text appearance with different font attributes applied.



The names of symbol fonts are displayed in the default user interface font, with examples of the symbol font appearing to the right of the symbol font name.



If a font has other styles, such as bold or italic, you can preview them by pointing to the flyout arrow ▶ next to the font name.

## To change the size of the font names in the Font list

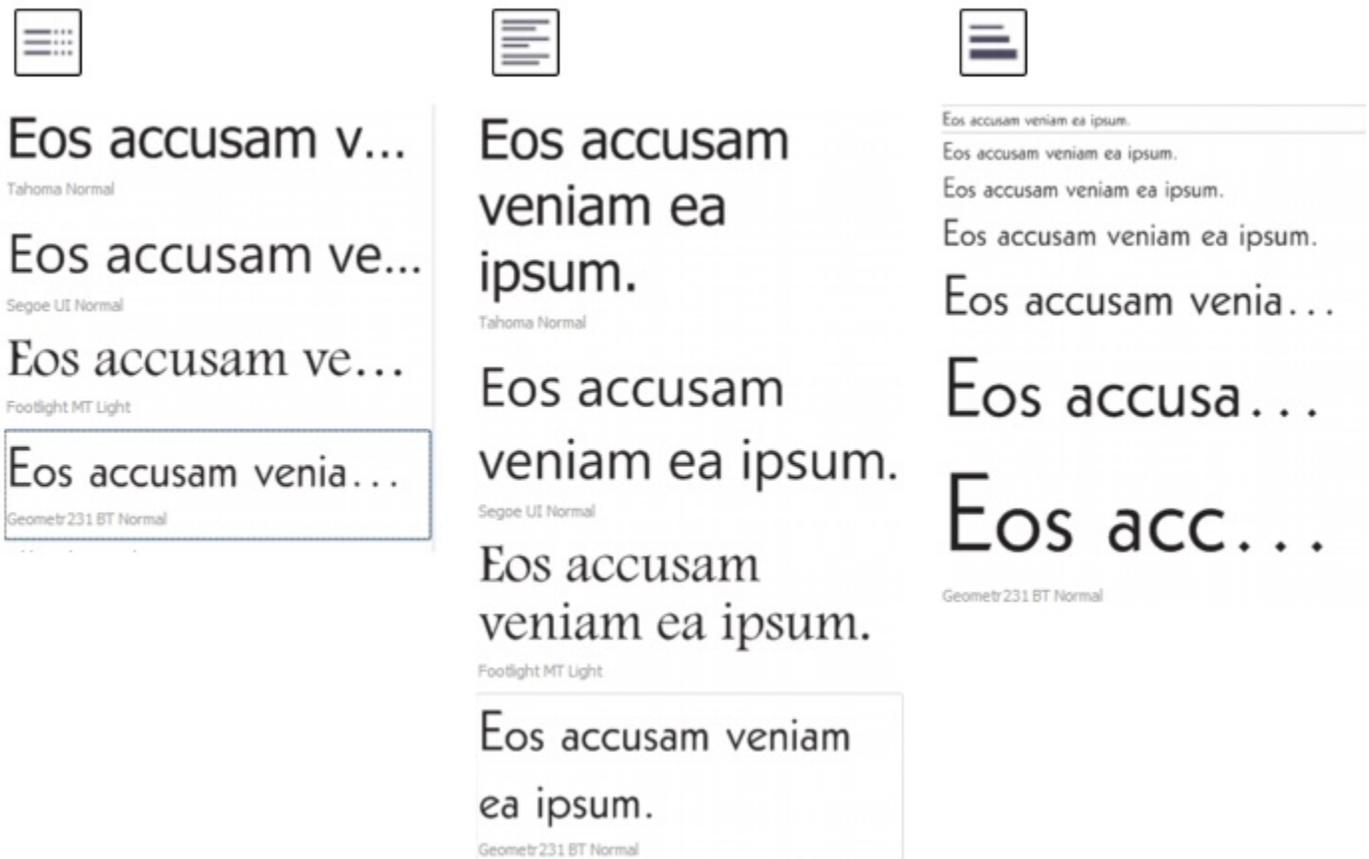
- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.  
The **Options** dialog box appears.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **Text**.
- 3 In the **Font list contents** area, specify a size in the **Font size used in Font list** box.

## Choosing fonts with Font Playground

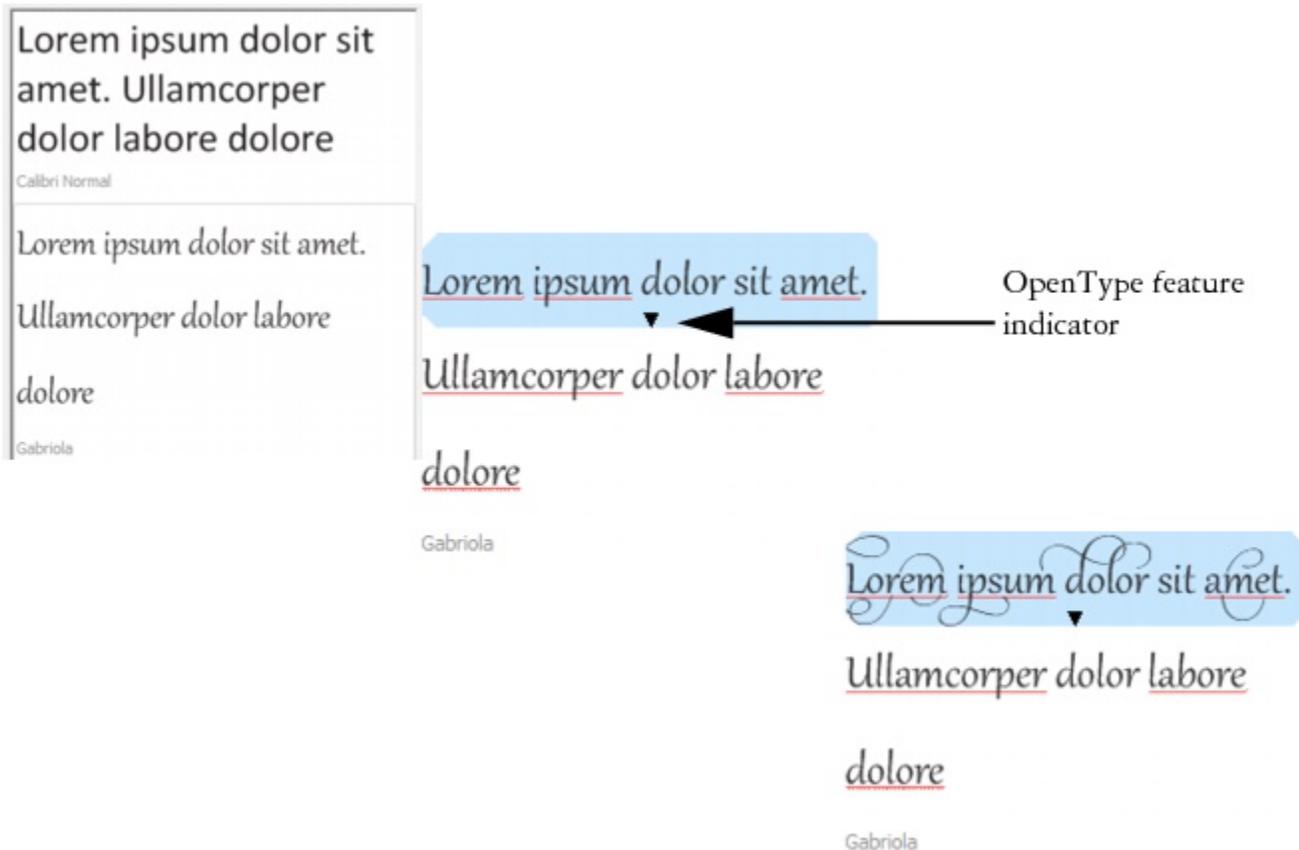
Font Playground lets you view the same sample text in different fonts and sizes to help you choose fonts for your project.

You can preview preset text samples, or you can type or paste text. In addition, you can view samples as single lines of text or multiline text, and you can view a text sample as single lines of text in increasing font sizes.

When a text sample uses an OpenType font, you can view available OpenType features and apply them to the text sample.



Views from left to right: Single line, Multiline, and Waterfall



*With text samples using OpenType fonts, you can select text to display the OpenType feature indicator and apply an Open Type feature. In this example, a stylistic set was applied to the selected text.*

To view a text sample in context, you can paste it where you want in the drawing window.

### To preview fonts with Font Playground

- 1 Click **Object** ► **Text** ► **Font Playground**.
- 2 To change the font of a sample, click the sample, and choose a font from the **Font list** box.  
If you want to change the text in all samples, double-click a sample, press **Ctrl+A** to select the text, and then type the new text.
- 3 To choose a view option, click any of the following buttons:
  - **Single line**  — shows the samples as single lines of text
  - **Multiline**  — shows the samples as multiline text
  - **Waterfall**  — shows the selected sample as single lines of text in increasing sizes
- 4 To change the size of sample text, move the **Zoom** slider.  
If you want to change the text size in preset increments, click the **Zoom** buttons next to the **Zoom** slider.

### You can also

Add a text sample

Click **Add another sample**, and choose a font from the **Font list** box.

## You can also

Paste a text sample in a document

Click a text sample, and click **Copy**. Using the **Text** tool , right-click where you want to place the text sample, then press **Ctrl+V**.

You can also drag a text sample to the document window.

Delete a text sample

Click a text sample, and click the **Close** button in the upper-right corner of the sample.

Paste text in a text sample

Click a text sample, and then press **Ctrl+V**.

Change the order of text samples

Drag a text sample to a new position in the list.

## Identifying fonts

You can easily identify a font in the text portion of a webpage or a graphic design. Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you capture a sample of the font and automatically upload it to [www.whatthefont.com](http://www.whatthefont.com) for identification.

### To identify a font

- 1 Click **Object** ► **Text** ► **WhatTheFont?!**
- 2 Drag the cursor to create a marquee around the font that you want to identify.
- 3 Click inside the capture area, or press **Enter** to complete the capture.  
If you want to cancel, press **Esc**.  
On the WhatTheFont?! website, the font you captured is displayed.
- 4 Follow the directions on the WhatTheFont?! website to complete the font identification.



The ideal letter height for the best search result is about 100 pixels. Capture only uppercase or lowercase letters, not numbers or special characters. Ensure that the captured text is horizontal and that the letters do not touch.

If you want to capture text that is not in Corel PHOTO-PAINT, the application from which you capture the font must be visible on-screen.

## Working with legacy text

If you open a document with text that was created in a previous version of Corel PHOTO-PAINT, such as Corel PHOTO-PAINT X5, you need to update the legacy text before you can apply OpenType text features. For more information, see [“Working with OpenType features” on page 347](#).

### To update legacy text

- 1 Open the document with legacy text.  
An **Update** toolbar appears at the top of the image window.
- 2 Click **Update**.  
To undo the update, click **Undo** on the **Update** toolbar. However, once you make changes to the updated text, this option is no longer available.



You can also update legacy text by clicking the **Update** button in the **Text properties** docker.



Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Working with text in different languages

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can work with text in different languages. For example, if you are using an Asian operating system, you can take advantage of additional text formatting capabilities available with Corel PHOTO-PAINT.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Modifying encoding settings to display text correctly” (page 361)
- “Working with Asian and Middle Eastern text” (page 362)
- “OpenType support for Asian text” (page 363)

### Modifying encoding settings to display text correctly

In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, all text that is added to a document is encoded using Unicode, which determines the character set of the text. When you open or import an image that contains text, Corel PHOTO-PAINT converts the encoding system that was used in the file to Unicode. For example, if you import an older document that includes 8-bit ANSI text that uses a specific code page (e.g. (949 ANSI/OEM - Korean), Corel PHOTO-PAINT converts code page 949 to Unicode. However, if the code page is not specified when opening the image, Corel PHOTO-PAINT uses a default code page to convert the text, which may cause some text to display incorrectly. You can display the text correctly by selecting the affected text and reconvert it to Unicode by using the appropriate code page.

Encoding settings do not affect the display of text outside the drawing window, such as keywords, filenames, and text entries in the Object manager and Object data manager dockers. For these types of text, you must use code page settings in the Open or Import dialog boxes to set the proper characters. For information about using code page settings, see “Opening images” on page 53.

#### To display text correctly in any language

- 1 Select the text.
- 2 Click **Object** ► **Text** ► **Encode**.
- 3 In the **Text encoding** dialog box, choose the **Other encoding** option.
- 4 From the **Other encoding** list box, choose an encoding setting that makes the text readable.

The preview window displays the text according to the current encoding setting.

## Working with Asian and Middle Eastern text

You can type Asian or Middle Eastern text if you are using an operating system that has the appropriate language support, or if you have an Input Method Editor (IME). You can change the font properties of Asian and Middle Eastern text. To limit the changes only to Asian and Middle Eastern text, you can choose the appropriate script type. For example, to change the font size of Japanese text in a document that has both English and Japanese text, choose the Asian script type, and then make the changes you want. This applies the new font size to only the Japanese text, the English text size is unaffected.

In addition, you can mix Asian text with Latin text in one text object and set the spacing in between the two words. For example, you can specify the spacing in between Japanese text and English text that display in a text object. You can also change text orientation if you are using an Asian operating system or an operating system with Asian support enabled.

### To change the font properties and language of text

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click **Object** ► **Text** ► **Text properties**.
- 3 In the **Text properties** docker, specify the font attributes.
- 4 Choose one of the following options from the **Language group and script** list box:
  - All languages
  - Latin
  - Asian
  - Middle Eastern

### To specify spacing between Latin and Asian text

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text that combines both the Latin and Asian text.
- 2 In the **Text properties** docker, type values in the **Language spacing** box.



The language spacing value is based on the percentage of a standard word space. For example, two spaces are represented by typing a value of 200.

### To change the orientation of Asian text

- 1 Using the **Text** tool , select the text.
- 2 Click one of the following buttons on the property bar:
  - **Vertical text orientation**  — changes the orientation of selected text to vertical
  - **Horizontal text orientation**  — changes the orientation of selected text to horizontal



A text **object** can have only one orientation. Changing the orientation of text as you type changes the orientation for the entire text object.

The default orientation for Asian text is horizontal.

## OpenType support for Asian text

You can apply advanced OpenType typography features to Asian text. OpenType features can be accessed from the **Text properties** docker (**Object** ▶ **Text** ▶ **Text properties**). The following table lists the OpenType features that you can use with Asian text provided the features are included in the font.

OpenType feature	Description
Asian widths	Changes the width by spacing or replacing the glyphs  The Centered CJK punctuation feature centers punctuation marks horizontally and vertically.
Asian forms	Replaces the selected characters with a different glyph form. Forms cannot be combined.
Asian vertical metrics	The Alternate vertical metrics feature centers shorter characters vertically relative to full-height characters. This feature also applies to full-width Latin glyphs.  The Alternate vertical half metrics feature centers characters vertically relative to half-height characters.
Horizontal Kana alternates	Substitutes the standard kana glyph with a horizontal kana glyph
Vertical Kana alternates	Substitutes the standard kana glyph with a vertical kana glyph
Vertical alternates and rotation	Substitutes characters with forms suitable for vertical text, often rotating them at 90 degrees
Alternate annotation forms	Applies an annotation form to the selected characters. This OpenType feature applies to both Latin and Asian text.

For more information about working with OpenType features, see the following topics:

- [“Working with OpenType features” on page 347](#)
- [“To apply an OpenType feature to text” on page 350](#)



# Web images and movies

Creating and editing movies.....367

Creating images for the web.....375





# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Creating and editing movies

With Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can make movies. Movies contain a series of images, called frames. As you change the position of [objects](#) in successive frames, the objects appear to move.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Opening and playing movies” (page 367)
- “Creating movies” (page 368)
- “Modifying frame sequence and frame display time” (page 370)
- “Saving movies” (page 372)

### Opening and playing movies

You can open all or part of a movie. Partial movies open and play more quickly, because your computer has less data to process at one time.

The movie controls let you play a movie, rewind to the beginning, fast forward to the end, or stop at any frame. You can also step forward or backward through a movie one frame at a time, or jump to a specific frame.

#### To open a movie

- 1 Click **File** ► **Open**.
- 2 Choose the folder where the movie is stored.
- 3 Click the filename.
- 4 From the list box next to the **Partial load** list, choose one of the following:
  - **Partial load**
  - **Full image**

If you choose **Partial load**, in the **Partial load movie** dialog box type values in the **From** and **To** boxes to specify the range of frames you want to open.

#### To use movie playback controls

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Toolbars** ► **Movie**.
- 2 Perform an action from the following table.

To

Play a movie

Stop a movie

Rewind to the beginning of a movie

Move to a different frame

Move forward one frame

Move back one frame

Do one of the following

Click **Play movie** .

Click **Stop movie** .

Click **Rewind to beginning** .

Click **Go to frame**  and, type a frame number in the **Frame** box.

Click **Advance one frame** .

Click **Rewind one frame** .



You can also use the controls in the **Movie** docker to play, stop, rewind, fast forward to the end of a movie, step forward a frame, or step back a frame in a movie. If the **Movie** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Movie**.

You can also move to a specific frame by double-clicking the **thumbnail** of a frame in the **Movie** docker.

## Creating movies

Movies contain a background and **objects** in the foreground.



*A movie consists of a series of images called frames. The key elements are the background and moving objects. The background is the first frame in a movie.*

### Creating the background

When you create a movie background, you can choose the background color, size, **resolution**, and **color mode**. You can also create a movie background using an existing image. This background image automatically becomes the first and only frame of the new movie file. You can add a frame using an existing image as the background. For information about adding frames, see [“To insert frames into a movie” on page 371](#).

## Creating moving objects

In movies, you can animate objects by moving them in small increments from one frame to the next. An object displays in each frame, unless you make it a permanent part of the current frame by combining it with the background. For more information about creating and combining objects, see [“Working with objects” on page 311](#).

You can view multiple frames simultaneously to help you position an object from frame to frame. Adjacent frames are superimposed on the current frame so you can position the moving object relative to its neighbors.

### To create a movie background

- 1 Click **File** ► **New**.
- 2 Choose a **color mode** from the **Color mode** list box.
- 3 Open the **Background color** picker, and click a background color.
- 4 Choose a frame size from the **Size** list box.  
If you want to use a different unit of measure, choose an option from the list box beside the **Width** box.
- 5 Choose a value from the **Resolution** list box.
- 6 Type a value between 1 and 1000 in the **Number of frames** box to specify the number of frames in the movie.



To create an animated **GIF** for a webpage, choose **8-bit paletted** color mode from the **Color mode** list box. This creates a smaller file to download. For information about the **paletted** color mode, see [“Changing the color mode of images” on page 179](#).

The maximum resolution a color monitor can display is 96 **dpi**. Choosing a higher **dpi** reduces playback performance.

### To create a movie background from an existing image

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Toolbars** ► **Movie**.
- 2 Click **File** ► **Open**.
- 3 Choose the folder where the file is stored.
- 4 Double-click the filename.
- 5 On the **Movie** toolbar, click the **Create movie** button.

The image is the background for the first frame.

### To add a frame using an existing image as the background

- 1 In the **Movie** docker, double-click the frame **thumbnail** preceding the frame to which you want to add the background.  
If the **Movie** docker is not open, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Movie**.
- 2 In the **Movie** docker, click the **Insert from file** button .
- 3 Double-click the image filename.
- 4 In the **Insert file** dialog box, enable the **After** option.

### To create a moving object

- 1 Select an **object** with the **Object pick** tool .
- 2 Click **Edit** ► **Copy**.
- 3 Click **Object** ► **Combine** ► **Combine objects with background**.
- 4 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Movie**.
- 5 In the **Movie** docker, click the **Next frame** button .

If you want to add a frame, click the **Insert frame** button  in the **Movie** docker.

- 6 Click **Edit** ▶ **Paste** ▶ **Paste as new object**.
- 7 Position the object in the current frame.
- 8 Click **Object** ▶ **Combine** ▶ **Combine objects with background**.



*You can position an object in the current frame accurately by superimposing the current frame over adjacent frames. Adjacent frames appear semi-transparent.*

### To position a moving object relative to other frames

- 1 Click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Movie**.
- 2 Click the **Overlay** button  in the **Movie** docker.
- 3 Move the red **Frame overlay** slider to specify the frames that you want to view.
- 4 Move the **Overlay** slider to change the **opacity** of the superimposed **objects**.
- 5 Select an object in the current frame with the **Object pick tool** .
- 6 Position the object in the current frame.
- 7 Click **Object** ▶ **Combine** ▶ **Combine objects with background**.



You can reposition the red **Frame overlay** slider by double-clicking the frame **thumbnail** to which you want it moved.

## Modifying frame sequence and frame display time

You can edit movies by reorganizing and customizing the frame sequence. You can insert blank frames or movie files. You can also move frames and entire movie or image files. You can also delete frames to reduce movie playback time.

The display time determines the length of time that each frame displays on the screen. By changing the display time, you control the speed of moving **objects**. You can set a display time for individual or multiple frames.

### To change the order of movie frames

- 1 Click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Movie**.
- 2 In the **Movie docker** box, drag a frame to a new position in the list.



In the **Movie** docker, a red outline around a frame **thumbnail** indicates the active frame. This is the frame that is displayed in the image window. Active frames can be edited. There can only be one active frame at a time.

Selected frames are indicated by blue highlighting. Selected frames can be moved, deleted, and have their display time changed. There can be more than one selected frame at a time.



You can also change the order of movie frames by clicking the **Move frame** button on the **Movie** toolbar.

### To insert frames into a movie

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Movie**.
- 2 In the **Movie** docker box, click the **Insert frame** button .
- 3 Type a value in the **Insert** box to specify the number of frames to add.
- 4 Enable one of the following options:
  - **Before** — inserts the frames before the frame specified in the **Frame** box
  - **After** — inserts the frames after the frame specified in the **Frame** box
- 5 Type a value in the **Frame** box to specify the location of the new frames.
- 6 Enable one of the following options:
  - **Copy current frame** — adds frames using a copy of the current frame
  - **Use background color** — adds blank frames using the current background color



If you are inserting frames into a partially loaded movie, use the **Movie** docker to determine where to locate the new frames. The **Movie** docker displays the actual frame numbers from the full movie. The movie status bar, located at the bottom of the image window, displays only the total number of frames in the partially loaded movie, not the frame numbers.

In the **Movie** docker, a red outline around a frame **thumbnail** indicates the active frame. This is the frame that is displayed in the image window. Active frames can be edited. There can only be one active frame at a time.

Selected frames are indicated by blue highlighting. Selected frames can be moved, deleted, and have their display time changed. There can be more than one selected frame at a time.

You can insert up to 100 frames into a movie at a time.



You can also insert frames into a movie by clicking the **Insert frame** button  on the **Movie** toolbar.

### To insert files into a movie

- 1 In the **Movie** docker, click the **Insert from file** button .
- If the **Movie** docker is not open, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Movie**.
- 2 Choose the folder where the file is stored.
- 3 Click the filename.
- 4 Click **Open**.
- 5 Enable one of the following options:
  - **Before** — inserts the files before the frame specified in the **Frame** box
  - **After** — inserts the files after the frame specified in the **Frame** box
- 6 Type a value in the **Frame** box to specify the location of the file in the movie.



If the current movie and the inserted file are different sizes, the inserted file conforms to the image dimensions of the current movie. In the **Movie** docker, a red outline around a frame **thumbnail** indicates the active frame. This is the frame that is displayed in the image window. Active frames can be edited. There can only be one active frame at a time.

Selected frames are indicated by blue highlighting. Selected frames can be moved, deleted, and have their display time changed. There can be more than one selected frame at a time.



You can also insert files into a movie by clicking **Window ▶ Toolbars ▶ Movie** and clicking the **Insert from file** button .

### To delete frames from a movie

1 In the **Movie** docker, click the frame **thumbnail** of the frame you want to delete.

If the **Movie** docker is not open, click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Movie**.

2 In the **Movie** docker, click the **Delete frames** button .



In the **Movie** docker, a red outline around a frame **thumbnail** indicates the active frame. This is the frame that is displayed in the image window. Active frames can be edited. There can only be one active frame at a time.

Selected frames are indicated by blue highlighting. Selected frames can be moved, deleted, and have their display time changed. There can be more than one selected frame at a time.



You can also delete frames by navigating to the frame you want to delete and clicking the **Delete frames** button  on the **Movie** toolbar. If the **Movie** toolbar is not open, click **Window ▶ Toolbars ▶ Movie**.

### To change the display time of a frame

1 Click **Window ▶ Dockers ▶ Movie**.

2 Click a frame **thumbnail** in the **Movie** docker.

3 Type a value in the **Frame delay** box beside the thumbnail.

If you want to test the effect of the frame display time change on the movie, click the **Play** button .



In the **Movie** docker, a red outline around a frame **thumbnail** indicates the active frame. This is the frame that is displayed in the image window. Active frames can be edited. There can only be one active frame at a time.

Selected frames are indicated by blue highlighting. Selected frames can be moved, deleted, and have their display time changed. There can be more than one selected frame at a time.



You can change the display time of multiple frames simultaneously by holding down **Ctrl**, choosing the frames, and typing a value in the **Frame delay** box.

## Saving movies

You can save a movie before or after you add the background and **objects**; however, when you save a movie as a an animated **GIF** or to the **AVI** format, objects are automatically combined with the background in every frame and are no longer editable.

If you want use a movie on a webpage, save it to the animated GIF file format. When you save a movie to this format, you must convert it to an 8-bit palette, consisting of 256 colors. For information on converting a 24-bit image to 8-bit [Paletted](#) color mode, see “[Converting images to the black-and-white color mode](#)” on page 181.

When you save a movie to animated GIF format, you can make a color transparent, which lets you see the background of a webpage through the movie. You can also specify the number of times your movie replays.

### To save a movie

- 1 Click **File** ► **Save as**.
- 2 Choose the folder where you want to save the file.
- 3 From the **Save as type** list box, choose a file format.
- 4 Type a filename in the **File name** box, and click **Save**.

### To save a movie as an animated GIF

- 1 Click **File** ► **Save as**.
- 2 Choose the folder where you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Choose **GIF - GIF animation** from the **Save as type** list box, and click **Save**.
- 5 In the **Convert to paletted** dialog box, modify the settings you want, and then click **OK**.
- 6 In the **GIF 89 animation options** dialog box, click the **Frame settings** tab.
- 7 Enable one of the following options in the **Palette** area:
  - **Use global** — uses the same color palette for all frames
  - **Use local** — uses a different color palette for each frame
- 8 Type a value in the **Frame delay** box to specify the length of time between frames.
- 9 Click one of the following buttons:
  - **Apply changed only** — applies only the frame settings that have changed
  - **Apply all** — applies all frame settings

### You can also

Choose a color to appear transparent in the movie

Enable the **Image color** option, and click **Select color**. In the **Select color** dialog box, choose a color and click **OK**.

Refresh the image after each frame is loaded

Enable the **Interlace rows** check box.

Specify the number of pixels a frame is offset

Type values in the **X** and **Y** boxes to offset the current frame from the top left corner of the page. Type values in the **dX** and **dY** boxes to offset each successive frame from the preceding frame.

Specify how the previous frame disappears

Choose an option from the **How to dispose** list box. To make a transparent background, choose **Replace with background**.

Play the animation repeatedly

Click the **File settings** tab, enable the **Loop frame** check box, and enable an option in the **Frame repetition** area.

Specify the page size

Enable the **Automatic** check box or type values in the **Width** and **Height** boxes to set the background size manually.

Save only the pixels that differ from the first frame

Enable the **Save difference between frames only** check box.



Changes are applied only to selected frames. Select all frames in the left window to apply changes to all frames.

When you save a movie as an animated [GIF](#), objects are automatically combined with the background of each frame. This means that you can no longer edit the objects separately from the image.



Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Creating images for the web

Corel PHOTO-PAINT gives you the tools you need to create images for the web.

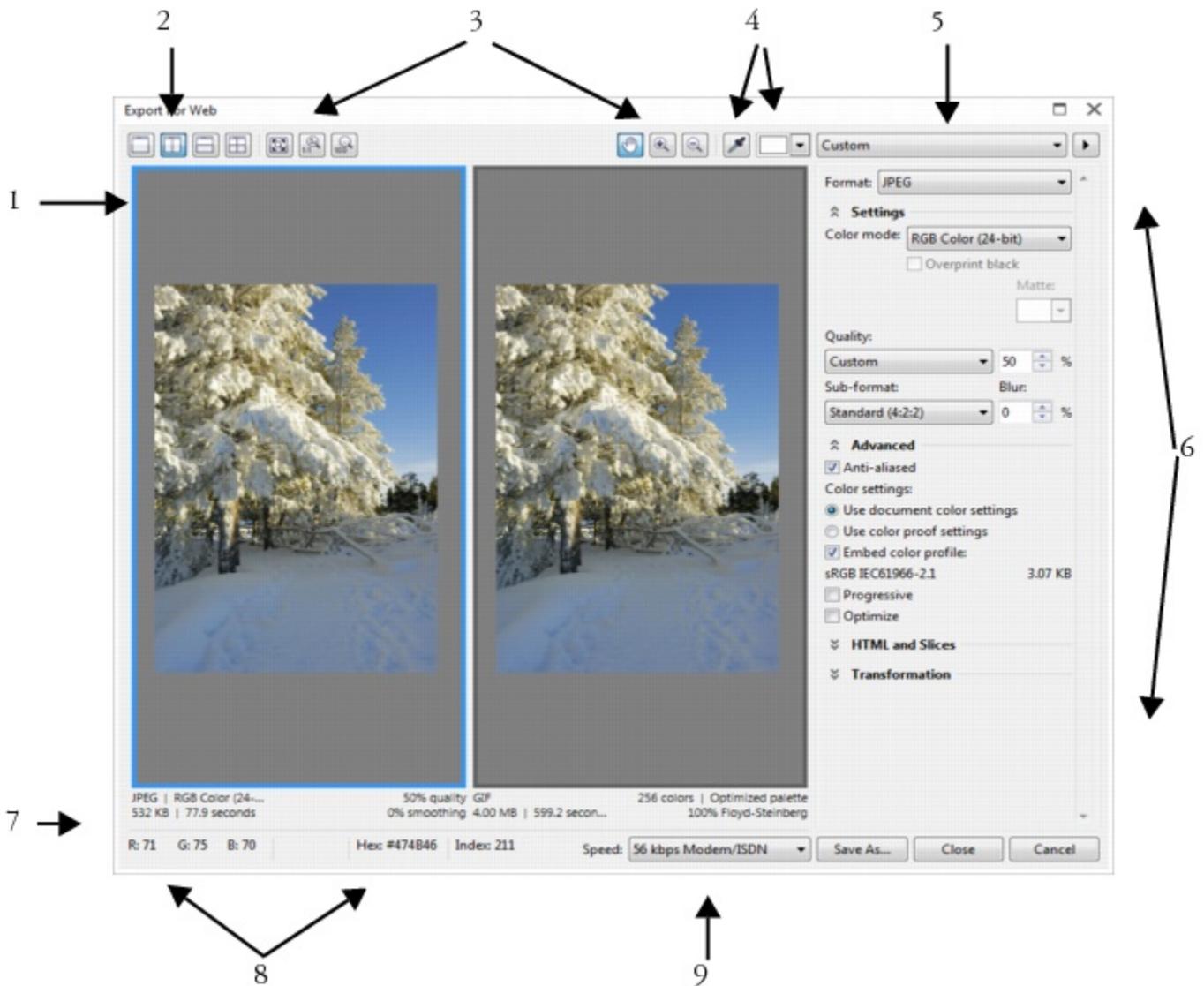
This section contains the following topics:

- “Exporting images for the web” (page 375)
- “Saving and applying web presets” (page 380)
- “Creating palette-based images with transparent colors and backgrounds” (page 381)
- “Creating image maps” (page 382)
- “Slicing images” (page 383)
- “Creating and editing rollovers” (page 386)
- “E-mailing images” (page 389)

### Exporting images for the web

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you export the following web-compatible file formats: [GIF](#), [PNG](#), and [JPEG](#).

While specifying exporting options, you can preview an image with up to four different configurations of settings. You can compare file formats, preset settings, download speeds, compression, file size, image quality, and color range. You can also examine previews by [zooming](#) and [panning](#) within the preview windows.



## Component

1. Preview window
2. Preview modes
3. Zooming and panning tools
4. Eyedropper tool and sampled color swatch
5. Preset list box
6. Export settings
7. Format information

## Description

- Displays a preview of the document.
- Lets you preview the adjustments in a single or split frame.
- Lets you zoom in and out of an image displayed in the preview window, pan an image displayed at zoom level higher than 100%, and fit an image to the preview window.
- Lets you sample a color and display the sampled color.
- Lets you choose preset settings for a file format.
- Lets you customize export settings, such as color, display options, and size.
- Lets you view file-format information, which is available for each preview frame.

## Component

- 8. Color information
- 9. Speed list box

## Description

- Displays the color values for a selected color.
- Lets you choose an Internet speed for saving the file.

You can export web-compatible files using preset settings. This allows you to optimize the file, without the need to modify individual settings. You can also customize the settings to produce a specific result. For example, you can adjust its color, display quality, and file size.

## Choosing a web-compatible file format

This table is a quick reference for choosing a web-compatible file format.

### File format

GIF

### Ideal for

Line drawings, text, images with few colors, or images with sharp edges, such as scanned black-and-white images or a logos.

GIF offers several advanced graphic options, including transparent backgrounds, interlaced images, and animation. It also lets you create custom palettes for the image.

PNG

Various image types, including photos and line drawings.

The PNG file format (unlike the GIF and JPEG formats) supports the alpha channel. This allows you to save transparent images with superior results.

JPEG

Photos and scanned images.

JPEG files use file compression to store an approximation of an image, which results in some loss of image data, but does not compromise the quality of most photographs. You can choose the image quality when you save an image — the higher the image quality, the larger the file size.

## Exporting palette-based images

Palette-based images, such as paletted GIF and 8-bit PNG, allow individual pixels to retain their exact color value. This lets you control the display of colors in the file when exporting. Palette-based images also allow you to introduce transparency to a file by choosing a color in the image and making it transparent. For information, see [“Creating palette-based images with transparent colors and backgrounds” on page 381](#).

## To adjust the image-export preview

- 1 Click **File** ► **Export for** ► **Web**.
- 2 Perform one or more tasks from the following table.

### To

View the object in a single preview frame

### Do the following

Click the **Full preview** button  on the **View** toolbar.

View two versions of the object in side-by-side frames

Click the **Two vertical previews** button .

View the two versions of the object with one frame placed above the other

Click the **Two horizontal previews** button .

View four versions of the object in separate frames

Click the **Four previews** button .

## To

Fit an object in the preview window

Display each pixel in the image data to a single pixel on-screen

Pan to another area of an object

Display an object at its actual size

Zoom in and out

Change the display options for the object in a preview frame

## Do the following

Click the **Zoom to fit** button .

Click the **Zoom 1:1 pixel** button .

Using the **Pan** tool , drag the image until the area you want to see is visible.

Click the **100%** button .

Using the **Zoom in** tool  or **Zoom out** tool , click in the preview window.

Click a frame, then choose different export settings from the export settings area.

## To export a web-compatible image

- 1 Click **File** ► **Export for** ► **Web**.
- 2 In the **Export for web** dialog box, choose preset settings from the **Preset** list box in the upper-right corner of the dialog box. If you want modify the preset settings, you can change the exporting options in the dialog box.
- 3 Click **Save as**.
- 4 Choose the drive and folder where you want to save the file.
- 5 Type a name in the **File name** box.
- 6 Click **Save**.

## To

Choose a color mode

Embed the color profile



You can also export to a web-compatible format by clicking **File** ► **Export**, and choosing a file format from the **Save as type** list box.

You can choose an Internet connection speed from the **Speed** list box at the bottom of the dialog box.

## Do the following

In the **Settings** area, choose a color mode from the **Color mode** list box.

This option is unavailable for the GIF file format.

In the **Advanced** area, enable the **Embed color profile** check box.

## To resize an image when exporting a web-compatible image

- From the **Export to web** dialog box, perform one or more tasks from the following table.

## To

Choose a unit of measurement for the object

Specify the object dimensions

Resize the object to a percentage of its original size

## Do the following

In the **Transformation** area, choose a unit of measurement from the **Units** list box.

In the **Transformation** area, type values in the **Width** and **Height** boxes.

In the **Transformation** area, type values in the **Width %** and **Height %** boxes.

**To**

Avoid distortion by maintaining the width-to-height ratio of the image

Specify the object resolution

Maintain the size of the file on your hard disk when you change the resolution of the object

**Do the following**

In the **Transformation** area, enable the **Maintain aspect ratio** check box.

In the **Transformation** area, type a value in the **Resolution** box.

In the **Transformation** area, enable the **Maintain size** check box.

**To customize options for exporting a JPEG bitmap**

- 1 From the **Export to web** dialog box, choose **JPEG** from the **Format** list box.
- 2 Perform one or more tasks from the following table.

**To**

Control image quality

Choose an encoding setting

Blur the transition between adjacent pixels of different colors

Load the JPEG image gradually in certain web browsers to display portions of the image before it finishes loading

Use the optimal encoding method to produce the smallest JPEG file size

**Do the following**

In the **Settings** area, choose a quality option from the **Quality** list box, or type a percentage value.

In the **Settings** area, choose an option from the **Sub-format** list box.

In the **Settings** area, type a value in the **Blur** box.

In the **Advanced** area, enable the **Progressive** check box.

In the **Advanced** area, enable the **Optimize** check box.

**You can also**

Apply the document-color settings

Apply the color-proof settings to the document

Enable the overprinting of black when exporting to CMYK

Apply a matte color to the object's background to help blend the edges of anti-aliased objects

In the **Advanced** area, enable the **Use document color settings** option.

In the **Advanced** area, enable the **Use color proof settings** option.

In the **Settings** area, enable the **Overprint black** check box.

In the **Settings** area, open the **Matte** color picker, and click a color.

**To specify display-quality options for exporting web-compatible images**

- From the **Export to web** dialog box, perform one or more tasks from the following table.

**To**

Apply a matte color to the object's background to help blend the edges of anti-aliased objects

Smooths the edges of the object

Load the file gradually in certain web browsers to display only portions of the image before it finishes loading

**Do the following**

In the **Settings** area, open the **Matte** color picker, and click a color.

In the **Advanced** area, enable the **Anti-aliased** check box.

In the **Advanced** area, enable the **Interlaced** check box.

**To specify color settings for exporting palette-based web-compatible images**

- From the **Export to web** dialog box, perform one or more tasks from the following table.

## To

Choose a color mode

Choose a color palette

Specify a dithering setting and amount

Embed the color profile

## You can also

Load a color palette

Sample a color and add it to a color palette

Add or modify colors

Choose the number of colors that you want to display

Delete a color from the color palette



You can also add transparency to a palette-based document by choosing a color in the image and making it transparent. For information, see [“Creating palette-based images with transparent colors and backgrounds” on page 381](#).

## Saving and applying web presets

Web presets allow you to save custom settings for exporting web-compatible file formats.

### To save a preset for exporting web-compatible images

- 1 From the **Export to web** dialog box, choose a file format from the **Format** list box.
- 2 Choose the settings that you want to store as a preset.
- 3 Click the arrow next to the **Preset** list box, and click **Save preset**.
- 4 Type the name of the preset in the **File name** box.
- 5 Click **Save**.



You can delete a saved preset by choosing a preset from the **Preset** list box, clicking the arrow next to the **Preset** list box, and clicking **Delete preset**.

### To apply a preset for exporting web-compatible images

- 1 From the **Export to web** dialog box, click the arrow next to the **Preset** list box, and click **Load preset**.

## Do the following

In the **Settings** area, choose a color mode from the **Color mode** list box.

This option is unavailable for the GIF file format.

In the **Settings** area, choose a palette from the **Color palette** list box.

In the **Settings** area, choose a dithering option from the **Dithering** list box, and type a value in the box.

In the **Advanced** area, enable the **Embed color profile** check box.

In the **Settings** area, click the arrow next to **Color palette** list box, and click **Load palette**.

Click the **Eyedropper** on the toolbar, and then click in the image to choose a color. In the **Settings** area, click the **Add the sampled color to palette** button

Double-click a color swatch on the color palette.

In the **Settings** area, choose a value from the **Number of colors** list box.

In the **Settings** area, click a color on the color palette, and then click the **Delete the selected color** button.

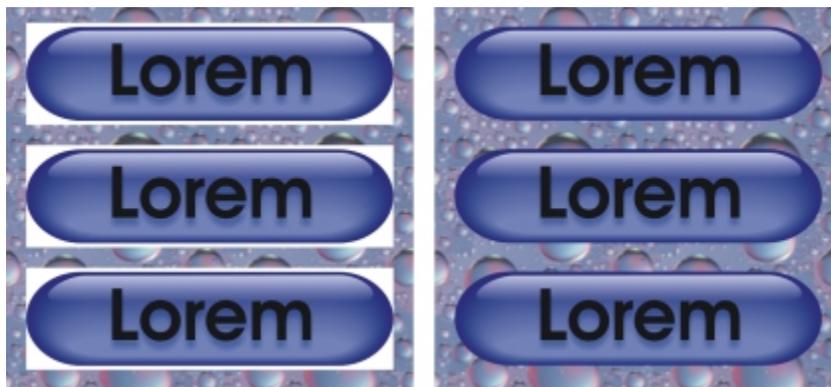
- 2 Click the name of the file.
- 3 Click **Open**.

## Creating palette-based images with transparent colors and backgrounds

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you export palette-based images, such as paletted GIF or 8-bit PNG, with **transparent** colors and backgrounds. **These images**, such as buttons and logos, are commonly used on webpages with colored or patterned backgrounds.

If you place an image with an **opaque** background onto a webpage, the image background color appears as a rectangle on the page. By making an image background transparent, the image background blends in with the page. Transparent image backgrounds also let you change the color or pattern of a webpage background without having to change the backgrounds of the images to match.

The background color must be a single, solid color that is not used elsewhere in the image. You can also make an **editable area** or a **protected area** transparent. For information about defining these areas, see *“Working with masks”* on page 223.



*You can create an image with a transparent background to use on a webpage.*

You can also create transparent backgrounds on images in other file formats. For information, see *“Cutting out images”* on page 241.

### To export a palette-based image with a transparent background

- 1 From the **Export to web** dialog box, choose a paletted file format, such as GIF or 8-bit PNG, from the **Format** list box.
- 2 Perform one or more tasks from the following table.

<b>To</b>	<b>Do the following</b>
Make the background of the object transparent	In the <b>Settings</b> area, enable the <b>Transparency</b> check box.
Make a selected color transparent	Click the <b>Eyedropper</b> on the toolbar, and then click the image to choose a color. In the <b>Settings</b> area, click the <b>Make the selected color transparent</b> button  .
Apply a matte color to the object’s background to help blend the edges of anti-aliased objects	In the <b>Settings</b> area, open the <b>Matte</b> color picker, and click a color.



For best results, choose **None** from the **Dithering** list box in the **Settings** area.

## Creating image maps

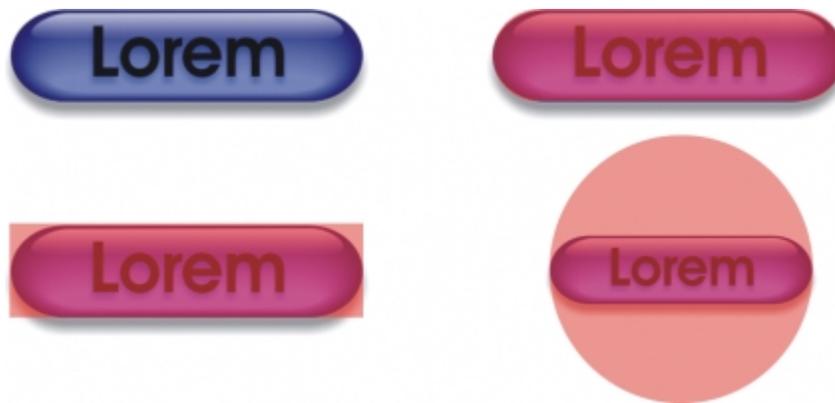
An **image map** is a single graphic with clickable areas, or **hotspots**, that link to webpages. A hotspot is defined using co-ordinates on an image, and an **URL** is assigned to each defined area.

If you want to add **rollovers** to an image, or to assign different file formats or compression rates to parts of an image, you can slice it instead of creating an **image map**. For information about creating sliced images, see “Slicing images” on page 383.

### Creating clickable areas

Hotspots are created from **objects**. You can assign an **URL** and alternative text to an object. You must also specify the shape for a hotspot; it can be a polygon that closely follows an object’s shape, a rectangle that matches an object’s highlighting box, or a circle that encloses an object.

If you want to create an image map using a photo, you can define an **editable area** where you want a hotspot to be, and then convert the editable area into an object.



*The hotspot on the left button is rectangular, while the hotspot on the right button is circular. Clicking anywhere on the hotspot activates it.*

### Exporting image maps

When you export an image map, you must choose one of three different map types: client-side, server-side, or client/server-side. The client-side image map type is most common and is the default setting. The following files are generated automatically, depending on the image map type you choose:

- an **HTML** page for client/server-side, client/server-side, and client-side image map types.
- a separate map file containing the hotspot coordinates for client/server-side and server-side image map types. Client-side image maps do not require a separate map file because they contain the HTML map tags in the HTML page.

### To create a clickable area for an image map

- 1 In the **Object manager** docker, right-click an **object’s** thumbnail, and select **Object properties**.  
If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Object manager**.
- 2 In the **Object properties** dialog box, click the **WWW URL** tab.
- 3 Set the following properties for the object:
  - **URL** — specifies an address, or **URL**, for a webpage that opens when you click a **hotspot**. You must type **http://** before the domain name in the web address.
  - **Comment** — specifies the alternate text that displays in a browser when you point to an object
  - **Define area as** — specifies the shape for the object’s hotspot area
- 4 Click **OK**.

## To export an image map

- 1 From the **Export for web** dialog box, choose preset settings from the **Preset** list box in the upper-right corner of the dialog box.
- 2 In the **HTML and slices** area, choose **Image map** from the **Export** list box.  
If you want to display the image map in a browser, enable the **Display in browser** check box.
- 3 Click **Save as**.
- 4 Choose the drive and folder where you want to store the file.
- 5 Type a name in the **File name** box.
- 6 Click **Save**.

## You can also

Link any part of the image that does not have an assigned URL to a specific webpage In the **Save map file** dialog box, enable the **Default URL** check box, and type a URL address in the **Default URL** box.

Include information about a file Enable the **Include file header information** check box.



Objects will merge with the background when you export the image map.



You can also define hotspot areas for an image map using the **Internet** toolbar. Click **Window** ► **Toolbars** ► **Internet** to open the **Internet** toolbar.

## Slicing images

Image slicing lets you load a large image on a webpage one piece at a time by cutting it into several smaller files. The resulting files, or slices, can be for viewing only or can be clickable.

Slices can only be rectangular. If you want to create clickable areas in other shapes, you can use an [image map](#) instead. For more information about image maps, see [“Creating image maps” on page 382](#).

### Creating slice grids

To slice an image, you must first create a slice grid by placing horizontal and vertical slice lines on the image. You can create the slice grid automatically based on the placement of [objects](#) in an image, or create equal slices based on the number of columns and rows you specify. You can also import or export slice grids.

The slice grid creates an [overlay](#) in the image window. You can still access other features while you work on a sliced image. You also can hide the slice grid and overlay.

### Naming and exporting slices

Once you have sliced an image, you can specify a filename. Individual slices can also be exported to different file formats and optimized separately. The default settings are applied to any slices that are not given specific properties. Slices that are not named are automatically given names based on their row and column location in the slice grid. For example, in a sliced image named “banner”, the slice in the first row and the first column is called “banner\_r1c1”.

An image slice can also be a [rollover](#). For more information about creating and editing rollovers, see [“Creating and editing rollovers” on page 386](#).



*This sliced image features rollover buttons and slices with text that have been optimized separately. The green lines indicate the slice grid.*

### Erasing slices

Once slice lines have been added, they can be moved or erased. To remove part of a slice line, you can select and merge adjacent slices. You can also remove the entire slice grid all at once. When you erase a slice line, you create one slice out of multiple slices. As a result, you lose the settings applied to the separate slices; the new, larger slice assumes the default settings.

### Exporting sliced images

When you finish slicing an image, you must export it. During export, Corel PHOTO-PAINT creates a folder containing the image slices.

If you already exported a sliced image, and opened it again to modify it, you can choose to export only the image slices.

### Optimizing sliced images

You can optimize a sliced image from the Image slicing docker or when you export the image. You cannot specify settings for individual slices at this stage. You can also choose to optimize the whole image and drop all slices and their settings. For more information about optimizing images for the web, see [“Exporting images for the web” on page 375](#).

### To slice an image

- 1 Click the **Image slicing** tool .
- 2 On the property bar, click any of the following buttons to create a slice grid:
  - **Vertical slice** button  — lets you add a single vertical slice line by clicking the image
  - **Horizontal slice** button  — lets you add a single horizontal slice line by clicking the image
  - **Auto-slice** button  — lets you slice an entire image based on the placement of [objects](#)
  - **Equal slice** button  — lets you cut the image into equal-size slices by specifying the number of rows and columns
- 3 Click the **Select slice** button  on the property bar.  
If you want to move a slice line, drag it to a new position on the image.
- 4 Click an image slice.
- 5 In the **Image slicing** docker, enter the following information for the selected slice or slices:
  - **Name** — specifies a filename for the slice. If you do not type a filename, a default name will be inserted based on the original image filename, and the column and row placement of a slice.
- 6 In the **Format** area, choose a file format for the slice from the list box.  
If you do not choose a file format, the image slice is automatically saved to the default file format.

## You can also

Optimize a slice

Select a slice, and in the **Image slicing** docker, click **Advanced**, and adjust the file format settings.

Import a slice grid

Click the flyout arrow , and click **Import slice grid**.

Export a slice grid to use on another image

Click the flyout arrow , and click **Export slice grid**.

Save the file format settings you specify as a preset

Click the flyout arrow , and click **Save preset**.



If you want to select multiple slices, hold down **Shift**, and click the slices.

To switch between the **Horizontal slice** and **Vertical slice** buttons, press **Shift**.

## To display or hide the slice overlay and grid

- Click **View** ▶ **Slice grid**.



You cannot choose to display or hide the slice grid when the **Image slicing** tool  is selected. When the slice tool is selected, the slice grid is always displayed.

## To erase an image slice line

- 1 Click the **Image slicing** tool .
- 2 Click the **Erase line** button  on the property bar.
- 3 Click a line to erase it.

If you want to erase all slices, click the **Erase line** button  on the property bar.



When a slice line is erased, the new combined slice reverts to the default settings. Any settings that were applied to the individual slices are lost.

## To export a sliced image

- 1 From the **Export for web** dialog box, choose preset settings from the **Preset** list box in the upper-right corner of the dialog box.
- 2 In the **HTML and slices** area, choose the **Image and HTML** option from the **Export** list box.
- 3 Enable the **Include slices** check box.
- 4 Click **Save as**.
- 5 Choose the drive and folder where you want to store the files.
- 6 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 7 Click **Save**.

## You can also

Replace existing image slices

In the **HTML and slices** area, enable the **Overwrite existing files** option.

Preview the sliced image in a browser

Enable the **Display in browser** check box to start the default browser and to preview the file with the current settings.



If the **Slices** option is not enabled, the slices and all settings assigned in the **Image slicing** docker will not be applied to the exported image. If you choose not to apply the slices and settings, you can choose a file format to apply to the whole image from the **Save as type** list box.

If you have not used a web-compatible filename, it is automatically corrected during export. If you have inadvertently duplicated a filename, this is also automatically corrected.



If you want to export only the image slices, enable the **Image only** option.

## Creating and editing rollovers

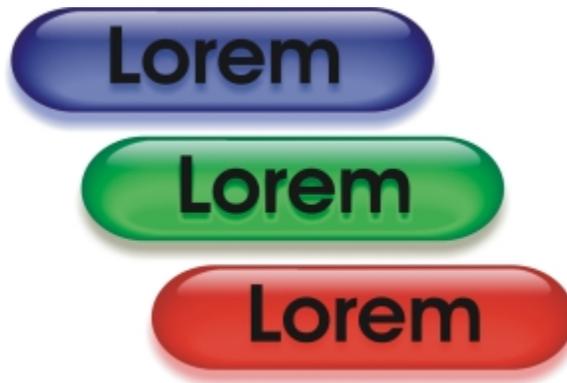
A **rollover** is an interactive image that changes in appearance when you click or point to it. For example, you can make a button change color when it is clicked, or display text when you point to it. Rollovers are frequently used on webpages as navigation buttons.

### Creating rollovers

Rollovers are made by using **objects**, such as shapes, brushstrokes and text. You can use a single object or a group of objects, such as an ellipse with text on it. Rollovers consist of the following states:

- **Normal** — displays the default state
- **Over** — is triggered when you point to it
- **Down** — is triggered when you click it

Each state consists of an object or multiple objects.



*The three states of a rollover: normal, over, and down*

### Editing rollover objects

You can edit rollover states by adding, modifying and removing objects in each state. When you create a rollover, the original objects are copied to the normal, over, and down states. Adding an object to a rollover state adds the object to all states. However, any changes you make to an object are applied only to the current state. You can also remove objects from the current state.

If you want to create a rollover by using an **editable area** or the background, they must first be converted to **objects**. For more information about defining editable areas, see [“Working with masks” on page 223](#).

When you create a rollover, the image is sliced, and the rollover becomes a slice. For more information on working with image slices, and exporting and optimizing sliced images, see [“Slicing images” on page 383](#).

### To create a rollover

- 1 Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Rollovers**.

- 2 Select an [object](#).
- 3 In the **Rollovers** docker, click the **Create rollover from object** button .
- 4 Choose one of the following rollover states from the **States** list box:
  - Normal
  - Over
  - Down
- 5 Edit the selected rollover state by adding, removing, and modifying objects.
- 6 Click the **Finish rollover** button .

Each state retains its component objects, so you can continue to edit the rollover.

#### You can also

Delete a rollover

In the **Rollover** docker, click the **Delete rollover** button .

Modify an existing rollover

In the **Rollover** docker, click the **Edit rollover** button .



In the **Object manager** docker, rollover objects are highlighted, grouped, and have a **Rollover object** icon  to the right of the object name. The **Text rollover object** icon  indicates that the rollover object is text.

In the **Object manager** docker, the **Rollover object** icon turns red when a rollover overlaps another rollover. Overlapping rollovers cannot be exported. You must move the rollover so it no longer overlaps with another rollover object.



You can select a single object to start, and then add other objects to it to change the appearance of the rollover.

#### To edit a rollover

- 1 In the **Object manager** docker, select a [rollover](#).  
Rollovers have **Rollover object** icons  to the right of their [object](#) names.
- 2 Click **Window** ► **Toolbars** ► **Internet**.
- 3 On the **Internet** toolbar, click the **Edit rollover** button.
- 4 In the **Rollover** docker, choose one of the following rollover states from the **States** list box:
  - Normal
  - Over
  - Down
- 5 Edit the rollover state by adding, removing, and modifying objects.
- 6 On the **Internet** toolbar, click the **Finish rollover** button.

#### You can also

Return a state to the current Normal state, so you can start over again

In the **Rollovers** docker, click **Reset**.

Return all states in a rollover to simple objects

On the **Internet** toolbar, click the **Extract rollover objects** button.



When you extract a rollover to simple objects, the component objects are named automatically. It is not possible to edit two rollovers at the same time.



You can edit a rollover by double-clicking it in the image window.

You can also edit a rollover by clicking the **Edit rollover** button  in the **Rollover** docker.

## To add an object to a rollover

- 1 In the **Rollover** docker, choose one of the following **rollover** states from the **States** list box:
  - **Normal**
  - **Over**
  - **Down**
- 2 In the toolbox, click a shape tool.
- 3 Drag in the image window to create a shape.

The **object** is added to all rollover states.

### You can also

Add brushstrokes

In the toolbox, click the **Paint** tool , and drag in the image window to create a brushstroke.

Add text

Click the **Text** tool , click in the image window, and type the text.



For more information about adding shapes and brushstrokes, see “[Working with objects](#)” on page 311. For more information about adding text, see “[Creating and formatting text](#)” on page 343.

You can also create objects from the image background and **editable areas**. For information, see “[Working with objects](#)” on page 311.



All brushstrokes are added to the active object by default. You can also create an object by clicking the **New object** button  in the **Object manager** docker. If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Object manager**.

## To modify an object in the current rollover state

- 1 In the **Rollover** docker, choose one of the following **rollover** states from the **States** list box:
  - **Normal**
  - **Over**
  - **Down**
- 2 In the **Object manager** docker, select the **object** you want to modify.  
If the **Object manager** docker is not open, click **Window** ▶ **Dockers** ▶ **Object manager**.
- 3 Modify the object.

The changes apply only to the object in the current state.



For more information about changing objects, see “Working with objects” on page 311 and “Modifying objects” on page 327.

You can also paint text or change the color, fill, and formatting. For more information about modifying text, see “Creating and formatting text” on page 343.



A rollover can display different text in each of the normal, over and down states. To edit text in a rollover, click the **Text** tool , point to the text until the pointer becomes a cursor, and select the text. Type new text to replace the current text.

### To remove an object from the current rollover state

- 1 In the **Rollover** docker, choose one of the following **rollover** states from the **States** list box:
  - Normal
  - Over
  - Down
- 2 In the **Object manager** docker, select the **object** you want to remove.
- 3 Double-click the **Eraser** tool .

The object is removed only from the current state.



If you delete an object using the **Delete** key, the object is deleted from all rollover states.

## E-mailing images

After you create or open an image in Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can e-mail it as an attachment using your e-mail program. If the image was not saved, however, you will be prompted to save the image before e-mailing it. In addition, you must have an e-mail application installed. If you don't, the Internet connection or the e-mail setup wizard launches.

### To e-mail an image

- Click **File** ► **Send**.



# Printing

Printing basics.....393

Preparing files for print service providers..... 403





# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Printing basics

Corel PHOTO-PAINT provides extensive options for printing your work.

This section includes the following topics:

- “Printing your work” (page 393)
- “Laying out print jobs” (page 394)
- “Previewing print jobs” (page 395)
- “Applying print styles” (page 396)
- “Fine-tuning print jobs” (page 397)
- “Printing colors accurately” (page 397)
- “Printing to a PostScript printer” (page 399)
- “Viewing preflight summaries” (page 401)

### Printing your work

With Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can print one or more copies of the same image. You can specify whether to print the current image or specific images. Before printing an image, you can specify printer properties, including paper size and device options.

#### To set printer properties

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **General** tab.
- 3 In the **Destination** area, choose a printer from the **Printer** list box.
- 4 Click **Preferences**.
- 5 Set any properties in the dialog box.

#### To print your work

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **General** tab.
- 3 In the **Destination** area, choose a printer from the **Printer** list box.
- 4 In the **Destination** area, choose a page size and orientation option from the **Page** list box.

- 5 In the **Copies** area, type a value in the **Number of copies** box.  
If you want the copies collated, enable the **Collate** check box.
- 6 In the **Print range** area, enable one of the following options:
  - **Current document** — prints the active drawing
  - **Current page** — prints the active page
  - **Pages** — prints the pages that you specify
  - **Documents** — prints the documents that you specify
  - **Selection** — prints the objects that you have selected
 If you enable the **Pages** option, you can choose to print a range of pages, only even pages, only odd pages, or both even and odd pages.

#### You can also

Automatically match the printer orientation to the document orientation

In the **Destination** area, choose **Match orientation** from the **Page** list box.

Apply the printer's default page size

In the **Destination** area, choose **Use printer default** from the **Page** list box.



You must select objects before printing a selection.

## Laying out print jobs

You can lay out a print job by specifying the size, position, and scale. Tiling a print job prints portions of each page on separate sheets of paper that you can assemble into one sheet. You would, for example, tile a print job that is larger than your printer paper.

### To specify the size and position of a print job

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Layout** tab.
- 3 In the **Image position and size** area, enable one of the following options:
  - **As in document** — maintains the image size as it is in the document
  - **Fit to page** — sizes and positions the print job to fit to a printed page
  - **Reposition images to** — lets you reposition the print job by choosing a position from the list box



Enabling the **Reposition images to** option lets you specify size, position, and scale in the corresponding boxes.



You can also choose an imposition layout, such as **2 x 2 (4-up)** or **2 x 3 (6-up)**, from the **Imposition layout** list box. For more information, see [“Working with imposition layouts” on page 404](#).

### To tile a print job

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Layout** tab.
- 3 In the **Image position and size** area, enable the **Print tiled pages** check box.
- 4 Type values in the following boxes:
  - **Tile overlap** — lets you specify the amount by which to overlap tiles
  - **% of page width** — lets you specify the percentage of the page width the tiles will occupy



You can include tiling alignment marks by enabling the **Tiling marks** check box.

## Previewing print jobs

You can preview your work to show how the position and size of the print job will appear on paper. For a detailed view, you can [zoom](#) in on an area. You can view how the individual color separations will appear when printed.

Before printing your work, you can view a summary of issues for a print job to find potential printing problems. For example, you can check the current print job for print errors, possible print problems, and suggestions for resolving issues.

### To preview a print job

- Click **File ▶ Print preview**.

To close the print preview, click **File ▶ Close print preview**.



You can quickly preview a print job in the **Print** dialog box by clicking **File ▶ Print** and clicking the **Mini preview** button .

### To magnify the preview page

- 1 Click **File ▶ Print preview**.
- 2 Click **View ▶ Zoom**.
- 3 Enable the **Percent** option, and type a value in the box.



You can also magnify the preview page by choosing a preset zoom level.

You can also zoom in on a portion of the print preview by clicking the **Zoom** tool  in the toolbox and [marquee selecting](#) an area.

### To preview color separations

- 1 Click **File ▶ Print preview**.
- 2 On the property bar, click the **Enable color separations** button .



You can preview the composite by clicking **View ▶ Preview separations ▶ Composite**.

You can view individual color separations by clicking the tabs at the bottom of the application window.

### To view a summary of issues for a print job

- 1 Click **File ▶ Print**.
- 2 Click the **Preflight** tab.

If there are no print job issues, the tab name displays as **No issues**. If there are issues, the tab name displays the number of issues that were found.

If you want to exclude certain issues from the preflight check, click **Settings**, double-click **Printing**, and disable any check boxes that correspond to issues you want overlooked.



You can save settings by clicking the **Add preflight settings** button  and typing a name in the **Save preflight style** box.

## Applying print styles

A print style is a set of saved printing options. Each print style is a separate file. This lets you move a print style from one computer to another, back up a print style, and keep document-specific styles in the same directory as the document file.

You can select an existing print style, create a new print style, or edit a print style and save the changes. You can also delete print styles.

### To choose a print style

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **General** tab.
- 3 Choose one of the following from the **Print style** list box:
  - **Corel PHOTO-PAINT defaults**
  - **Browse**

### To create a print style

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **General** tab.
- 3 Set any printing options.
- 4 Click **Save as**.
- 5 Choose the folder where you want to save the print style.
- 6 Type a name for the style in the **File name** box.



You can also save a print style by clicking **File** ► **Print preview**, and clicking the **Save print style as** button.

### To edit a print style

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Choose a print style from the **Print style** list box.
- 3 Modify any of the printing options.
- 4 Click **Save as**.
- 5 Choose the folder where the print style is stored.
- 6 Click the filename.
- 7 Click **Save**.



You should save the modified settings as a print style or apply the changes before canceling; otherwise, you'll lose all the modified settings.

### To delete a print style

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print preview**.

- 2 Select a print style.
- 3 Click the **Delete print style** button .

## Fine-tuning print jobs

You can decrease printing time by specifying driver compatibility for non-PostScript printing devices. For more information, see [“Printing colors accurately” on page 397](#).

If a printing device has difficulty processing large **bitmaps**, you can divide a bitmap into smaller, more manageable chunks by setting an output threshold. If any lines appear when the printing device prints the chunks, you can set an overlap value to produce a seamless image.

To reduce file size, you can downsample images. Because images are made up of **pixels**, when you downsample an image, the number of pixels per line decreases, which decreases the file size.

### To specify driver compatibility settings

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, double-click **Global**, double-click **Printing**, and click **Driver compatibility**.
- 3 Choose a non-PostScript printing device from the **Printer** list box.
- 4 Enable any of the check boxes that correspond to the settings that you want to specify.

### To choose a threshold and chunk overlap

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, double-click **Global**, and click **Printing**.
- 3 From the **Special settings** list, choose one of the following:
  - **Bitmap output threshold (K)**
  - **Bitmap chunk overlap pixels**
- 4 Choose a value from the **Setting** list box.

### To downsample images

- 1 Click **File** ▶ **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Prepress** tab.
- 3 In the **Bitmap downsampling** area, enable any of the following check boxes and type a value in the corresponding box:
  - **Color and grayscale**
  - **Monochrome**

## Printing colors accurately

Corel PHOTO-PAINT allows you to manage colors when printing to ensure accurate color reproduction. You can print the document with the document colors settings applied or you can choose alternate color settings only for printing. You can also print a document using the color proofing settings that you previously specified in the **Color proof settings** docker. For more information, see [“Using color management” on page 185](#).

In addition, you can choose a rendering intent to effectively interpret the out-of-gamut colors when printing. The rendering intent that you choose depends on the graphic content of the document. For more information, see [“Understanding color management” on page 185](#).

For information about selecting printing device **color profiles**, see [“Using color management” on page 185](#).

## Notes for GDI printers

GDI printers support only two color spaces: RGB and Grayscale. If your document contains colors from multiple color spaces, for example RGB, CMYK, and spot colors, you must convert all the colors to RGB or Grayscale before printing.



You can determine if a printer is a GDI printer by clicking **File ▶ Print** and choosing a printer from the **Printer** list box. If the **PostScript** tab does not appear at the top of the dialog box, the selected printer is a GDI printer.

The following table describes different ways of managing color when printing to a GDI printer.

How to	In the Print dialog box
Print the document and preserve the RGB or Grayscale colors	Click the <b>Color</b> tab, and choose the appropriate color mode from the <b>Output colors as</b> list box.
Print the document with original colors	Click the <b>Color</b> tab, and choose the document color profile from the <b>Document profile</b> area of the <b>Correct colors using color profile</b> list box.
Print the document and convert the document colors to the printer colors	Choose the printer color profile from the <b>Correct colors using color profile</b> list box.

## Notes for PostScript printers

Most PostScript printers support the use of multiple color spaces in a document. For example, a document can contain colors from multiple colors spaces, such as RGB, CMYK, and Grayscale.

The following table describes different ways of managing color when printing to a PostScript printer.

How to	In the Print dialog box
Print the document with the original colors	Click the <b>Color</b> tab, and choose <b>Native</b> from the <b>Output colors as</b> list box.
Print a document that contains multiple color modes using one color mode	Click the <b>Color</b> tab, and choose a color mode from the <b>Output colors as</b> list box.  If the printer supports only one color mode, you can control the color conversion within Corel PHOTO-PAINT.
Print a document that contains only one color mode	Click the <b>Color</b> tab, and choose the color profile from the <b>Output color as</b> list box and from the <b>Correct colors using color profile</b> list box.

## To specify color settings for printing

- 1 Click **File ▶ Print**.
- 2 Click the **Color** tab.
- 3 Enable the **Use document color settings** option.  
If you selected a PostScript printer, you can choose one of the following options from the **Color conversion performed by** list box:
  - Corel PHOTO-PAINT — lets the application perform the color conversion
  - (selected printer) — lets the selected printer perform the color conversion (This option is only available for PostScript printers.)
- 4 Choose a color model from the **Output colors as** list box.  
This allows you to merge all document colors into a specific color model when printing.

## You can also

Convert spot colors to process colors

Enable the **Convert spot colors to** check box.

If you selected **Native** from the **Output colors as** list box, you need to select a color mode from the list box.

Choose a color profile for correcting colors when printing to a specific printer

Choose a color profile from the **Correct colors using color profiles** list box.

This option is available only for certain color models.

Retain the color values associated with the selected color model

Enable the **Preserve (color model) numbers** check box.

## To print using color proofing settings

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Color** tab.
- 3 Enable the **Use color proof settings** option to apply the color settings that are defined in the **Color proof settings** docker. If you want to correct the proof colors, you can choose a color profile from the **Correct colors using color profile** list box.
- 4 Click **Print**.

## To specify a rendering intent for printing

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Color** tab.
- 3 From the **Rendering intent** list box, choose one of the following options:
  - **Relative colorimetric** — for producing proofs on printers, without preserving the white point
  - **Absolute colorimetric** — for preserving the white point and proofing
  - **Perceptual** — for a variety of images, especially bitmaps and photographs
  - **Saturation** — for vector graphics and for preserving highly saturated colors (lines, text, and solid-colored objects, such as charts)

## Printing to a PostScript printer

PostScript is a page-description language that sends printing instructions to a PostScript device. All the elements in a print job (for example, curves and text) are represented by lines of PostScript code that the printing device uses to produce the document. For improved compatibility, you can choose a device-independent PostScript option. You can also select a PostScript Printer Description (PPD) file. A PostScript Printer Description file describes the capabilities and features of your PostScript printer and is available from your printer's manufacturer.

A print job that contains too many **fonts** may not print properly, and a print job that contains too many **spot colors** increases file size. You can set the PostScript options to warn you when a print job contains more than a set number of fonts or spot colors. You can specify the maximum number of bitmap fonts that a print job can contain.

## To select a PostScript Printer Description (PPD) file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **General** tab.
- 3 In the **Destination** area, choose a PostScript printer from the **Printer** list box.
- 4 Enable the **Use PPD** check box.
- 5 Choose the folder where the file is stored.
- 6 Double-click the filename.

### To print to a PostScript device

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **General** tab.
- 3 In the **Destination** area, choose a PostScript printer from the **Printer** list box.
- 4 Click the **PostScript** tab.
- 5 From the list box in the **Compatibility** area, choose the PostScript level that corresponds to the printer.  
If you want to compress bitmaps when printing, choose an option from the **Compression type** list box in the **Bitmaps** area. If you choose JPEG compression, you can move the **JPEG quality** slider to adjust the compression.



Bitmap compression settings can be saved in PostScript Interpreted (PS or PRN) files when you print to a file using a PostScript driver. For information about printing to a file, see [“To print to a file” on page 403](#).

### To test fountain fills for banding

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Preflight** tab.  
If there are no print job issues, the tab name displays as **No issues**.
- 3 Click **Settings**.
- 4 Double-click **Printing**.
- 5 Enable the **Banded fountain fills** check box.



Testing **fountain fills** for banding applies only to linear fountain fills.

### To set color separations and font warning options

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, double-click **Global**, and click **Printing**.
- 3 Choose **Spot color separations warning** from the **Special settings** list.
- 4 Choose one of the following from the **Setting** list box:
  - If any spot colors are used
  - If more than 1 spot color used
  - If more than 2 spot colors used
  - If more than 3 spot colors used
- 5 Choose **Many fonts (preflight)** from the **Special settings** list, and choose a number from the **Setting** list box that appears.

### To choose the maximum number of bitmap fonts

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, double-click **Global**, and click **Printing**.
- 3 Choose **Bitmap font limit (PS)** from the **Special settings** list.
- 4 Choose a value from the **Settings** list box.  
If you want to set a maximum bitmap font size, choose a font size from the **Bitmap font size threshold (PS)** list box.

## Viewing preflight summaries

Preflight checks the status of your file before you decide to output it and provides a summary of issues and potential problems, and suggestions for resolving them. You can specify which issues Preflight checks for. You can also save Preflight settings. For more information about specific Preflight settings, see any of the following:

- To check for issues related to printing a file, see [“To view a summary of issues for a print job”](#) on page 395.
- To check for issues related to publishing a PDF file, see [“To view the preflight summary for a PDF file”](#) on page 422.





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Preparing files for print service providers

With Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can prepare a print job for sending to a print service provider.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Preparing a print job for a print service provider” (page 403)
- “Working with imposition layouts” (page 404)
- “Printing printers’ marks” (page 406)
- “Printing color separations” (page 408)
- “Working with color trapping and overprinting” (page 409)
- “Printing to film” (page 410)
- “Working with a print service provider” (page 410)

### Preparing a print job for a print service provider

You can print an image to a file, which lets the print service provider send the file directly to an output device. If you are unsure about which settings to choose, consult the print service provider.

For more information about commercial printing, see [“Working with a print service provider”](#) on page 410.

#### To print to a file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **General** tab.
- 3 In the **Destination** area, enable the **Print to file** check box.
- 4 Click the flyout arrow, and click one of the following commands:
  - **For Mac** — saves the drawing to be readable on a Macintosh computer
  - **Single file** — prints all pages in a document to a single file
  - **Pages to separate files** — prints each page to a separate file
  - **Plates to separate files** — prints each plate to a separate file
- 5 Click **Print**.
- 6 Choose one of the following from the **Save as type** list box:
  - **Print file** — saves the file as a PRN file
  - **PostScript file** — saves the file as a PS file

- 7 Choose the folder where you want to save the file.
- 8 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 9 Click **Save**.



If you prefer not to prepare PostScript files, print service providers equipped with the application in which you created your work can take the original files (for example, CorelDRAW files) and apply the required prepress settings.

## Working with imposition layouts

Working with imposition layouts lets you print more than one page of a document on each sheet of paper. You can choose a preset imposition layout to create documents such as magazines and books to print on a commercial printing press; produce documents that involve cutting or folding, such as mailing labels, business cards, pamphlets, or greeting cards; or print multiple thumbnails of a document on one page. You can also edit a preset imposition layout to create your own layout.

You can select a binding method by choosing from three preset binding methods, or you can customize a binding method. When you choose a preset binding method, all but the first signature are automatically arranged.

You can arrange pages on a signature manually or automatically. When you arrange the pages automatically, you can choose the angle of the image. If you have more than one page across or down, you can specify the size of gutters between pages; for example, you can choose the automatic gutter spacing option, which sizes gutters so that the document's pages fill the entire available space in the layout.

When printing on a desktop printer, you can adjust the margins to accommodate the non-printable area of a page. If the margin is smaller than the non-printable area, the edges of some pages or some printers' marks may be clipped by your printer.

### To choose a preset imposition layout

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Layout** tab.
- 3 Choose an imposition layout from the **Imposition layout** list box.



The layout you choose does not affect the original document, only the way it is printed.

### To edit an imposition layout

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Layout** tab.
- 3 Choose an imposition layout from the **Imposition layout** list box.
- 4 Click **Edit**.
- 5 Edit any imposition layout settings.
- 6 Click **File** ► **Save imposition layout**.
- 7 Type a name for the imposition layout in the **Save as** box.



When editing an imposition layout, you should save it with a new name; otherwise the settings for a preset imposition layout will be overwritten.

### To select a binding method

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print preview**.

- 2 Click the **Imposition layout** tool .
- 3 Choose **Edit basic settings** from the **What to edit** list box on the property bar.
- 4 Type values in the **Pages across/down** boxes.  
If you want the page to be double-sided, click the **Single/double sided** button .
- 5 Choose one of the following binding methods from the **Binding mode** list box:
  - **Perfect binding** — cuts apart individual pages and glues them at the spine
  - **Saddle stitch** — folds pages and inserts them into one another
  - **Collate and cut** — collates and stacks all signatures together
  - **Custom binding** — lets you arrange the pages that are printed in each signature

If you choose either **Saddle stitch** or **Custom binding**, type a value in the corresponding box.



When you click the **Single/double sided** button for double-sided printing, and you are printing on a non-duplex printing device, a wizard automatically provides instructions on how to insert the paper into the printer, so that you can print on both sides of the page.

### To arrange pages

- 1 Click **File ▶ Print preview**.
- 2 Click the **Imposition layout** tool .
- 3 Choose **Edit page placements** from the **What to edit** list box on the property bar.
- 4 Click one of the following buttons:
  - **Intelligent auto-ordering**  — automatically arranges the pages on a signature
  - **Sequential auto-ordering**  — arranges the pages from left to right and top to bottom
  - **Cloned auto-ordering**  — places the working page in each frame of the printable page

If you want to arrange the page numbering manually, click on the page and specify the page number in the **Page sequence number** box.

- 5 Choose an angle from the **Page rotation** list box.

### To edit gutters

- 1 Click **File ▶ Print preview**.
- 2 Click the **Imposition layout** tool .
- 3 Choose **Edit gutters and finishing** from the **What to edit** list box on the property bar.
- 4 Click one of the following buttons:
  - **Auto gutter spacing**  — sizes gutters so that the document's pages fill the entire available space in the layout
  - **Equal gutters**  — lets you set equal horizontal and vertical gutters
- 5 Click one of the following buttons:
  - **Cut location**  — places cut marks between pages
  - **Fold location**  — places fold marks between pages



If you click the **Equal gutters** button, you must specify a value in the **Gutter size** box.

You can edit the gutters only if you've selected an imposition layout with two or more pages across and down.

## To adjust margins

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print preview**.
- 2 Click the **Imposition layout** tool .
- 3 Choose **Edit margins** from the **What to edit** list box on the property bar.
- 4 Click one of the following buttons:
  - **Auto margins**  — sets the margins automatically
  - **Equal margins**  — lets you make the right margin equal to the left one, and the bottom margin equal to the top one



If you click the **Equal margins** button, you must specify values in the **Top/left margin** boxes.

When preparing a job for a commercial press, the print service provider may request minimum margin sizes, such as for page grippers and printers' marks.

## Printing printers' marks

Printing printers' marks lets you display information on a page about how a document should be printed. You can specify the position of the printers' marks on the page.

The available printers' marks are as follows:

- **Crop/fold marks** — represent the size of the paper and print at the corners of the page. You can print crop/fold marks to use as guides to trim the paper. If you print multiple pages per sheet (for example, two rows by two columns), you can choose to print the crop/fold marks on the outside edge of the page so that all crop/fold marks are removed after the cropping process, or you can choose to add crop marks around each row and column. Crop/fold marks ensure that marks appear on each plate of a separated CMYK file.
- **Bleed limit** — determines how far an image can extend beyond the crop marks. When you use a **bleed** to extend the print job to the edge of the page, you must set a bleed limit. A bleed requires that the paper you are printing on is larger than the size of paper you ultimately want, and the print job must extend beyond the edge of the final paper size.
- **Registration marks** — are required to line up film for proofing or printing plates on a color press. They print on each sheet of a color separation.
- **Color calibration bars** — are color scales that print on each sheet of a color separation and ensure accurate color reproduction. To see calibration bars, make sure that the page size of the print job is larger than the page size of the work you are printing.
- **Densitometer scale** — is a series of gray boxes ranging from light to dark. These boxes are required to test the density of halftone images. You can position the densitometer scale anywhere on the page. You can also customize the levels of gray that appear in each of the seven squares on the densitometer scale.
- **Page numbers** — helps you collate pages of an image that do not include any page numbers or do not contain page numbers that correspond to the actual number of pages
- **File information** — prints file information, such as, the color profile; halftone settings; name, date, and time the image was created; plate number; and job name

## To print crop and fold marks

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Prepress** tab.
- 3 In the **Crop/fold marks** area, enable the **Crop/fold marks** check box.

If you want to print all crop/fold marks, disable the **Exterior only** check box.



To print crop and fold marks, ensure that the paper on which you print is 0.5 inches larger on all sides than the page size of the image that you are printing.



To set crop and fold marks, see [“To edit gutters” on page 405](#).

### To print composite crop and fold marks

- 1 Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, double-click **Global**, and click **Printing**.
- 3 Choose **Composite crop marks (PS)** from the **Option** list.
- 4 Choose **Output on all plates** from the **Setting** list box.

### To set a bleed limit

- 1 Click **File** ▶ **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Layout** tab.
- 3 Enable the **Bleed limit** check box.
- 4 Type a value in the **Bleed limit** box.



Usually, a **bleed** limit of 0.125 to 0.25 inches is sufficient. Any object extending beyond that uses memory needlessly and may cause problems when you print multiple pages with bleeds on a single sheet of paper.

### To print registration marks

- 1 Click **File** ▶ **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Prepress** tab.
- 3 In the **Registration marks** area, enable the **Print registration marks** check box.
- 4 Choose a registration mark style from the **Style** picker.



To print registration marks, ensure that the paper on which you print is 0.5 inches larger on all sides than the page size of the image that you are printing.

### To print color calibration bars and densitometer scales

- 1 Click **File** ▶ **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Prepress** tab.
- 3 In the **Calibration bars** area, enable any of the following check boxes:
  - **Color calibration bar**
  - **Densitometer scales**

If you want to customize the levels of gray in one of the densitometer scale squares, choose a number from the **Densities** list (lower values represent lighter squares), and type a new density for that square.

### To print page numbers

- 1 Click **File** ▶ **Print**.

- 2 Click the **Prepress** tab.
- 3 In the **File information** area, enable the **Print page numbers** check box.

If you want to position the page number inside the page, enable the **Position within page** check box.

### To print file information

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Prepress** tab.
- 3 In the **File information** area, enable the **Print file information** check box.
- 4 Type a job name in the **Print file information** box.

If you want to position the file information inside the page, enable the **Position within page** check box.

### To position printers' marks

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print preview**.
- 2 Click the **Marks placement** tool .
- 3 Click the **Auto-position marks rectangle** button  on the property bar.
- 4 Type values in the **Marks alignment rectangle** boxes.



You can also change the position of the printer's marks by clicking a printers' mark icon in the print preview window and dragging the [bounding box](#).

## Printing color separations

When you send color work to a print service provider or printing shop, either you or the print service provider must create [color separations](#). Color separations are necessary because a typical printing press applies only one color of ink at a time to a sheet of paper. You can specify the color separations to print, including the order in which they print.

Printing presses produce color using either [process color](#) or [spot color](#), or both. You can convert the spot colors to process colors at printing time. For more information on spot and process colors, see "[Choosing colors](#)" on page 161.

When setting halftone screens to print color separations, we recommend that you use the default settings; otherwise, screens can be improperly set and result in undesirable [moiré patterns](#) and poor color reproduction. However, if you are using an imagesetter, the screen technology should be set to match the type of imagesetter the print service provider uses. Before customizing a halftone screen, consult the print service provider to determine the correct setting.

### To print color separations

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Color** tab.
- 3 Enable the **Print separations** option.

If you want to print specific [color separations](#), click the **Separations** tab, and enable the corresponding check box in the list of color separations.



You can change the order in which color separations print, by enabling the **Use advanced settings** check box in the **Options** area. In the separations list at the bottom of the dialog box, click in the **Order** column next to the color separation that you want to change. Chose a new order value from the list box.

If you want to print separations using a color profile that is different from the document color profile, you can click the **Color** tab and choose a color profile from the **Correct colors using color profile** list box.

### To convert spot colors to process colors

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Color** tab.
- 3 Enable the **Print separations** option.
- 4 Enable the **Convert spot colors to** check box.



Changing the **spot colors** to **process colors** does not affect the original Corel PHOTO-PAINT file; it affects the way colors are sent to the printer.

### To customize a halftone screen

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Color** tab.
- 3 Enable the **Print separations** option.
- 4 Click the **Separations** tab.
- 5 In the **Options** area, enable the **Use advanced settings** check box.
- 6 Click **Advanced**.
- 7 Change any of the following settings:
  - **Screening technology**
  - **Resolution**
  - **Basic screen**
  - **Halftone type**



You can set the screen frequency, screen angle, and overprint options for **spot colors** as well as **process colors**. For example, if you have a **fountain fill** made up of two spot colors, you can set one to print at 45 degrees and the other at 90 degrees.

## Working with color trapping and overprinting

When colors are trapped, they are intentionally overlapped so that misalignments of print separations are not noticeable. In manual trapping, one color must overprint the other. Overprinting is achieved by printing one color over another. Overprint trapping works best when the top color is much darker than the underlying color; otherwise, an undesirable third color may result (for example, cyan over yellow results in a green object).

When you are ready to print, you can preserve overprint settings by choosing to overprint specific **color separations**, specify in which order they will print, and specify whether you want to overprint graphics, text, or both.

### To overprint selected color separations

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Color** tab.

- 3 Enable the **Print separations** option.
- 4 Click the **Separations** tab.
- 5 In the **Options** area, enable the **Use advanced settings** check box.
- 6 Click **Advanced**.
- 7 In the **Advanced separations settings** dialog box, choose a **color separation** from the **Screening technology** list box.
- 8 In the **Overprint** column, click one or both of the following icons:
  - Overprint graphics 
  - Overprint text 



The icons appear darker when the separation is set to overprint.



You can change the order in which color separations print by selecting a color separation and choosing an order from the **Order** list box.

## Printing to film

You can set up a print job to produce negative images. An imagesetter produces images on film that may need to be produced as negatives depending on which printing device you are using. Consult your print service provider to determine whether you can produce images on film.

You can specify to print with the emulsion down. Printing with the emulsion down produces a backward image on desktop printers.

### To print a negative

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Prepress** tab.
- 3 In the **Paper/film settings** area, enable the **Invert** check box.



Do not choose negative film if you are printing to a desktop printer.

### To specify film with the emulsion down

- 1 Click **File** ► **Print**.
- 2 Click the **Prepress** tab.
- 3 In the **Paper/film settings** area, enable the **Mirror** check box.

## Working with a print service provider

When you send a file to a print service provider, the provider takes your file and converts it directly to film or to plates.

When you prepare a print job for printing, you can send camera-ready paper output or the work on disk. If you send the work on disk, the print service provider needs either a PostScript file or a native file from the application that you use. If you are creating a file to send to an [imagesetter](#) or a plate-setter, speak with the print service provider about the best file format and printing device settings to use. Always provide a final printout of the work to the print service provider, even if it is only a black-and-white representation. This helps the print service provider to identify and assess any potential problems.

Before printing a drawing, you must choose and properly configure the appropriate printing device driver. Consult the printing device manufacturer instructions, or the print service provider or printing shop that you use to print the work, to find out the best way to set up the printing device driver.



## File formats

Exporting to PDF.....	415
Working with office productivity applications.....	425
Working with RAW camera files.....	427
Supported file formats.....	435





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Exporting to PDF

PDF is a file format designed to preserve [fonts](#), images, graphics, and formatting of an original application file. You can also save multiple images to a single PDF file to create a compact photo album to send to others.

This section contains the following topics:

- [“Exporting documents as PDF files”](#) (page 415)
- [“Including hyperlinks, bookmarks, and thumbnails in PDF files”](#) (page 417)
- [“Reducing the size of PDF files”](#) (page 418)
- [“Specifying an encoding format for PDF files”](#) (page 419)
- [“Specifying color management options for exporting PDF files”](#) (page 419)
- [“Setting security options for PDF files”](#) (page 420)
- [“Optimizing PDF files”](#) (page 421)
- [“Viewing preflight summaries for PDF files”](#) (page 422)
- [“Preparing PDF files for a print provider”](#) (page 422)

### Exporting documents as PDF files

You can export a document as a PDF file. A PDF file can be viewed, shared, and printed on any platform provided that users have Adobe Acrobat, Adobe Reader, or a PDF-compatible reader installed on their computers. A PDF file can also be uploaded to an intranet or the web.

When you export a document as a PDF file, you can choose from several PDF presets, which apply specific settings. For example, with the **Web** preset, you can create a PDF that is suitable for online viewing.

You can also create a new PDF preset or edit any existing preset. PDF file security settings are not saved with a PDF preset. For information about PDF file security options, see [“Setting security options for PDF files”](#) on page 420.

#### To export a document as a PDF file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Choose one of the following options from the **PDF preset** list box:
  - **Archiving (CMYK)** — creates a PDF/A-1b file, which is suitable for archiving purposes. In comparison to traditional PDF files, PDF/A-1b files are better suited for long-term preservation of documents because they are more self-contained and more device-independent. PDF/A-1b files include device-independent color and their own description as XMP metadata. This PDF style preserves any spot or

Lab colors included in the original document, but it converts all other colors, such as grayscale or RGB, to the CMYK color mode. In addition, this style embeds a color profile to specify how CMYK colors should be interpreted on the rendering device.

- **Archiving (RGB)** — similarly to the previous style, creates a PDF/A-1b file, preserving any spot and Lab colors. All other colors are converted to the RGB color mode.
  - **Current proof settings** — applies the proofing color profile to the PDF
  - **Document distribution** — creates a PDF file that can be printed on a laser or desktop printer and is suitable for general document delivery. This style enables **JPEG** bitmap image compression and can include bookmarks and hyperlinks.
  - **Editing** — enables **LZW** compression, and includes hyperlinks, bookmarks, and thumbnails. This style displays the PDF file with all of the images at full resolution, and with hyperlinks, so that you can edit the file at a later date.
  - **PDF/X-1a** — enables **ZIP** bitmap image compression, converts all objects to the destination CMYK color space
  - **PDF/X-3** — This style is a superset of PDF/X-1a. It allows both CMYK and non-CMYK data (such as Lab or Grayscale) in the PDF file.
  - **Prepress** — enables **ZIP** bitmap image compression and preserves spot color options best designed for high-end quality printing. Before preparing a PDF file for printing, it's always best to consult your print provider to find out which settings are recommended.
  - **Web** — creates a PDF file intended for online viewing, such as a PDF file to be distributed by email or published on the web. This style enables the file to be displayed more quickly and lets you use JPEG bitmap image compression and hyperlinks.
- 5 Click **Settings**.  
The **PDF settings** dialog box appears.
  - 6 In the **Export range** area, enable one of the following options:
    - **Current document** — exports the current document
    - **Documents** — exports the documents that you specify
    - **Selection** — exports the objects that you have selected
    - **Current frame** — exports the selected frame
    - **Frames** — exports only the frames that you specify
  - 7 Click **OK**.
  - 8 Click **Save**.

### To export multiple documents as a single PDF file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.  
The **PDF settings** dialog box appears.
- 5 On the **General** tab, enable the **Documents** option from the **Export range** area.
- 6 Enable the check box for each document you want to save.
- 7 Click **OK**.
- 8 Click **Save**.

### To create a PDF preset

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.
- 5 In the **PDF settings** dialog box, specify any settings.
- 6 Click the **General** tab.
- 7 Click the **Add PDF preset** button  next to the **PDF preset** list box.
- 8 Type a name for the style in the **Save PDF preset as** list box.

- 9 Click **Ok**.
- 10 Click **Save**.



If you want to delete a PDF style, select the style and click the **Delete PDF preset** button  next to the **PDF preset** list box.

### To edit a PDF preset

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.
- 5 In the **PDF settings** dialog box, specify any settings.
- 6 Click the **General** tab.
- 7 Click the **Add PDF preset** button  next to the **PDF** list box.
- 8 Choose the style you want to edit from the **Save PDF preset as** list box.
- 9 Click **Ok**.
- 10 Click **Save**.



If you save changes you make to preset settings, the original settings will be overwritten. To avoid this, save any changes to preset settings with a new name.

## Including hyperlinks, bookmarks, and thumbnails in PDF files

You can include [hyperlinks](#), [bookmarks](#), and [thumbnails](#) in a PDF file. Hyperlinks are useful for adding jumps to webpages or to Internet URLs. Bookmarks allow you to link to specific areas in a PDF file. You can specify whether bookmarks or thumbnails are displayed when the PDF file is first opened in Adobe Acrobat or Acrobat Reader.

### To include hyperlinks, bookmarks, and thumbnails in a PDF file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.  
The **PDF settings** dialog box appears.
- 5 Click the **Document** tab.
- 6 In the **Bookmarks** area, enable any of the following check boxes:
  - **Include hyperlinks**
  - **Generate bookmarks**
  - **Generate thumbnails**If you want to display bookmarks or thumbnails on startup, enable the **Bookmarks** or **Thumbnails** button in the **On start, display** area.
- 7 Click **Ok**.
- 8 Click **Save**.

## Reducing the size of PDF files

You can compress [bitmap images](#) to reduce the size of a PDF file. Options for bitmap image compression include [JPEG](#), [LZW](#), and [ZIP](#). Bitmap images that use JPEG compression have a quality scale ranging from 2 (high quality, less compression) to 255 (lower quality, more compression). The higher the image quality, the larger the file size.

Downsampling color, grayscale, or monochrome bitmap images also reduces file size.

### To set the bitmap compression in a PDF file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.  
The **PDF settings** dialog box appears.
- 5 Click the **Objects** tab.
- 6 Choose one of the following from the **Compression type** list box:
  - **None**
  - **LZW**
  - **JPEG**
  - **ZIP**
  - **JP2**
- 7 Click **Ok**.
- 8 Click **Save**.



The **JP2** (JPEG 2000) option is available only for Adobe Acrobat 6.0, Adobe Acrobat 8.0, and Adobe Acrobat 9.0



If you choose **JPEG** compression, you can specify the compression quality by moving the **JPEG quality** slider.

### To downsample bitmap images in a PDF file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.  
The **PDF settings** dialog box appears.
- 5 Click the **Objects** tab.
- 6 Enable any of the following check boxes, and type a value in the corresponding box:
  - **Color**
  - **Grayscale**
  - **Monochrome**
- 7 Click **Ok**.
- 8 Click **Save**.



Downsampling color, grayscale, or monochrome bitmap images is effective only when the resolution of the bitmap image is higher than the resolution specified in the **Bitmap downsampling** area.

## Specifying an encoding format for PDF files

ASCII and binary are encoding formats for documents. When you publish a file to PDF, you can choose to export ASCII or binary files. The ASCII format creates files that are fully portable to all platforms. The binary format creates smaller files, but they are less portable, because some platforms cannot handle the file format.

### To specify an encoding format for a PDF file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.  
The **PDF settings** dialog box appears.
- 5 Click the **Document** tab.
- 6 Enable one of the following options:
  - **ASCII 85**
  - **Binary**
- 7 Click **Ok**.
- 8 Click **Save**.

## Specifying color management options for exporting PDF files

You can specify color management options for exporting files to PDF. You can choose a color profile or leave the objects in their original color space. You can also embed the color profile with the PDF.

If you have **spot colors** in your file, you can either preserve the spot colors or convert them to **process colors** so that the file produces four plates for **CMYK** output.

If you want to export to PDF for the purpose of soft-proofing the document, you can apply the document's color proofing settings. In addition, you can choose additional soft-proofing options, such as preserving document overprints and overprinting black.

### To specify color management options for exporting PDF files

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.  
The **PDF settings** dialog box appears.
- 5 Click the **Color** tab.
- 6 In the **Color management** area, enable the **Use document color settings** option.
- 7 Choose a color profile option from the **Output colors** as list box:
  - **RGB**
  - **CMYK**
  - **Grayscale**

- **Native**

- 8 Click **Ok**.
- 9 Click **Save**.

#### You can also

Apply proofing color profile to the PDF

In the **Color management** area, enable the **Use color proof settings** option.

Convert all spot colors applied in the document to the chosen color profile

Enable the **Convert spot colors to** check box.

Embed the color profile in the PDF

Enable the **Embed color profile** check box.

## Setting security options for PDF files

You can set security options to protect PDF files that you create. Security options let you control whether, and to what extent, a PDF file can be accessed, edited, and reproduced when viewed in Adobe Reader.

The level of security that is available is also determined by which version of Adobe Reader you use to create the PDF file. The encryption levels provided by Adobe Reader have increased over time. For example, if you save to Adobe Reader version 6, or lower, it has standard encoding, version 8 has 128-bit encoding, and version 9 has 256-bit encoding. For more information about choosing a version, see [“Optimizing PDF files” on page 421](#).

The security options are controlled by two passwords: the Permission password and the Open password.

The Permission password is the master password that lets you control whether a file can be printed, edited, or copied. For example, as the owner of the file, you can protect the integrity of the file’s content by choosing permission settings that prevent editing.

You can also set an Open password that lets you control who can access the file. For example, if your file contains sensitive information, and you want to limit the users who can view it, you can set an Open password. It is not recommended that you set an Open password without setting a Permission password, because users would then have unrestricted access to the PDF file — including the ability to set a new password.

The security options are applied when you save the PDF file. These settings can be viewed when a PDF file is opened in Adobe Acrobat.

### To set PDF file permissions

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.  
The **PDF settings** dialog box appears.
- 5 Click the **Security** tab.
- 6 Enable the **Permission password** check box.
- 7 Type a password in the **Password** box.
- 8 Retype the password in the **Confirm Permission password** box.
- 9 In the **Printing permissions** box, choose one of the following options:
  - **None** — lets users view the PDF on-screen but prevents them from printing the PDF file
  - **Low resolution** — lets users print a low resolution version of the PDF file. This option is available for PDF files compatible with Adobe Acrobat 5 or higher.
  - **High resolution** — lets users print a high resolution version of the PDF file
- 10 In the **Editing permissions** box, choose one of the following options:

- **None** — prevents users from editing the PDF file
- **Insert, delete, and rotate pages** — lets users insert, delete, and rotate pages when editing the PDF file. This option is available for PDF files compatible with Adobe Acrobat 5 or higher.
- **Any except extracting pages** — lets users edit the PDF file but prevents them from removing pages from the file

If you want to allow copying of content from the PDF file to other documents, enable the **Enable copying of text, images, and other contents** check box.

11 Click **Ok**.

12 Click **Save**.



The Permission password is the master password for the document. It can be used by the file owner to set permissions, or to open the file if an Open password is set.

Some PDF compatibility options, such as **PDF/X-3** and **PDF/A-1b**, do not let you set PDF file permissions. If you choose such a compatibility option, all controls on the **Security** page appear disabled. To change the compatibility, see [“To select a compatibility option” on page 421](#).

### To set a user password for a PDF file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.  
The **PDF settings** dialog box appears.
- 5 Click the **Security** tab.
- 6 Enable the **Open password** check box.
- 7 Type a password in the **Password** box.
- 8 Retype the password in the **Confirm Open password** box.
- 9 Click **Ok**.
- 10 Click **Save**.



If you set an Open password, it is recommended that you also set a Permission password.

## Optimizing PDF files

You can optimize PDF files for different versions of Adobe Acrobat or Acrobat Reader by choosing a compatibility option that matches the type of viewer used by the recipients of the PDF file. In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can select one of the following compatibility options: Acrobat 4.0, Acrobat 5.0, Acrobat 6.0, Acrobat 8.0, Acrobat 9.0, PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, or PDF/A-1b. The available controls differ, depending on which compatibility option you choose. If you are publishing a PDF file for a wide distribution, it is better to choose an earlier compatibility option such as Acrobat 8.0 or 9.0 to ensure that the file can be viewed in earlier versions of Acrobat. However, if security is a concern, you may want to choose a later version because the encryption levels are higher. For more information, see [“Setting security options for PDF files” on page 420](#).

### To select a compatibility option

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.

The **PDF settings** dialog box appears.

- 5 Click the **General** tab.
- 6 From the **Compatibility** list box, choose a compatibility option.

## Viewing preflight summaries for PDF files

Before saving a document as a PDF file, you can preflight your document to find potential problems. Preflighting checks and displays a summary of errors, possible problems, and suggestions for resolving issues. By default, many PDF issues are checked during a preflight, but you can disable the issues that you do not want to check.

### To view the preflight summary for a PDF file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.  
The **PDF settings** dialog box appears.
- 5 Click the **Preflight** tab.

You can limit the issues to check during the preflight by clicking the **No issues** tab, clicking **Settings**, and, in the **Preflight settings** dialog box, disabling the check boxes next to the items that you want the preflight to overlook.



You can save settings by clicking the **No issues** tab, clicking **Settings**, and, in the **Preflight settings** dialog box, clicking the **Add preflight settings** button  and typing a name in the **Save preflight style as** box.

## Preparing PDF files for a print provider

Printers' marks provide information to the print provider about how the work should be printed. You can specify which printers' marks to include on the page. The available printers' marks are as follows:

- **Crop marks** — represent the size of the paper and appear at the corners of the page. You can add crop marks to use as guides in trimming the paper. If your output has multiple pages per sheet (for example, two rows by two columns), you can add the crop marks on the outside edge of the page so that all crop marks are removed after the cropping process, or you can choose to add crop marks around each row and column. A **bleed** determines how far an image can extend beyond the crop marks. When you use a bleed to extend the print job to the edge of the page, you must set a bleed limit. A bleed requires that the paper you are printing on is larger than the size of paper you ultimately want, and the image area must extend beyond the edge of the final paper size.
- **Registration marks** — are required to line up the film for proofing the printing plates on a color press. Registration marks print on each sheet of a color separation.
- **Densitometer scale** — is a series of gray boxes ranging from light to dark. These boxes are required to test the density of **halftone** images. You can position the densitometer scale anywhere on the page. You can also customize the levels of gray that appear in each of the seven squares on the densitometer scale.
- **File information** — can be printed, including the color profile; halftone settings; name, date, and time the image was created; plate number; and job name.

### To include printers' marks in a PDF file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Publish to PDF**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 4 Click **Settings**.

The **PDF settings** dialog box appears.

- 5 Click the **Preflight** tab.
- 6 Enable any of the following check boxes:
  - **Crop marks**
  - **File information**
  - **Registration marks**
  - **Densitometer scales**

If you want to include a **bleed**, enable the **Bleed limit** check box, and type a bleed amount in the corresponding box.



Usually, a bleed amount of 0.125 to 0.25 inch is sufficient. Any object extending beyond this amount uses space needlessly and may cause problems when you print multiple pages with bleeds on a single sheet of paper.





Corel®  
**PHOTO-PAINT® X7**

## Working with office productivity applications

Corel PHOTO-PAINT is highly compatible with office productivity applications such as Microsoft Word and WordPerfect. For example, you can import and export files between applications, and you can copy, move, or insert objects from Corel PHOTO-PAINT into office productivity documents.

This section contains the following topics:

- [“Exporting files to office productivity applications”](#) (page 425)
- [“Adding objects to documents”](#) (page 425)

### Exporting files to office productivity applications

You can export a file so that it is optimized for use with office productivity applications such as Microsoft Word or WordPerfect. For more information about exporting files from Corel PHOTO-PAINT, see [“To export an image to Microsoft Office or Corel WordPerfect Office”](#) on page 82.

### Adding objects to documents

Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you copy an object and paste it into an image. You can also copy an object and place it into an office productivity document, such as one created using Microsoft Word or WordPerfect. For more information about copying objects, see [“Moving, copying, and deleting objects”](#) on page 315.

You can insert an object into an office productivity document. For information about inserting objects into office productivity documents, see [“Inserting linked or embedded objects into another application”](#) on page 339, or see the office productivity application’s Help.





# Corel® PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Working with RAW camera files

You can open, import, and process RAW camera files in Corel PHOTO-PAINT.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Using RAW camera files” (page 427)
- “Bringing RAW camera files into Corel PHOTO-PAINT” (page 428)
- “Adjusting the color and tone of RAW camera files” (page 430)
- “Sharpening and reducing noise in RAW camera files” (page 432)
- “Previewing RAW camera files and obtaining image information” (page 433)

### Using RAW camera files

RAW camera files contain picture data that is captured by the image sensor of a digital camera. These files are called RAW because, unlike JPEG and TIFF files, they contain minimal in-camera processing and need to be edited and prepared for printing in an image-editing application.

With RAW camera files, you can control the processing of image data, rather than having the camera make automatic color adjustments and conversions. You can adjust the white balance, tonal range, contrast, color saturation, and sharpness of a RAW image without any loss of image quality. In addition, you can reprocess RAW images at any time to achieve the results you want. In this sense, RAW camera files can be compared to an exposed but undeveloped film.

To take advantage of RAW camera files, you need to set your camera to save files to its own RAW file format. Corel PHOTO-PAINT lets you open and import RAW camera files from supported camera models. Supported camera models include:

- Canon EOS-1D X, Canon EOS 650D, Canon 5D Mark III, Canon G1-X, Canon ID-X, Canon EOS 6D, Canon A3300, Canon EOS C500, Canon EOS SX50
- Casio EX-ZR100
- Fuji X-Pro1, Fuji X-S1, Fuji XS50, Fuji X20, Fuji X100S, Fuji SL1000, Fuji X-E1, and Fuji XF1
- Olympus XZ-10
- Pentax K-5 II (s)
- Samsung EX2F, Samsung NX300, Samsung NX1000, Samsung NX20
- Sigma SD1, Sigma SD15, Sigma DP cameras
- Sony RX100

In addition, the Adobe’s lossy Digital Negative (DNG) file format and the Imacon Flexframe 3f format are now supported.

For more information about supported cameras, visit the [Corel Knowledge Base](#).

## Bringing RAW camera files into Corel PHOTO-PAINT

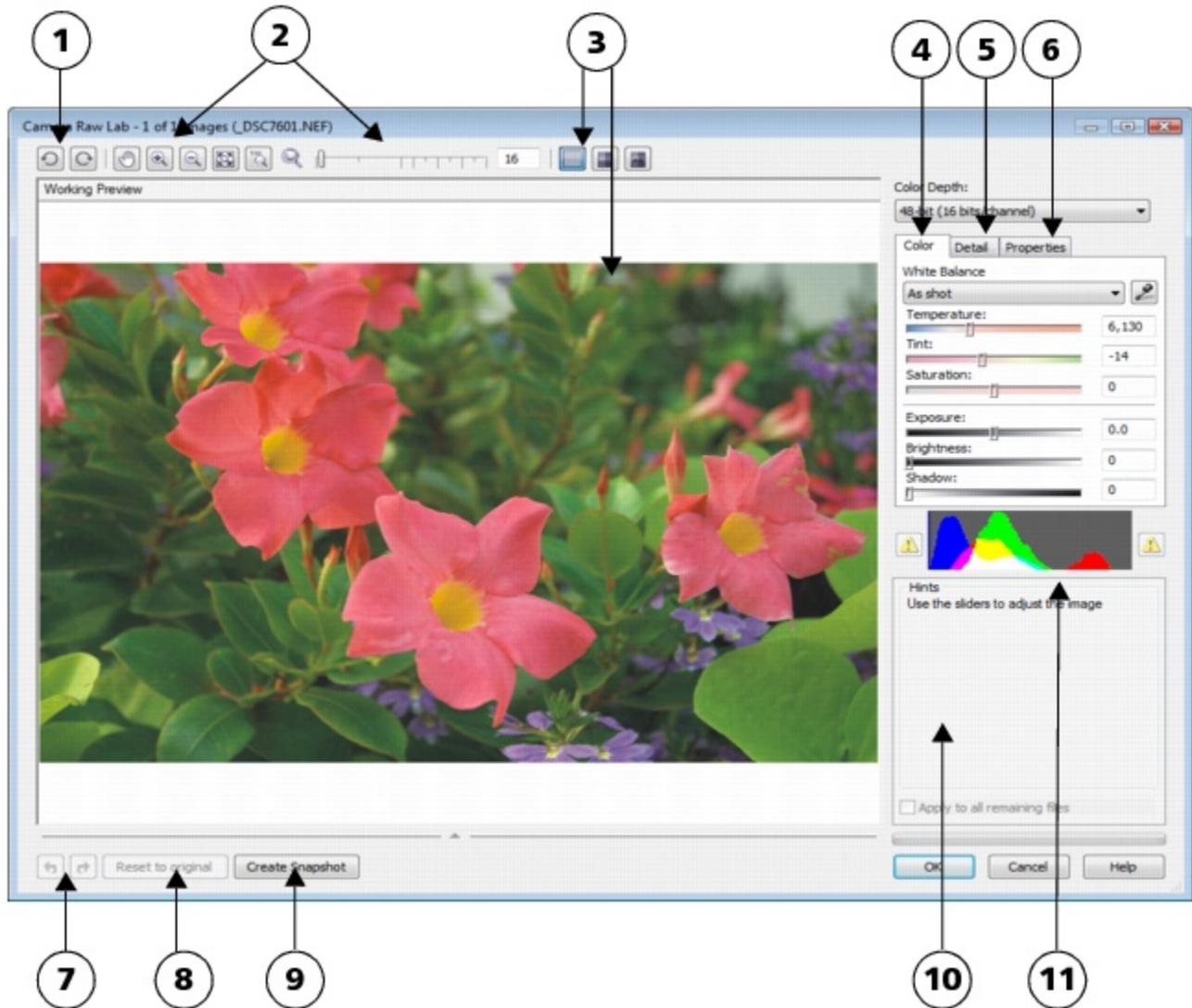
When you open single or multiple RAW camera files in Corel PHOTO-PAINT, they are first displayed in the Camera RAW Lab. You can use the controls in the Camera RAW Lab to adjust the color and tone of the RAW camera images. If you are satisfied with the adjustments of a file, you can apply the same adjustments to the remaining files.

After processing RAW camera files, you can edit them further by using the tools and effects available in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. Then, you can save the RAW camera files as TIFF or JPEG files, or you can save them to any other file format supported by Corel PHOTO-PAINT.

Note that RAW camera files cannot be saved to a RAW camera file format in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. Any changes made to the RAW camera files in the Camera RAW Lab are lost unless you save the files to a supported file format.

### Processing RAW camera files

The Camera RAW Lab includes controls that are organized in a logical order for color correction and other adjustments of RAW camera images. It is recommended that you start from the top of the **Color** page and work your way down. Once you finish correcting the color and tone of your image, you can sharpen it and remove noise by using the controls on the **Detail** page. For information about the settings on the **Color** page, see [“Adjusting the color and tone of RAW camera files” on page 430](#). For information about the settings on the **Detail** page, see [“Sharpening and reducing noise in RAW camera files” on page 432](#).



Camera RAW Lab: circled numbers correspond to the numbers in the following table, which describes the main components of the lab.

**Component**

- 1. Rotation tools
- 2. Zooming and panning tools
- 3. Preview modes and Preview window
- 4. Color page

**Description**

Let you rotate the image 90 degrees clockwise and counterclockwise

Let you zoom in and out of an image displayed in the preview window, pan an image displayed at a zoom level higher than 100%, and fit an image to the preview window

Let you preview the adjustments made to a RAW camera image in a single or split window. To compare the original and the adjusted image, you can display them side by side.

Contains controls that let you adjust the color and tone of RAW camera images to remove color casts and reveal hidden detail

Component	Description
5. Detail page	Contains controls that let you remove noise from RAW camera images
6. Properties page	Contains controls that let you view information about a RAW camera image, such as size, color mode, and camera settings
7. Undo and Redo buttons	Let you undo and redo the last action you performed
8. Reset to original button	Lets you clear all corrections so that you can start with the original RAW camera image
9. Create snapshot	Lets you capture the corrected version of an image in a “snapshot” at any time. Thumbnails of the snapshots appear in a window below the image.
10. Hints area	Displays information about the active control
11. Histogram	Lets you preview the tonal range of the image.

## To bring a RAW camera file into Corel PHOTO-PAINT

- Do one of the following:
  - Click **File ▶ Open**.
  - Click **File ▶ Import**.
- Select a RAW camera file or multiple RAW camera files, and click **Open** or **Import**.
- In the Camera RAW Lab, adjust the color and tone of the RAW camera image. If necessary, you can also sharpen the image and reduce the amount of noise.  
If you selected multiple RAW camera files and want to apply the same adjustments to all of them, enable the **Apply to all remaining files** check box.



You can crop or resample a RAW camera image before processing it in the Camera RAW Lab. For more information, see [“To crop an image while importing” on page 56](#) and [“To resample an image while importing” on page 55](#).

You can rotate the image by clicking the **Rotate left** button  or **Rotate right** button .

## Adjusting the color and tone of RAW camera files

You can adjust the color and tone of an image by using the following settings.

### Color depth

Color depth refers to the number of colors an image can contain. One of the advantages of using RAW camera files is that they can contain more colors than photos saved as JPEG or TIFF files. This greater number of colors makes it easier to reproduce colors accurately, reveal detail in shadows, and adjust brightness levels.

The Camera RAW Lab lets you process the RAW camera files as 48-bit or 24-bit images. 48-bit images offer more accurate color representation and prevent loss of image quality during retouching. Note that some of the special effects available in Corel PHOTO-PAINT cannot be applied to 48-bit images.

### White balance

White balance is the process of removing unnatural color casts from images so that image colors appear as they do in real life. White balance takes into consideration the lighting conditions in which a photo was taken and sets the color balance to produce realistic image colors.

By default, when a RAW camera file is brought into Corel PHOTO-PAINT, it reflects the camera setting for white balance. This setting appears as the preset **As shot** in the **White balance** list box. If you are not satisfied with this setting, you can have the white balance adjusted automatically by choosing the preset **Auto**. You can also apply any of the following presets: **Daylight**, **Cloudy**, **Shade**, **Tungsten**, **Fluorescent**, or **Flash**. These presets let you simulate different lighting conditions.



*RAW camera image with incorrect white balance (left); the same image with adjusted white balance (right)*

In addition, you can use the **Eyedropper** tool to automatically adjust the contrast in an image according to the white or gray point that you sample in the preview window.

If the **White balance** options do not produce the results you want, you can use the following controls to remove color casts:

- **Temperature** slider — lets you correct color casts by adjusting the color temperature of an image to compensate for the lighting conditions at the time the photo was taken. For example, to correct a yellow color cast caused by taking a photo indoors in dim incandescent lighting, you can move the slider to the left. Conversely, to correct a blue color cast caused by intense lighting conditions, you can move the slider to the right.
- **Tint** slider — lets you correct color casts by adjusting the green or magenta in an image. You can add green by moving the slider to the right; you can add magenta by moving the slider to the left. Moving the **Tint** slider after using the **Temperature** slider lets you fine-tune an image.

### Tonal adjustments

You can use the following controls to adjust the tone of RAW camera files.

- **Saturation** slider — lets you adjust the vividness of colors. For example, by moving the slider to the right, you can increase the vividness of a blue sky in an image. By moving the slider to the left, you can reduce the vividness of colors.
- **Exposure** slider — lets you compensate for the lighting conditions at the time the photo was taken. Exposure is the amount of light allowed to fall on the image sensor of a digital camera. High exposure values result in areas that are completely white (no detail); low values result in increased shadows. Exposure values (EV) range from -3.0 to + 3.0.
- **Brightness** slider — lets you brighten or darken an entire image. If you want to darken only the darkest areas of an image, you must use the **Shadow** slider.
- **Shadow** slider — lets you adjust the brightness in the darkest areas of an image without affecting the lighter areas. For example, a bright light behind a photo subject (backlighting) at the time a photo is taken can cause the subject to appear in shadow. You can correct the photo by moving the **Shadow** slider to the right to lighten dark areas and reveal more detail.

### Using the histogram

While you are making adjustments, you can view the tonal range of the image on the histogram to check for any clipping of shadow or highlight areas. Clipping is the shifting of image pixels to white (highlight clipping) or black (shadow clipping). Clipped highlight areas appear completely white and contain no detail; clipped shadow areas appear completely black and contain no detail.

The button on the left side of the histogram displays a warning if the image contains shadow clipping. The button on the right side of the histogram displays a warning if the image contains highlight clipping. You can also choose to apply shading to the clipped areas in the preview window.

### To adjust the color and tone of a RAW camera file

- 1 Do one of the following:
  - Click **File** ► **Open**.

- Click **File** ► **Import**.
- 2 Select a RAW camera file or multiple RAW camera files, and click **Open** or **Import**.
  - 3 From the **Color depth** list box, choose one of the following options:
    - **48-bit (16 bits/channel)**
    - **24-bit (8 bits/channel)**
  - 4 To remove a color cast, select the **Auto** option from the **White balance** list box.
 

If you are not satisfied with the results, you can set the white point more precisely by using the **Eyedropper** tool  to sample a white or gray color in your image.
  - 5 Perform one or more tasks from the following table.

To	Do the following
Simulate different lighting conditions	Select an option from the <b>White balance</b> list box.
Correct color in the image	Adjust the <b>Temperature</b> slider, and then fine-tune the color correction by adjusting the <b>Tint</b> slider.
Make colors more vivid or less vivid	Move the <b>Saturation</b> slider to the right to increase the amount of color in the image or to the left to decrease the amount of color in the image.
Adjust exposure	Move the <b>Exposure</b> slider to the left to compensate for high-exposure camera settings or to the right to compensate for low-exposure camera settings.
Brighten or darken an image	Move the <b>Brightness</b> slider to the right to lighten the image or to the left to darken the image.
Adjust the brightness in the darker areas of an image without changing the lighter areas	Move the <b>Shadow</b> slider.
Show clipped shadow areas	Click the button to the left of the histogram.
Show clipped highlight areas	Click the button to the right of the histogram.



You can capture the current version of your image by clicking **Create snapshot**. Thumbnails of the snapshots appear in a window below your image. Each snapshot is numbered sequentially and can be deleted by clicking the close button in the upper right corner of the snapshot title bar.

To change a color or tone setting one increment at a time, you can click in the box to the right of a slider, and press the **Up** or **Down** arrow keys.

You can undo or redo the last correction you made by clicking **Undo** or **Redo**. To undo all corrections, click **Reset to original**.

## Sharpening and reducing noise in RAW camera files

You can sharpen RAW camera files to enhance image edges.

RAW camera files may contain luminous (grayscale) and color (chroma) noise that is especially obvious in the darker areas of an image. Luminous noise appears as a “white snow” effect; color noise appears as random pixels of different colors scattered against image areas. You can reduce noise in RAW camera files to improve image quality.



Before (left) and after (right) the amount of noise is reduced in a RAW camera image

### To sharpen a RAW camera file

- 1 Do one of the following:
  - Click **File ▶ Open**.
  - Click **File ▶ Import**.
- 2 Select a RAW camera file or multiple RAW camera files, and click **Open** or **Import**.
- 3 In the Camera RAW Lab, click the **Detail** tab.
- 4 Move the **Sharpness** slider to enhance the edges in an image.

### To reduce noise in a RAW camera file

- 1 Do one of the following:
  - Click **File ▶ Open**.
  - Click **File ▶ Import**.
- 2 Select a RAW camera file or multiple RAW camera files, and click **Open** or **Import**.
- 3 Click the **Detail** tab.
- 4 Move any of the following sliders to the right:
  - **Luminance noise** — to reduce the amount of luminance noise
  - **Color noise** — to reduce the amount of color noise. Note that higher settings may decrease the color accuracy of an image.



Adjusting both the **Luminance noise** and **Color noise** settings produces better results.

## Previewing RAW camera files and obtaining image information

By previewing RAW camera files in various ways, you can evaluate the color and tone adjustments you make. For example, you can rotate images, pan to a new area, zoom in or out, and choose how to display the processed image in the preview window.

You can obtain information about the color mode, size, and resolution of a RAW camera file. In addition, you can obtain information about the camera and camera settings used when the photo was taken.

### To preview a RAW camera file

- 1 Do one of the following:
  - Click **File ▶ Open**.
  - Click **File ▶ Import**.
- 2 Select a RAW camera file or multiple RAW camera files, and click **Open** or **Import**.

3 In the Camera RAW Lab, perform a task from the following table.

**To**

Pan to another area of an image

Zoom in and out

Fit an image in the preview window

Display an image at its actual size

View the corrected image in a single preview window

View the corrected image in one window and the original image in another window

View the image in one window with a divider between the original and corrected versions

**Do the following**

Using the **Pan** tool , drag the image until the area that you want to see is visible.

Using the **Zoom in** tool  or **Zoom out** tool , click in the preview window.

You can also zoom in and out by dragging the **Zoom** slider.

Click the **Zoom to fit**  button.

Click the **100%**  button.

Click the **Full preview** button .

Click the **Before and after full preview** button .

Click the **Before and after split preview** button . Move your pointer over the dashed divider line, and drag to move the divider to another area of the image.

**To obtain information about a RAW camera file**

1 Do one of the following:

- Click **File** ► **Open**.
- Click **File** ► **Import**.

2 Select a RAW camera file, and click **Open** or **Import**.

3 In the Camera RAW Lab, click the **Properties** tab, and view any of the properties that are available for the selected RAW camera file, such as color space, camera manufacturer and model, focal length, exposure time, and ISO speed ratings.



Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Supported file formats

A file format defines how an application stores information in a file. If you want to use a file created in a different application than the one you are currently using, you must import that file. Conversely, if you create a file in one application and want to use it in another application, you must export the file to a different file format.

When you name a file, an application automatically appends a filename extension, usually three characters in length (for example, **.cdr**, **.bmp**, **.tif**, and **.eps**). This filename extension helps you and the computer differentiate between files of different formats.

The following list includes all file formats used in this application. Note that not all file format filters are installed by default. If you cannot export or import a file from the list, you need to update your installation of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7. For more information, see “To modify or repair a CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 installation” on page 6.

- “Adobe Illustrator (AI)” (page 436)
- “Windows Bitmap (BMP)” (page 436)
- “OS/2 Bitmap (BMP)” (page 437)
- “Computer Graphics Metafile (CGM)” (page 437)
- “CorelDRAW (CDR)” (page 438)
- “Corel Presentation Exchange (CMX)” (page 438)
- “Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT)” (page 438)
- “Cursor Resource (CUR)” (page 439)
- “AutoCAD Drawing Database (DWG) and AutoCAD Drawing Interchange Format (DXF)” (page 439)
- “Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)” (page 440)
- “PostScript (PS or PRN)” (page 442)
- “GIF” (page 443)
- “JPEG (JPG)” (page 444)
- “JPEG 2000 (JP2)” (page 444)
- “Kodak Photo CD Image (PCD)” (page 446)
- “PICT (PCT)” (page 447)
- “PaintBrush (PCX)” (page 447)
- “HPGL Plotter File (PLT)” (page 448)
- “Portable Network Graphics (PNG)” (page 449)
- “Adobe Photoshop (PSD)” (page 450)
- “Corel Painter (RIF)” (page 451)
- “TARGA (TGA)” (page 452)
- “TIFF” (page 453)
- “Corel Paint Shop Pro (PSP)” (page 453)

- “WordPerfect Graphic (WPG)” (page 454)
- “RAW camera file formats” (page 454)
- “Wavelet Compressed Bitmap (WI)” (page 454)
- “Windows Metafile Format (WMF)” (page 454)
- “Additional file formats” (page 455)
- “Recommended formats for importing graphics” (page 455)
- “Recommended formats for exporting graphics” (page 456)

## Adobe Illustrator (AI)

The Adobe Illustrator (AI) file format was developed by Adobe Systems, Incorporated for the Macintosh and Windows platforms. It is primarily vector-based, although later versions support bitmap information.

### To import an Adobe Illustrator file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Click the filename.
- 4 Click **Import**.
- 5 Click in the image window where you want to import the file.
- 6 In the **Convert to bitmap** dialog box, adjust the width, height, resolution, color mode, or any of the other settings.

### Adobe Illustrator (AI) technical notes

#### Importing an AI file

- You can import AI file formats up to and including Adobe Illustrator CS4.
- Because multiple-pages are not supported in Corel PHOTO-PAINT, all Artboard objects are placed on one page.

## Windows Bitmap (BMP)

The Windows [bitmap](#) (BMP) file format was developed as a standard for representing graphic images as bitmaps on the Windows operating system.

### To import a bitmap file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **BMP - Windows bitmap (\*.bmp; \*.dib; \*.rle)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.

### To save to a bitmap file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Save as**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Choose **BMP - Windows bitmap** from the **Save as type** list box.
- 4 Type a filename in the **File name** list box.
- 5 Click **Save**.

## Windows Bitmap (BMP) technical notes

### Importing a BMP file

- You can import Windows Bitmap files conforming to the Windows and OS/2 BMP specifications.
- Windows Bitmap files may be [black-and-white](#), 16 colors, [grayscale](#), [paletted](#), or [RGB color \(24-bit\)](#), and print accordingly, depending on your printer.
- Run-length encoding (RLE) compression may be used on all bitmaps, except [RGB color \(24-bit\)](#), and [black-and-white bitmaps](#).
- The resolution ranges from 72 to 300 [dpi](#), or higher if you choose custom settings.
- The maximum image size is 64,535 · 64,535 [pixels](#).

### Exporting a BMP file

- Because raster images such as [bitmaps](#) are mapped [pixel](#) by [pixel](#) to the page, the [resolution](#) does not increase. Instead, your bitmap appears jagged, with an apparent loss of resolution.

## OS/2 Bitmap (BMP)

This type of bitmap file is designed for the OS/2 operating system. The OS/2 Bitmap file format supports a maximum image size of 64,535 · 64,535 pixels. OS/2 uses Run-length encoding (RLE) compression.

### OS/2 Bitmap (BMP) technical notes

- Corel programs support Standard Version 1.3 and Enhanced Version 2.0, or later versions of the OS/2 Bitmap file format.
- Corel programs support the following color depths when importing and exporting BMP files: 1-bit black and white, 256 shade (8-bit) grayscale, 16-color (4-bit) and 256-color (8-bit) paletted, and 24-bit RGB.

## Computer Graphics Metafile (CGM)

Computer Graphics Metafile (CGM) is an open, platform-independent metafile format used for storing and exchanging two-dimensional graphics. It supports [RGB](#) color. CGM files can contain both [vector graphics](#) and [bitmaps](#), but they usually contain one graphic type or the other — rarely both.

### To import a CGM file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **CGM - Computer Graphics Metafile (\*.cgm)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.

The **Convert to bitmap** dialog box appears.

### Computer Graphics Metafile (CGM) technical notes

- You can import files formatted in CGM versions 1, 3, and 4.
- The CGM filter accepts only markers supported by the CGM file format standard. Private-use markers are ignored.
- If the CGM file contains a [font](#) that is not on your computer, the [PANOSE font-matching](#) dialog box lets you replace the font with an available one.

## CorelDRAW (CDR)

CorelDRAW (CDR) files are primarily [vector graphic](#) drawings. Vectors define a picture as a list of graphic primitives (rectangles, lines, text, arcs, and ellipses). Vectors are mapped point by point to the page, so if you reduce or increase the size of a vector graphic, the original image will not be distorted.

Vector graphics are created and edited in graphics design applications, such as CorelDRAW, but you can also edit vector graphics in image-editing applications such as Corel PHOTO-PAINT. You can use vector images of various formats in desktop publishing programs.

### To import a CorelDRAW file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Click the filename.
- 4 Click the image window.
- 5 In the **Convert to bitmap** dialog box, adjust the width, height, resolution, color mode, or any of the other settings.

### CorelDRAW (CDR) technical notes

- Imported CorelDRAW files are [rasterized](#).
- Linked [symbols](#) are converted to internal symbols.

## Corel Presentation Exchange (CMX)

Corel Presentation Exchange (CMX) is a metafile format that supports [bitmap](#) and vector information and the full range of [PANTONE](#), [RGB](#), and [CMYK](#) colors. Files saved in CMX format can be opened and edited in other Corel applications.

### To import a Corel Presentation Exchange file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **CMX - Corel Presentation Exchange (\*.cmx)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click the image window.
- 7 In the **Convert to bitmap** dialog box, adjust the width, height, resolution, color mode, or any of the other settings.

### Corel Presentation Exchange (CMX) technical notes

- The following versions are supported: 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, X3, X4, X5, and X6.
- Corel Presentation Exchange (CMX) files are imported as [bitmaps](#) in Corel PHOTO-PAINT.

## Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT)

Files saved to the Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT) file format are [bitmaps](#) that represent shapes as [pixels](#) arranged to form an image. When you save a graphic to the Corel PHOTO-PAINT format, masks, floating objects, and lenses are saved with the image.

### To export a Corel PHOTO-PAINT file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Export**.

- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Choose **CPT - Corel PHOTO-PAINT image** from the **Save as type** list box.
- 4 Type a filename in the **File name** list box.
- 5 Click **Export**.

### Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT) technical notes

- This filter is available in CorelDRAW, Corel PHOTO-PAINT, and Corel DESIGNER.
- Corel PHOTO-PAINT files may be [black-and-white](#), [grayscale](#), [paletted](#), [CMYK color \(32-bit\)](#), [RGB color \(24-bit\)](#), or [Lab](#).

### Cursor Resource (CUR)

The Windows 3.x/NT Cursor Resource (.cur files) file format is used to create cursors for Windows 3.1, Windows NT, and Windows 95 interfaces. It supports cursor graphic elements that are used in Windows pointers. You can select a color for Transparent and Inverse masks.

The Windows 3.x/NT Cursor Resource file format supports a maximum image size of 32 · 32 pixels.

### Cursor Resource (CUR) technical notes

- Corel programs support the following color depths when importing .cur files: 1-bit black-and-white, 16-color (4-bit) paletted, and 256-color (8-bit) paletted.

### AutoCAD Drawing Database (DWG) and AutoCAD Drawing Interchange Format (DXF)

AutoCAD Drawing Database (DWG) files are vector files used as a native format for AutoCAD drawings.

The Drawing Interchange Format (DXF) is a tagged data representation of the information contained in an AutoCAD drawing file. The Drawing Interchange format is a native file format of AutoCAD. It has become a standard for exchanging CAD drawings and is supported by many CAD applications. The Drawing Interchange format is vector-based and supports up to 256 colors.

### To import an AutoCAD Drawing Database file (DWG) or AutoCAD Drawing Interchange Format (DXF)

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **DWG - AutoCAD (\*.dwg)** or **DXF - AutoCAD (\*.dxf)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click the image window.
- 7 In the **Convert to bitmap** dialog box, adjust the width, height, resolution, color mode, or any of the other settings.



If your computer is missing a font that is included in a file you are importing, a [PANOSE font matching](#) dialog box appears and lets you substitute the font with a similar font.

### AutoCAD Data Interchange Format (DXF) technical notes

- The program supports AutoCAD files from version R2.5 to 2013.

### Importing an AutoCAD DXF file

- Model space pages are imported as master pages.
- Solid and trace entities are filled.
- A point is imported as an ellipse of minimum size.

- Files exported as “Entities only” may not appear as expected in the Corel program because of a lack of header information.
- Justification of text entries may not be preserved, especially if fonts are replaced in the imported files. For best results, avoid justification of text.
- If the DXF file contains a font that is not on the user’s computer, the **PANOSE font matching** dialog box lets the user replace the font with an available one.

### AutoCAD Drawing Database (DWG) technical notes

- Corel PHOTO-PAINT can import AutoCAD files from version R2.5 to 2013.
- If the DWG file contains a font that is not on your computer, the **PANOSE font matching** dialog box lets you replace the font with an available one.

## Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)

EPS files can contain text, vector graphics, and bitmaps and are intended to be included (encapsulated) in other documents. Unlike other PostScript files, which can contain multiple pages, an EPS file is always a single page.

EPS files usually contain a preview image (header) that lets you view the file content without the help of a PostScript interpreter. An EPS file without a preview image is displayed as a gray box in Corel applications.

### To import an encapsulated PostScript file

- 1 Click **File ▶ Import**.  
The **File ▶ Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open an EPS file as an image, click **File ▶ Open**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **PS, EPS, PRN - PostScript (\*.ps; \*.eps; \*.prn)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 Click the image window.
- 8 In the **Convert to bitmap** dialog box, adjust the width, height, resolution, color mode, or any of the other settings.

### To save to an encapsulated PostScript file

- 1 Click **File ▶ Export**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Choose **EPS - Encapsulated PostScript** from the **Save as type** list box.
- 4 Type a filename in the **File name** list box.
- 5 Click **Export**.
- 6 In the **EPS export** dialog box, adjust any of the settings.

### To set general exporting options

- In the EPS export dialog box, perform one or more tasks from the following table:

To	Do the following
Specify the color mode for exporting to eps	In the <b>Color management</b> area, choose an option from the <b>Output colors</b> as list box: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Native</li> <li>• RGB</li> </ul>

To	<p><b>Do the following</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>CMYK</b></li> <li>• <b>Grayscale</b></li> </ul> <p>If you choose the <b>Native</b> option, all objects preserve the color mode in which they were created, for example RGB, CMYK, Grayscale, or spot.</p>
Convert spot colors	In the <b>Color management</b> area, enable the <b>Convert spot colors to</b> check box, and select an option from the list box.
Choose a file format for previewing the PostScript image	<p>In the <b>Preview image</b> area, choose one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None</b></li> <li>• <b>TIFF</b></li> <li>• <b>WMF</b></li> </ul> <p>If you choose the TIFF format, choose a color mode and resolution.</p>
Choose a compatibility option	From the <b>Compatibility</b> list box, choose a PostScript level that is supported by the printer or the application with which you will be printing or displaying the file.



If you choose the 8-bit TIFF format for previewing images, you can make the background of the bitmap transparent by enabling the **Transparent background** check box in the **Preview image** area.

### To specify clipping options

- 1 In the **Clipping** area of the **EPS export** dialog box, enable the **Clip to** check box.
- 2 Enable any of the following options:
  - **Mask** — lets you save the contents of the mask area to an EPS file
  - **Clipping path** — lets you save the contents of either the active path or one of the paths listed in the **MRU** list box
- 3 In the **Flatness** box, type a value to set the accuracy with which curved path segments are rendered on an output device, such as a printer.

If you want to permanently remove the sections of the image that are outside the mask or path, enable the **Discard image data outside clipping region** check box.

### To install Ghostscript

- 1 Close any open programs.
- 2 On the Windows taskbar, click **Start ► Control panel**.
- 3 Click **Uninstall a program**.
- 4 Double-click CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 from the **Uninstall or change a program** page.
- 5 Click **Modify**.
- 6 Click the **Features** tab.
- 7 Enable the **GPL Ghostscript** check box.
- 8 Follow the instructions in the installation wizard.

## Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) technical notes

### Importing an EPS file

- In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, EPS files are imported as bitmaps.
- Duotone information is preserved only in EPS files created in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. When you import a duotone EPS file created in CorelDRAW, the file is converted to grayscale.

### Exporting an EPS file

- On a PostScript printer, graphics exported to the encapsulated PostScript (EPS) format print from other programs exactly as they do from a Corel graphics programs.
- You can save a header to the Tagged Image file format (TIFF) or Windows Metafile format (WMF) in **black and white**, 4-bit **grayscale** or color, or 8-bit grayscale or color. You can set the header **resolution** between 1 and 300 dots per inch (dpi); the default header resolution is 72 dpi. If the program importing the EPS file has a limitation on the image header size, you might receive an error message stating that the file is too large. To reduce file size, in the **EPS export** dialog box, choose **Black and White** from the **Mode** box, and lower the header resolution before exporting the file. The setting determines only the resolution of the header and has no impact on the print quality of a drawing. Color headers are useful for viewing EPS files. If the program in which you are going to use the file does not support color headers, try exporting with a mono header instead. You can also export without a header.
- Along with the graphic, exported EPS files contain a filename, program name, and date.

## PostScript (PS or PRN)

PostScript (PS) files use PostScript language to describe the layout of text, vector graphics, or bitmaps for printing and display purposes. They can contain multiple pages.

PostScript files usually have a **.ps** filename extension, but you can also import PostScript files with a **.prn** extension. Files with a **.prn** filename extension, commonly known as Printer (PRN) files, contain instructions about how a file should be printed. These files let you reprint a document even if the application in which the document was created is not installed on your computer.

During the CorelDRAW Graphics Suite X7 installation, you have the option of installing Ghostscript, which is an application that interprets the PostScript file format. Ghostscript assists the file importing process. If you did not install Ghostscript during the installation, see [“To install Ghostscript” on page 441](#).

You can also import encapsulated PostScript (EPS) files. For more information, see [“Encapsulated PostScript \(EPS\)” on page 440](#).

### To import a PostScript (PS or PRN) file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.

The **File** ► **Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open a PostScript file as an image, click **File** ► **Open**.

- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **PS, EPS, PRN - PostScript (\*.ps; \*.eps; \*.prn)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename, and click **Import**.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Click the image window.
- 7 In the **Convert to bitmap** dialog box, adjust the width, height, resolution, color mode, or any of the other settings.

### PostScript (PS or PRN) technical notes

- PostScript files containing mesh fills with spot colors or **DeviceN** images cannot be imported. Installing Ghostscript resolves this issue.
- PostScript files are imported as bitmaps.
- Text in imported PostScript files is not editable.
- Only Printer (PRN) files, PS files, and EPS files in PostScript format are supported.

## GIF

GIF is a bitmap-based format designed for use on the web. It is highly compressed to minimize file transfer time and supports images with up to 256 colors. The GIF file format supports a maximum image size of 30,000 · 30,000 pixels and uses LZW compression.

The GIF format provides the ability to store multiple bitmaps in a file. When the multiple images are displayed in rapid succession, the file is called an animated GIF file. For more information, see [“Saving movies” on page 372](#).

GIF images with transparent backgrounds are commonly used on the web. For more information, see [“Creating palette-based images with transparent colors and backgrounds” on page 381](#).

For Internet use, you can also save images to the JPEG and PNG formats. If you want to publish an image to the Web and are not sure which format to use, see [“Choosing a web-compatible file format” on page 377](#).

### To import a GIF file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.

The **File** ► **Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open a GIF file as an image, click **File** ► **Open**.

- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **GIF - CompuServe Bitmap (\*.gif)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click the image window.

### You can also

Resample a graphic while importing

For more information, see [“To resample an image while importing” on page 55](#).

Crop a graphic while importing

For more information, see [“To crop an image while importing” on page 56](#).

### To open an animated GIF file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Open**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **GIF - GIF animation (\*.gif)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Choose **Full image** from the list box below the list window.
- 6 Click **Open**.



For more information about opening and playing movies, see [“Opening and playing movies” on page 367](#).



You can also open part of a movie by choosing **Partial load**, and, in the **Partial load movie** dialog box, typing values in the **From** and **To** boxes to specify the range of frames.

## GIF technical notes

- Corel programs import versions 87A and 89A of the GIF file format, but export only to version 89A. Version 87A supports basic features and interlacing. The newer version, 89A, includes all features found in 87A plus the ability to use transparent colors and to include comments and other data from the image file.
- Corel programs support the following color depths when importing animated GIF files: black and white (1-bit), 16 colors, grayscale (8-bit), and 256 color paletted (8-bit).

## JPEG (JPG)

JPEG is a standard format developed by the Joint Photographic Experts Group. Through the use of superior compression techniques, this format allows the transfer of files among a wide variety of platforms. JPEG supports 8-bit grayscale, 24-bit RGB, and 32-bit CMYK color modes.

The JPEG format is commonly used on the web. For more information, see [“Choosing a web-compatible file format” on page 377](#).

### To import a JPEG file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.

The **File** ► **Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open a JPEG file as an image, click **File** ► **Open**.

- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **JPG - JPEG Bitmaps (\*.jpg; \*.jtf; \*.jff; \*.jpeg)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click the image window.

### You can also

Resample a graphic while importing

For more information, see [“To resample an image while importing” on page 55](#).

Crop a graphic while importing

For more information, see [“To crop an image while importing” on page 56](#).



You can drag on the image window to resize the image.

## JPEG technical notes

- JPEG files can contain EXIF data. This data may affect how the JPEG files open.

## JPEG 2000 (JP2)

The JPEG 2000 (JP2) file format is a JPEG image with advanced compression and file data capabilities. JPEG 2000 standard files can store more descriptive file data (or metadata), such as dimensions, tone scale, color space, and intellectual property rights, than JPEG 2000 codestream files. Codestream files are optimized for network transmission since they resist bit errors that can cause data loss on low-bandwidth channels.

Not all web browsers support JPEG 2000 formats. You may require a plug-in to view these files.

You can mask an area of a JP2 image to define a region of interest (ROI). If you apply a lower compression setting to the ROI, you can improve the image quality of the area.

When you export the image to a JP2 file, you can choose to view download progression by [resolution](#), quality, and position.

### To import a JPEG 2000 file

1 Click **File ▶ Import**.

The **File ▶ Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open the file as an image, click **File ▶ Open**.

2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.

3 Choose **JP2 - JPEG 2000 Bitmaps (\*.jp2; \*.j2k)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.

4 Click the filename.

5 Click **Import**.

6 Click the image window.

### To export a JPEG 2000 bitmap

1 Click **File ▶ Export**.

2 Choose **JP2 - JPEG 2000 bitmaps** from the **Save as type** list box.

3 Type a name in the **File name** box.

4 Click **Export**.

5 Choose a **JPEG 2000** preset from the **Preset list** list box in the upper-right corner of the dialog box.

If you want modify the preset settings, you can change the exporting options in the dialog box.

6 Click **OK**.

### You can also

Choose a color mode

In the **Settings** area, choose a color mode from the **Color mode** list box.

Embed the color profile

In the **Advanced** area, enable the **Embed color profile** check box.

Control image quality

In the **Settings** area, choose a quality option from the **Quality** list box or type a value.

Set the JPEG 2000 download from low to high resolution so that the size of the entire image increases

In the **Advanced** area, choose **Resolution\Quality** from the **Progression** list box.

Set the JPEG 2000 download from the upper-left corner of the image to the lower-right corner

In the **Advanced** area, choose **Resolution\Position** from the **Progression** list box.

Set the JPEG 2000 download from the upper-left corner of the image to the lower-right corner

In the **Advanced** area, choose **Position** from the **Progression** list box.

Set the JPEG 2000 download progressively by color channel

In the **Advanced** area, choose **Channels** from the **Progression** list box.

Allow JPEG 2000 codestream

In the **Advanced** area, enable the **Codestream** check box.

### JPEG 2000 (JP2) technical notes

- Corel PHOTO-PAINT can import either JP2 or JPC files but save only to the JP2 format.

## Kodak Photo CD Image (PCD)

Kodak Photo CD image file is a raster format developed by Eastman Kodak for scanning photographic images onto compact discs. PCD images are derived from 35-mm film negatives or slides that have been converted to digital format and stored on a CD. Photo CD allows high-quality digital storage and manipulation of photographic images. The PCD format is typically used by photofinishers and service bureaus who provide the service of placing photographs on CDs.

This file format is not supported by the 64-bit version of the application.

### To import a Kodak Photo CD image file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.
- 2 Choose the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **PCD - Kodak Photo-CD image (\*.pcd)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 In the **PCD import** dialog box, move any of the following sliders:
  - **Brightness** — lets you set the amount of light
  - **Contrast** — lets you specify the contrast between the **pixels** in the image
  - **Saturation** — lets you specify the purity of a color
  - **Red** — lets you specify the amount of red in the image
  - **Green** — lets you specify the amount of green in the image
  - **Blue** — lets you specify the amount of blue in the image
- 7 From the **Resolutions** list box, choose an image size.
- 8 From the **Image type** list box, choose a color mode.
- 9 Position the import placement start cursor in the image window, and click.

### You can also

Resample a graphic while importing

For more information, see [“To resample an image while importing” on page 55](#).

Crop a graphic while importing

For more information, see [“To crop an image while importing” on page 56](#).



You can remove the adjustments made by the photofinisher at the time the original image was scanned and placed on the Photo CD disk by enabling the **Subtract scene balance** check box.

You can identify out-of-gamut areas of the image by enabling the **Show colors out of gamut** check box, which renders the out-of-gamut **pixels** in pure red or pure blue.

### Kodak Photo CD Image (PCD) technical notes

- Kodak Photo CD (PCD) images may be subject to copyright. The Corel program does not display a warning message about this.
- Other Kodak-compatible programs may install the Kodak **pcdlib.dll** file in the **Windows** folder instead of the **Windows\System** folder. This difference in the folder location produces an error message.
- When you import **Photo CD** files, a dialog box appears and prompts you to choose the desired file resolution and color. The resolution is limited to 72 dpi and the maximum image size is 3072 · 2048 pixels.
- You can import the following color modes: RGB (24-bit), paletted (8-bit), and grayscale (8-bit).

## PICT (PCT)

The Macintosh PICT file format was developed for the Mac OS platform by Apple Computer Inc. It is a native file format of QuickDraw and can contain both vectors and bitmaps. The Macintosh PICT file format is widely used in Macintosh applications.

### To import a PICT file

- 1 Click **File ▶ Import**.

The **File ▶ Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open a PICT file as an image, click **File ▶ Open**.

- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **PCT - Macintosh PICT (\*.pct; \*.pict)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click the image window.
- 7 In the **Convert to bitmap** dialog box, adjust the width, height, resolution, color mode, or any of the other settings.

### PICT (PCT) technical notes

- Corel graphics programs can import **vector** drawings and **bitmaps** contained in PICT (PCT) files.
- **Objects** that contain a fill and an outline open as a group of two objects. One object is the outline, and the other is the fill.
- PICT fills are often bitmap patterns, and the Corel program tries to maintain these fills as bitmap patterns.
- Pattern outlines are converted to a solid color.
- Text in PICT files opens as editable text. If a typeface in the imported file is not available on your computer, it is converted to the font that it most closely resembles.
- Text alignment may not be preserved in the original file. This is due to the differences in font size, and intercharacter and interword spacing between the two formats. Any misalignment is easily corrected using the text formatting settings in the program.

## PaintBrush (PCX)

The PaintBrush (PCX) file format is a **bitmap** format originally developed by the ZSoft Corporation for the PC Paintbrush program.

### To import a PaintBrush file

- 1 Click **File ▶ Import**.

The **File ▶ Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open a PCX file as an image, click **File ▶ Open**.

- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **PCX - PaintBrush (\*.pcx)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click the image window.

### To export a PaintBrush file

- 1 Click **File ▶ Export**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Choose **PCX - PaintBrush** from the **Save as type** list box.

- 4 Type a filename in the **File name** list box.
- 5 Click **Export**.

## PaintBrush (PCX) technical notes

### Exporting a PCX file

- Bitmaps may be black-and-white, 16 colors, grayscale (8-bit), paletted (8-bit), or RGB color (24-bit).
- Run-length encoding (RLE) compression is supported, and the maximum image size is 64,535 · 64,535 pixels.
- These files may contain one, two, or four color planes.
- This file format is supported in CorelDRAW and Corel PHOTO-PAINT.

### Importing a PCX file

- PCX files can be imported if they conform to the following PCX specifications: 2.5, 2.8, and 3.0.
- Bitmaps may be black-and-white, 16 colors, grayscale (8-bit), paletted (8-bit), or RGB color (24-bit).
- RLE compression is supported and the maximum image size is 64,535 · 64,535 pixels.
- These files may contain one, two, or four color planes. Files containing three color planes or more than four color planes cannot be imported.

## Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF)

The Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF) is a file format designed to preserve fonts, images, graphics, and formatting of an original file. Using Adobe Reader and Adobe Acrobat, a PDF file can be viewed, shared, and printed by Mac OS, Windows, and UNIX users.

You can save a file in the PDF format. For more information, see [“Exporting to PDF” on page 415](#).

## Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF) technical notes

### Publishing a PDF file

- Color channels created in Corel PHOTO-PAINT are preserved.
- Transparency applied to text and graphics is preserved.
- Character attributes of text, including OpenType features, are preserved.
- [DeviceN](#) color spaces may be converted to RGB or CMYK processed colors in the imported file, depending on the file content.
- Layers are preserved in files created with Adobe Acrobat 6 and later.
- Xform objects, headers and footers are converted to symbols.
- Symbols are preserved when PDF files created with version 1.3 or later undergo [round-tripping](#).

## HPGL Plotter File (PLT)

The HPGL Plotter File (PLT) format, developed by Hewlett-Packard, is vector-based. It is used in programs such as AutoCAD for printing drawings on plotters. Other Corel applications can interpret a SUBSET of the HPGL and HPGL/2 command set. This format uses a scaling factor of 1,016 plotter units to 1 inch.

### To import an HPGL Plotter file

- 1 Click **File ▶ Import**.  
The **File ▶ Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open a PLT file as an image, click **File ▶ Open**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **PLT - HPGL Plotter File (\*.plt; \*.hgl)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.

- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 In the **HPGL options** dialog box, adjust any of the settings.

## HPGL Plotter (PLT) technical notes

### Importing a PLT file

- Corel programs support versions 1 and 2 of PLT file formats although some features of version 2 are not supported.
- You can import images larger than the Corel program's maximum page size by enabling the **Scale** option in the **HPGL options** dialog box, which lets you resize the imported image.
- The curve resolution factor can be set to a value between 0.0001 and 1.0 inch. The value can be very precise; up to eight decimal places are accepted. A setting of 0.0001 results in the highest resolution, but it also greatly increases file size. A curve resolution of 0.004 inch is recommended.
- The PLT file format does not contain color information. Instead, the various objects in a PLT file have certain pen numbers associated with them. When imported into a Corel program, each pen number is assigned a specific color. You can specify the color assigned to a particular pen, so that you can match the original colors of the graphic.
- The **Pen selection** list contains 256 pens, although not all of the pens may be assigned. You can change the color assignments by choosing the pen and then choosing a new color for that pen from the **Pen color** list box. Choosing **Custom colors** brings up a color definition dialog box that allows you to define a custom color according to RGB values.
- You can change the pen width assignments by choosing the pen and then choosing a new width for that pen from the **Pen width** list box.
- You can set a defined pen to the **Unused** option. You can also reset the current Pen Library pen settings to the previously saved settings.
- Corel programs support numerous dotted, dashed, and solid line types of the PLT file format. The pattern number of a line in a PLT file is translated to a line type pattern.
- If the PLT file contains a font that is not on the user's computer, the **PANOSE font matching** dialog box lets the user replace the font with an available one.

## Portable Network Graphics (PNG)

The Portable Network Graphics (**PNG**) file format is an excellent file format for **lossless**, portable, and well-compressed storage of bitmaps. It takes up a minimum amount of disk space and can be easily read and exchanged between computers. The Portable Network Graphics format provides a replacement for the **GIF** format and can also replace many common uses of the **TIFF** format.

The Portable Network Graphics format is designed to work well in online viewing, such as on the web, and it's fully streamable with a progressive display option. Some web browsers do not support all formatting and features. You can export images to the Portable Network Graphics file format if you want to use transparent backgrounds, image interlacing, image maps, or animation in your webpages.

Exporting graphics to the Portable Network Graphics format converts them to **bitmaps** that can be used in desktop publishing programs and Microsoft Office applications. You can also edit Portable Network Graphics in image-editing programs such as Corel PHOTO-PAINT and Adobe Photoshop.

You can also save images to the **GIF** and **JPEG** formats to use on the Internet. If you want to publish an image to the web but are not sure which format to use, see ["Choosing a web-compatible file format" on page 377](#).

### To import a Portable Network Graphics file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.  
The **File** ► **Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open a PNG file as an image, click **File** ► **Open**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **PNG - Portable Network Graphics (\*.png)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click the image window.

## You can also

Resample a graphic while importing

For more information, see [“To resample an image while importing” on page 55.](#)

Crop a graphic while importing

For more information, see [“To crop an image while importing” on page 56.](#)



You can drag in the image window to resize the image.

## Portable Network Graphics (PNG) technical notes

- You can import Portable Networks Graphics (PNG) files from 1-bit black and white to 24-bit color; 48-bit color is not supported.
- Masks and indexed-color, grayscale, and true color images are supported. Masks, however, are not saved in 1-bit black-and-white or 8-bit paletted files.
- LZ77 compression is supported, and the maximum image size is 30,000 · 30,000 pixels. Sample depths range from 1 to 16 bits.
- The PNG file format also checks full-file integrity and detects common transmission errors. The PNG file format can store gamma and chromatic data for improved color matching on different platforms.

## Adobe Photoshop (PSD)

The Adobe Photoshop (PSD) file format is the native [bitmap](#) file format for Adobe Photoshop.

### To import an Adobe Photoshop file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.

The **File** ► **Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open a PSD file as an image, click **File** ► **Open**.

- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **PSD - Adobe Photoshop (\*.psd; \*.pdd)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click the image window.

## You can also

Resample a graphic while importing

For more information, see [“To resample an image while importing” on page 55.](#)

Crop a graphic while importing

For more information, see [“To crop an image while importing” on page 56.](#)

### To export an Adobe Photoshop file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Export**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Choose **PSD - Adobe Photoshop** from the **Save as type** list box.
- 4 Type a filename in the **File name** list box.
- 5 Click **Export**.



You can preserve Corel PHOTO-PAINT objects as layers in the PSD file format.



If you are exporting a 16-bit grayscale or 48-bit RGB file for use in Adobe Photoshop versions CS and earlier, choose **Uncompressed** from the **Compression type** list box. Adobe Photoshop versions CS and earlier do not support compressed 16-bit grayscale and 48-bit RGB files.

## Adobe Photoshop (PSD) technical notes

### Importing a PSD file

- Text is imported as a text object, so it remains editable.
- Monotone, grayscale, duotone, 48-bit RGB, and up to 32-bit CMYK images are supported.
- Some layer effects cannot be imported. (Gradient map adjustment layer is imported without Noise, Opacity stops, and Dither.)
- Imported layers using the Darken Color and Lighten Color blend modes map to the If Darker and If Lighter merge modes, respectively. For more information about working with merge modes in Corel PHOTO-PAINT, see [“Understanding merge modes” on page 280](#).
- Smart Filter effects are imported as a base object stacked with separate filter effects.
- The Vibrance adjustment layer maps to the Vibrance lens.
- The Black-and-white adjustment layer maps to the Grayscale lens.
- The Channel Mixer adjustment layer maps to the Channel Mixer lens.
- The Gradient Map adjustment layer maps to the Gradient Map lens; however, opacity stops, dithering, and noise adjustments are not supported.
- The Photo Filter adjustment layer maps to the Photo Filter lens.
- Spot color channels are preserved. Alpha channels with spot color channels applied to them are not supported.
- A layer mask that has density applied to it imports as a clip mask with the transparency adjusted. However, you can't change the density settings in Corel PHOTO-PAINT.
- A layer mask that has feathering applied to it imports as a clip mask with the feathering applied. However, you can't change the feathering settings in Corel PHOTO-PAINT.

### Exporting a PSD file

- Text is exported as a text object, so it remains editable.
- This format supports 1-bit black and white, duotone, 16-bit grayscale, 48-bit RGB, and up to 32-bit CMYK color images.
- Objects are supported.
- 32-bit floating point color channels are mapped to 16-bit channels, which cannot be exported as 32-bit High Dynamic Range (HDR) images.
- Smart Filter effects are not retained when imported and are not replaced when exported.
- Spot color channel information is preserved in the exported file.

## Corel Painter (RIF)

Imported Corel Painter (RIF) files retain information such as floating objects, which makes the files much larger than GIF or JPEG files. Corel Painter files can be imported for resizing and adjusting floaters.

### To import a Corel Painter file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.  
The **File** ► **Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open a RIFF file as an image, click **File** ► **Open**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **RIFF - Painter (\*.rif)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.

- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click the image window.

#### You can also

Resample a graphic while importing

For more information, see [“To resample an image while importing” on page 55.](#)

Crop a graphic while importing

For more information, see [“To crop an image while importing” on page 56.](#)

### Corel Painter (RIF) technical notes

- The embedded color profile is preserved, but can be changed after importing the file.
- If the Corel Painter image contains a transparent background, which is called a canvas in Corel Painter, it is preserved.
- Vector shapes are not preserved in the imported file.
- Text and annotations are not preserved.
- Bitmap layers are imported as objects.
- Layer masks are retained as clip masks.
- Liquid Ink, Watercolor, Digital Watercolor, and plug-in layers are imported as RGB objects.
- Mosaics and tessellations are imported as RGB objects.
- Image slicing is not retained.

### TARGA (TGA)

The TARGA (TGA) graphics format is used for saving [bitmaps](#). It supports various compression systems and can represent bitmaps ranging from black-and-white to [RGB](#) color. You can open, import, or export TGA files in Corel PHOTO-PAINT.

For more information about opening or importing files, see [“Opening images” on page 53](#) or [“Importing files” on page 54](#).

#### To export a TARGA file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Export**.

The **File** ► **Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open a TGA file as an image, click **File** ► **Open**.

- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Choose **TGA - Targa bitmap** from the **Save as type** list box.
- 4 Type a filename in the **File name** list box.

To compress an image while exporting it, choose a compression type from the **Compression type** list box.

- 5 Click **Export**.
- 6 In the **TGA export** dialog box, enable one of the following options:
  - **Normal**
  - **Enhanced**



Black-and-white images cannot be saved as TARGA files.

## TARGA (TGA) technical notes

- The following features are supported: uncompressed color-mapped images, uncompressed RGB images, run-length encoding (RLE) compressed color-mapped images, RLE-compressed RGB images (types 1, 2, 9, and 10 as defined by the AT&T Electronic Photography and Imaging Center), and masks.
- The type of file produced depends on the number of colors exported. For example, 24-bit color TARGA (TGA) files are exported as RLE-compressed RGB bitmaps.
- You can import TGA files from 8-bit grayscale to 24-bit RGB.
- Masks are not saved in 1-bit black-and-white or 8-bit paletted files.
- RLE compression is supported, and the maximum image size is 64,535 · 64,535 pixels.

## TIFF

The Tagged Image File format (TIFF) is a *raster* format designed as a standard. Almost every graphics application can read and write TIFF files. TIFF supports various color modes and bit depths.

You can open or import TIFF files in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. For more information about opening or importing files, see [“Opening images” on page 53](#) or [“Importing files” on page 54](#).

### To export a TIFF file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Export**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which you want to save the file.
- 3 Choose **TIF - TIFF bitmap** from the **Save as type** list box.
- 4 Type a filename in the **File name** list box.
- 5 Click **Export**.

### TIFF technical notes

- When importing a TIFF that contains multiple pages, you can choose the individual pages that you want to import.
- Masks are not exported in 1-bit black-and-white, 16-bit grayscale, or 48-bit RGB files.
- Black-and-white, color, and grayscale TIFF files up to and including the 6.0 specification can be imported and exported.
- TIFF files compressed using JPEG, ZIP, CCITT, Packbits 32773, or LZW compression can also be imported. However, you may notice additional loading time with these files because the program decodes the file compression.

## Corel Paint Shop Pro (PSP)

The .PspImage file format is the native format for Corel Paint Shop Pro. You can import .PspImage files versions 9 and 10 that are in the RGB color mode (24- or 48-bit).

This file format is not supported by the 64-bit version of CorelDRAW Graphics Suite.

### To import a PSP file

- 1 Click **File** ► **Import**.  
The **File** ► **Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open a PSP file as an image, click **File** ► **Open**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **PSP - Corel Paint Shop Pro (\*.pspimage)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.

- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click the image window.

### Corel Paint Shop Pro (PSP) technical notes

- You can import only Corel Paint Shop Pro files with a **.PsImage** filename extension.
- Text and layers are merged with the background in the imported file.

## WordPerfect Graphic (WPG)

The Corel WordPerfect Graphic file format (WPG) is primarily a vector graphic format, but it can store both bitmap and vector data. The WPG files may contain up to 256 colors, chosen from a [palette](#) of more than 1 million colors.

### To import a WordPerfect Graphic file

- 1 Click **File ▶ Import**.  
The **File ▶ Import** command lets you place the file as an object in the active image. If you want to open a WPG file as an image, click **File ▶ Open**.
- 2 Locate the folder in which the file is stored.
- 3 Choose **WPG - Corel WordPerfect Graphic (\*.wpg)** from the list box next to the **File name** box.
- 4 Click the filename.
- 5 Click **Import**.
- 6 Click the image window.

### WordPerfect Graphic (WPG) technical notes

- Graphics Text Type 2 is not supported.

## RAW camera file formats

A RAW camera file is a data file captured by the image sensor of a high-end digital camera. RAW camera files contain minimal in-camera processing, such as sharpening or digital zoom, and they give you full control over the sharpness, contrast, and saturation of images. Various RAW camera file formats exist, so the files can have different filename extensions, such as **.nef**, **.crw**, **.dcr**, **.orf**, or **.mrw**.

You can import RAW camera files directly into Corel PHOTO-PAINT. For more information, see [“Working with RAW camera files”](#) on page 427.

## Wavelet Compressed Bitmap (WI)

This file format is not supported by the 64-bit version of the suite.

### Importing a WI file

- Corel programs support the following color depths when you import Wavelet Compressed Bitmap (**.wi**) files: 256-shade (8-bit) grayscale, and 24-bit RGB.

## Windows Metafile Format (WMF)

Developed by Microsoft Corporation, this file format stores both vector and bitmap information. It was developed as the internal file format for Microsoft Windows 3. It supports 24-bit RGB color and is supported by most Windows applications.

## Windows Metafile Format (WMF) technical notes

### Importing a WMF file

- The following features are not supported: PANOSE font matching and rotated and skewed bitmaps.

## Additional file formats

Corel PHOTO-PAINT also supports the following file formats:

- Audio Video Interleaved (AVI) — Audio video interleaved format is a Microsoft multi-media format where audio and video elements are stored in alternating segments.
- CALS Compressed Bitmap (CAL) — CALS Raster (CAL) is a bitmap format used mainly for document storage by high-end CAD programs. It supports a monochrome (1-bit) color depth and is used as a data graphics exchange format for computer-aided design and manufacturing, technical graphics, and image-processing applications.
- Corel ArtShow 5 (CPX) — The CPX file format is a native file format of Corel ArtShow 5. It can contain both vectors and bitmaps.
- CorelDRAW Compressed (CDX) — The CDX file format is a compressed CorelDRAW file.
- Encapsulated PostScript (Desktop Color Separation) — The DCS file format, developed by QuarkXPress, is an extension of the standard encapsulated PostScript (EPS) file format. Typically, the DCS file format consists of five files. Four of the five files contain information about high-resolution color. This information is expressed in CMYK (cyan, magenta, yellow and black) format. The fifth file, considered the master file, contains a PICT preview of the DCS file. The DCS format supports spot color channels.
- EXE — The EXE format is a Windows 3.x/NT bitmap resource.
- FPX — The FlashPix file format stores images at different resolutions in a single file. This file format is not supported by the 64-bit version of the suite.
- Frame Vector Metafile (FMV) — The FMV file format is used for a Frame Vector Metafile.
- GEM Paint (IMG) — GEM Paint (IMG) is a bitmap format that is the native bitmapped file format of the GEM environment. IMG files support 1- and 4-bit paletted color and are compressed by using an RLE method. IMG was a common format in the early days of desktop publishing.
- GEM File (GEM) — The GEM file format is used for a GEM file.
- GIMP (XCF) — XCF is the native GIMP format. It supports layers and other GIMP-specific information.
- ICO — The ICO format is a Windows 3.x/NT icon resource.
- Lotus PIC (PIC) — The PIC file format is used for a Lotus PIC file.
- MacPaint Bitmap (MAC) — MacPaint (MAC) is a bitmap format that uses the filename extensions MAC, PCT, PNT, and PIX. It is the format used by the MacPaint program that was included with the Macintosh 128. It supports only two colors and a palette of patterns. It is used mainly by Macintosh graphics applications to store black-and-white graphics and clipart. The maximum size for MAC images is 720 · 576 pixels.
- MET Metafile (MET) — The MET file format is for a MET Metafile.
- Micrografx Picture Publisher 4 & 5 (PP4, PP5) — The PP4 file format is a native file format of Micrographx Picture Publisher 4. The PP5 file format is a native file format of Micrographx Picture Publisher 5. This file format is not supported by the 64-bit version of the suite.
- Picture Publisher File (PPF) — The PPF file format is native to Micrografx Picture Publisher 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10. This file format is not supported by the 64-bit version of the suite.
- NAP Metafile (NAP) — The NAP file format is used for a NAP Metafile.
- Fill File (FILL) — This file format is used for saving custom fills in Corel PHOTO-PAINT.
- PostScript Interpreted (PS or PRN) — PRN PostScript (PS or PRN) is a metafile format for PostScript printers. This format is written in ANSI text. The PostScript Interpreted import filter can import PS, PRN, and EPS PostScript files.
- SCITEX CT Bitmap (SCT) — The SCT file format is used for importing 32-bit color and grayscale SCITEX images. SCITEX bitmaps are created from high-end scanners. The bitmaps are then processed for output by film recorders or high-end page layout programs.
- XPixMap Image (XPM) — The XPM file format is used with an XPixMap Image file.

## Recommended formats for importing graphics

The table below shows what file formats to use when you are importing graphics from graphics applications, or other sources.

**Application/Source**

Adobe Photoshop

Paint Shop Pro

Corel Painter

Picture Publisher

Digital cameras

**Recommended import format**

PSD

PSP

RIF

PPF

RAW camera files

**Recommended formats for exporting graphics**

The following table lists the recommended file formats for exporting to other graphics applications, or for the web.

**Application/Output**

Adobe Photoshop

The web

**Recommended format**

PSD, TIF

JPG, GIF, PNG

## Customizing and automating

Customizing Corel PHOTO-PAINT.....	459
Using macros and scripts to automate tasks.....	471





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Customizing Corel PHOTO-PAINT

You can customize your application by arranging command bars and commands to suit your needs. Command bars include menus, toolbars, the property bar, and the status bar. You can also customize filters and file associations.

Help topics are based on the application's default settings. When you customize command bars, commands, and buttons, the Help topics associated with them do not reflect your changes.

This section contains the following topics:

- "Creating workspaces" (page 459)
- "Customizing keyboard shortcuts" (page 461)
- "Customizing menus" (page 462)
- "Customizing toolbars" (page 463)
- "Customizing the toolbox" (page 466)
- "Customizing the property bar" (page 466)
- "Customizing the status bar" (page 467)
- "Customizing filters" (page 468)

### Creating workspaces

You can create workspaces to make more accessible the tools that you use most often. For example, you can open dockers or add tools to toolbars. You can also delete the custom workspaces that you create. If you modify the default workspace, you can reset the default settings.

In addition, you can export and import custom workspaces to and from other computers that use the same application. For example, you can customize a workspace and share it with a group of users.

Before creating a workspace, you can try the workspaces that are included with the application. These workspaces are optimized for a number of common workflows. For more information, see "[Choosing a workspace](#)" on page 38.

#### To create a workspace

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, click **Workspace**.
- 3 Click **New**.
- 4 Type the name of the workspace in the **Name of new workspace** box.

- 5 From the **Base new workspace** on list box, choose an existing workspace on which to base the new workspace.

If you want to include a description of the workspace, type a description in the **Description of new workspace** box.



Custom workspaces are saved as XML files and exported as XML-based Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations (XSLT) files.

### To delete a workspace

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, click **Workspace**.
- 3 Choose a workspace from the **Workspace** list.
- 4 Click **Delete**.



You cannot delete the Default and Adobe Photoshop workspaces.

### To import a workspace

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, click **Workspace**.
- 3 Click **Import**.
- 4 In the **Import workspace** dialog box, click **Browse**.
- 5 Choose the folder where the file is stored.
- 6 Double-click the file.
- 7 Follow the instructions on screen.

### To export a workspace

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, click **Workspace**.
- 3 Click **Export**.
- 4 Enable the check boxes beside the workspace items you want to export.
- 5 Click **Save**.
- 6 Choose the folder where you want to save the file.
- 7 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 8 Click **Save**.
- 9 Click **Close**.



The workspace items available for export are dockers, toolbars (including the property bar and toolbox), menus, and shortcut keys.

Custom workspaces are exported as XML-based Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations (XSLT) files. You can use a workspace saved to the XSLT format when you set up or deploy custom workspaces.

### To reset the current workspace

- 1 Exit the application.
- 2 Restart the application while holding down **F8**.

## Customizing keyboard shortcuts

Although your application has preset keyboard shortcuts, you can change them, or add your own shortcuts, to suit your working style. You can assign keyboard shortcuts to the commands you use the most, and you can delete any keyboard shortcuts that you don't use.

You can print a list of keyboard shortcuts. You can also export a list of keyboard shortcuts to the *CSV* file format — a comma delimited format that is easily opened by word processors and spreadsheet applications.

When you change keyboard shortcuts, the changes are saved in a file called an accelerator table. Your application comes with the following accelerator tables which can be customized to suit your work habits:

- Anchor editing table — contains shortcut keys for anchor editing
- Main table — contains all non-text-related shortcut keys
- Table editing table — contains non-text-related shortcut keys for table editing
- Table text editing table — contains shortcut keys for editing text in tables
- Text editing table — contains all text-related shortcut keys

### To assign a keyboard shortcut to a command

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.
- 3 Click the **Shortcut keys** tab.
- 4 Choose a shortcut key table from the **Shortcut key table** list box.
- 5 Choose a command category from the top list box.
- 6 Click a command in the **Commands** list.  
The shortcut keys currently assigned to the selected command are displayed in the **Current shortcut keys** box.
- 7 Click the **New shortcut key** box, and press a key combination.  
If the key combination is already assigned to another command, that command is listed in the **Currently assigned to** box.
- 8 Click **Assign**.



If the same keyboard shortcut is already assigned to another command, the second assignment overwrites the first. By enabling the **Navigate to conflict on assign** check box, you can automatically navigate to the command whose shortcut you reassigned, prompting you to assign a new shortcut.



You can reset all keyboard shortcuts by clicking **Reset all**.

You can view all of the existing keyboard shortcuts by clicking **View all**.

### To delete a keyboard shortcut

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.
- 3 Click the **Shortcut keys** tab.
- 4 Choose a shortcut key table from the **Shortcut key table** list box.
- 5 Choose a command category from the top list box.
- 6 Click a command in the **Commands** list.
- 7 Click a shortcut key in the **Current shortcut keys** box.
- 8 Click **Delete**.

### To print keyboard shortcuts

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.
- 3 Click the **Shortcut keys** tab.
- 4 Click **View all**.
- 5 Click **Print**.

### To export a list of keyboard shortcuts

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.
- 3 Click the **Shortcut keys** tab.
- 4 Click **View all**.
- 5 Click **Export to CSV**.
- 6 Choose the folder where you want to save the file.
- 7 Type a filename in the **File name** box.
- 8 Click **Save**.

## Customizing menus

Corel customization features let you modify the menu bar and the menus it contains. You can change the order of menus and menu commands; add, remove, and rename menus and menu commands. You can search for a menu command if you do not remember the menu in which it belongs. You can also reset menus to the default setting.

The customization options apply to the menu bar menus as well as to shortcut menus that you access by right-clicking.

Help topics are based on the application's default settings. When you customize menus and menu commands, the Help topics associated with them do not reflect your changes.

### To change the order of menus and menu commands

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.
- 3 In the application window, drag a menu on the menu bar to the left or right.  
If you want to change the order of menu commands, click a menu on the menu bar, click a menu command, and drag it up or down.  
If you want to change the order of context menu commands, right-click in the application window to display the context menu, and drag a menu command to a new position.

### To rename a menu or menu command

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.
- 3 Choose a command category from the top list box.
- 4 Click a menu or command in the list.
- 5 Click the **Appearance** tab.
- 6 Type a name in the **Caption** box.



An ampersand (&) before a letter in the **Caption** box indicates a shortcut, also known as a mnemonic accelerator key. Menus are displayed by pressing **Alt** + the letter. Commands are invoked by pressing the letter that is underlined when the menu is displayed.



You can reset the name to the default by clicking **Restore defaults**.

### To add or remove an item on the menu bar

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.  
If you want to remove an item, drag it off the menu bar.
- 3 Choose a command category from the top list box.
- 4 Drag an item to the menu bar.

### To add or remove a command on a menu

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.  
If you want to remove a command from a menu, click the menu name, and when the menu displays, drag the command off the menu.
- 3 Choose a command category from the top list box.
- 4 Drag a command to a menu in the application window.

### To find a menu command quickly

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.
- 3 Click the **Search** button .
- 4 In the **Find text** dialog box, type the menu command in the **Find what** box.
- 5 Click **Find next**.

### To reset menus to the default setting

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Command bars**.
- 3 Choose **Menu bar** from the list.
- 4 Click **Reset**.

## Customizing toolbars

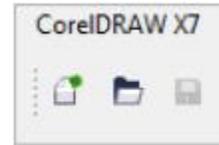
You can customize toolbar position and display. For example, you can move or resize a toolbar, and you can choose to hide or display a toolbar.

Toolbars can be either docked or floating. Docking a toolbar attaches it to the edge of the application window. Undocking a toolbar pulls it away from the edge of the application window, so it floats and can be easily moved around.

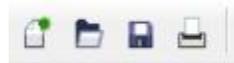
You can create, delete, and rename custom toolbars. You can customize toolbars by adding, removing, and arranging toolbar items. You can adjust toolbar appearance by resizing buttons; adjusting the toolbar border; and displaying images, captions, or both. You can also edit toolbar button images.

When moving, docking, and undocking toolbars, you use the grab area of the toolbar.

For a	The grab area is
Docked and unlocked toolbar	Identified by a dotted line at the top or left edge of the toolbar
Floating toolbar	The title bar. If the title is not displayed, the grab area is identified by a dotted line at the top or left edge of the toolbar.



If you do not want to move docked toolbars by mistake, you can lock them. Locked toolbars do not have a dotted line along their left edge.



*A locked toolbar*

## To customize toolbar position and display

To	Do the following
Move a toolbar	Unlock the toolbar, click the toolbar's grab area, and drag the toolbar to a new position.
Dock a toolbar	Click the toolbar's grab area, and drag the toolbar to any edge of the application window.
Undock a toolbar	Unlock the toolbar, click the toolbar's grab area, and drag the toolbar away from the edge of the application window.
Resize a floating toolbar	Point to the edge of the toolbar and, using the two-directional arrow, drag the edge of the toolbar.
Hide or display a toolbar	Click <b>Tools</b> ► <b>Customization</b> . In the <b>Customization</b> list of categories, click <b>Command bars</b> , and disable or enable the check box next to the toolbar name.
Reset a toolbar to its default setting	Click <b>Tools</b> ► <b>Customization</b> . In the <b>Customization</b> list of categories, click <b>Command bars</b> , click a toolbar, and click <b>Reset</b> .



Docked toolbars cannot be moved when they are locked. For information about unlocking toolbars, see [“To lock or unlock toolbars” on page 466](#).

## To add, delete, or rename a custom toolbar

To	Do the following
Add a custom toolbar	Click <b>Tools</b> ► <b>Customization</b> . In the <b>Customization</b> list of categories, click <b>Command bars</b> , click <b>New</b> , and type a name in the <b>Command bars</b> list. Holding down <b>Alt + Ctrl</b> , drag a tool or button in the application window to the new toolbar.

## To

Delete a custom toolbar

Rename a custom toolbar

## Do the following

Click **Tools ► Customization**. In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Command bars**, click a toolbar, and click **Delete**.

Click **Tools ► Customization**. In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Command bars**, click a toolbar name twice, and type a new name.

## To add or remove an item on a toolbar

- 1 Click **Tools ► Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.
- 3 Choose a command category from the top list box.
- 4 Drag a toolbar item from the list to a toolbar in the application window.

If you want to remove an item from a toolbar, drag the toolbar item off the toolbar.

## To arrange toolbar items

- 1 Click **Tools ► Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.
- 3 On the toolbar in the application window, drag the toolbar item to a new position.

If you want to move a toolbar item to another toolbar, drag the toolbar item icon from one toolbar to the other.



You can copy a toolbar item to another toolbar by holding down **Ctrl** while dragging a toolbar item.

## To modify toolbar appearance

- 1 Click **Tools ► Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Command bars**.
- 3 Click a toolbar name in the list.  
If you want to choose multiple toolbars, hold down **Ctrl**, and click the other toolbar names.
- 4 Choose a size from the **Button** list box.
- 5 In the **Border** box, click an arrow to specify a value from 1 to 10 **pixels** for the toolbar border.
- 6 From the **Default button appearance** list box, choose one of the following:
  - **Caption below image**
  - **Caption only**
  - **Caption to right of image**
  - **Default**
  - **Image only**

If you want to hide the title when the toolbar is floating, disable the **Show title when toolbar is floating** check box.



You can reset a built-in toolbar to its default settings by clicking **Reset**.

## To edit a toolbar button image

- 1 Click **Tools ► Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.

- 3 Choose a command category from the top list box.
- 4 Click a toolbar command.
- 5 Click the **Appearance** tab.
- 6 Edit the button image using the options in the **Imagearea**.



When you choose either **Small** or **Medium** in the **Size** list box, you edit the small or medium versions of a particular button image. You cannot edit the large version of a button image. For information about how to display all buttons as small, medium, or large, see [“To modify toolbar appearance” on page 465](#).



You can reset toolbar button images to the default settings by clicking **Restore defaults**.

### To lock or unlock toolbars

- Click **Windows ▶ Toolbars ▶ Lock toolbars**.

The **Lock toolbars** command is enabled when a check mark appears beside it. When you launch the application for the first time, the toolbars are locked by default.



Floating toolbars cannot be locked.



You can also lock or unlock toolbars by right-clicking a toolbar and clicking **Lock toolbars**.

## Customizing the toolbox

You can add or remove tools from the toolbox. If you modify the toolbox, you can reset the default settings at any time.

### To customize the toolbox

- 1 On the toolbox, click the **Quick customize** button .
- 2 Enable or disable any of the check boxes.

#### You can also

Reset the toolbox

Click the **Reset toolbox** button.

Customize the toolbox

Click the **Customize** button.

## Customizing the property bar

You have control over the placement and content of the property bar. You can move the property bar anywhere on screen. Placing it inside the application window creates a floating property bar. Placing it on any of the four sides of the application window docks it, making it part of the window border.

When moving, docking, or undocking the property bar, you use the grab area of the property bar, which is the same as the grab area of a toolbar. For more information about the grab area, see [“Customizing toolbars” on page 463](#).

You can also customize the property bar by adding or removing tools. This lets you customize what appears on the property bar when you choose various tools. For example, when the **Text** tool is active, you can have the property bar display additional commands for text-related tasks such as increasing or decreasing font size, or changing case. You can also reset the property bar to its default settings.

## To position the property bar

### To

Move the property bar

Undock the property bar

Dock the property bar

### Do the following

Unlock the property bar, click the property bar's grab area, and drag the property bar to a new position.

Click the property bar's grab area, and drag the property bar away from the edge of the application window.

Click the property bar's grab area, and drag the property bar to any edge of the application window.

## To add or remove a toolbar item on the property bar

- 1 On the property, click the **Quick customize** button .
- 2 Enable or disable the check boxes next to the items that you want to add or remove.

### You can also

Reset the toolbox

Click the **Reset toolbox** button.

Customize the toolbox

Click the **Customize** button.



The new item is displayed on the property bar for the active tool or task. When the property bar content changes, the item is not displayed. The new item is displayed again when the related tool or task is activated.



You can also customize the property bar by clicking **Tools ► Customization**. In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**, choose a command category from the top list box, and then drag a toolbar item from the list to the property bar. If you want to remove an item from the property bar, drag the toolbar item icon off the property bar.

## To rearrange toolbar items on the property bar

- 1 Click **Tools ► Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.
- 3 Drag the toolbar item icon to a new position on the property bar.

## Customizing the status bar

The status bar displays information about file size, the current tool, document dimensions, and memory. In addition, it displays document color information, such as the document color profile and color proofing status. You can customize the status bar by changing the information that is displayed and by resizing it. You can also customize the status bar by adding, removing, and resizing toolbar items. In addition, you can restore the status bar to its default settings.

### To change the information the status bar displays

- On the status bar, click the flyout  button next to the displayed information and choose one of the following options:
  - File size
  - Current tool
  - Document dimensions

- Document color information
- Memory

#### To resize the status bar

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Command bars**.
- 3 Click **Status bar**, and enable the check box.
- 4 Type 1 or 2 in the **Number of lines when docked** box.

#### To add or remove a toolbar item on the status bar

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Commands**.
- 3 Choose a command category from the top list box.
- 4 Drag a toolbar item from the list to the status bar.

If you want to remove a toolbar item from the status bar, drag the item off the status bar.

#### To resize toolbar items on the status bar

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Customization**.
- 2 In the **Customization** list of categories, click **Command bars**.
- 3 Click **Status bar**, and enable the check box.
- 4 Choose one of the following options from the **Button** list box:
  - Small
  - Medium
  - Large



Only toolbar items you have added to the status bar are affected by resizing. The size of the default icons remains unchanged.

#### To restore the status bar default settings

- Right-click the status bar, and click **Customize** ► **Status bar** ► **Reset to default**.

## Customizing filters

**Filters** are used to convert files from one format to another. They are organized into four types: **raster**, **vector**, **animation**, and **text**. You can customize filter settings by adding or removing filters so that only the filters you need are loaded. You can also change the order of the list of filters and reset filters to the default setting.

#### To add a filter

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, double-click **Global**, and double-click **Filters**.
- 3 Double-click a type of filter in the **Available file types** list.
- 4 Click a **filter**.
- 5 Click **Add**.

### To remove a filter

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, double-click **Global**, and click **Filters**.
- 3 Click a **filter** in the **List of active filters**.
- 4 Click **Remove**.

### To change the order of the list of filters

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, double-click **Global**, and click **Filters**.
- 3 Click a **filter** in the **List of active filters**.
- 4 Click one of the following:
  - **Move up** — moves the filter up the list
  - **Move down** — moves the filter down the list



You can reset the **List of active filters** to the default setting by clicking **Reset**.

## Customizing file associations

You can associate a number of different file types with Corel applications. When you double-click a file you have associated with an application, the application starts and the file opens. When you no longer need a file type association, you can break it.

### To associate a file type with Corel PHOTO-PAINT

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, double-click **Global**, and click **Filters**.
- 3 Click **Associate**.
- 4 In the **Associated file extensions with Corel PHOTO-PAINT** list, enable the check box of the file type you want to associate.



Associating a file type with an application adds the application to the list of recommended programs for opening this file type. To open a file of an associated file type in Corel PHOTO-PAINT while browsing in Windows, you also need to make Corel PHOTO-PAINT the default program. To do this, click the **Start** button on the Windows taskbar, and then click **Default programs**. Next, click **Associate a file type or protocol with a program**. For detailed instructions about how to change the default program for a file type, see the Windows Help.

You can reset file associations by clicking **Reset**.

### To break a Corel PHOTO-PAINT file type association

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the list of categories, double-click **Global**, and click **Filters**.
- 3 Click **Associate**.
- 4 In the **Associated file extensions with Corel PHOTO-PAINT** list, disable the check box of the file type you want to associate.





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Using macros and scripts to automate tasks

You can use macros and scripts to speed up repetitive tasks, combine multiple or complex actions, or make an option more easily accessible. You create macros by using the built-in features for Visual Basic for Applications (VBA) or Visual Studio Tools for Applications (VSTA), and you create scripts by using the Corel SCRIPT programming language.

Using a macro (or script) is similar to using the speed-dialing feature on a phone. On many phones, you can set a frequently dialed number to a speed-dial button; then, the next time you need to dial that number, you can save time by pressing its speed-dial button. Similarly, a macro lets you set the actions that you want to repeat; then, the next time that you need to repeat those actions, you can save time by playing that macro.

You can use either a macro or a script to automate a task in Corel PHOTO-PAINT. A macro is the better choice if you want to write the code that is required to carry out the task (by using VBA or VSTA), while a script is the better choice if you want to record the steps that are required to carry out the task (by using Corel SCRIPT).

This section contains the following topic:

- [“Working with macros” \(page 471\)](#)
- [“Working with scripts” \(page 476\)](#)

### Working with macros

You can save time by using a macro to automate a series of repetitive tasks. A macro lets you specify a sequence of actions so that you can quickly repeat those actions later.

You don't need any programming experience to use macros — in fact, the basic tools for working with macros are available within the main application window. However, if you want to have more control over your macros, you can use the following built-in programming environments:

- Microsoft Visual Studio Tools for Applications (VSTA) — the successor to VBA, and an excellent choice for developers and other programming experts. VSTA provides the tools and features that you need to create the most advanced macro projects.
- Microsoft Visual Basic for Applications (VBA) — a subset of the Microsoft Visual Basic (VB) programming environment, and an excellent choice for beginners. You can use VBA to create basic macros for personal use, but you can also use it to create more advanced macro projects.



For detailed information on the differences between VBA and VSTA, please see the Corel PHOTO-PAINT Macros Help file ([pp\\_om.chm](#), which is located in the **Data** folder for the installed software).

## Getting started with macros

The macro features for VBA and VSTA are installed with the software by default, but you can manually install these features if necessary. You can specify options for the VBA feature.



To use VSTA macro features with Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you must have Microsoft Visual Studio 2012 or later installed.

If you install Microsoft Visual Studio after installing CorelDRAW Graphics Suite, you must re-install the VSTA macro features by modifying your CorelDRAW Graphics Suite installation. For more information, see [“To manually install the macro features” on page 473](#).

The macro features provide several tools for working with macros in the main application window:

- Macros toolbar — provides easy access to common macro functions
- Macro Manager docker — provides easy access to all available macro projects for VBA, and to basic functions for working with those projects
- Macro Editor (formerly the Visual Basic Editor) — provides advanced functions for creating VBA-based macro projects
- VSTA Editor — provides advanced functions for creating VSTA-based macro projects. The VSTA Editor is accessible only if you have Microsoft Visual Studio 2012 or later installed.

## Creating macros

Macros are stored in modules (also called “code modules”), which are stored in macro projects. The Macro Manager docker lets you view and manage all of the macro projects, modules, and macros that are available to you.

You can use the Macro Manager docker to create macro projects in the form of Global Macro Storage (GMS) files or Corel VSTA Projects (CGSaddon). Using such files is an excellent way to bundle the components of your macro project for sharing with others. You can use the Macro Manager docker to open (or “load”) the macro projects that you create, as well as the macro projects that install with the software or that are otherwise made available to you. You can also use the Macro Manager docker to rename macro projects, as well as to copy and close (or “unload”) GMS-based and VSTA macro projects.



Some macro projects are locked and cannot be modified.



When you create a document, a macro project for that document is automatically added to the Macro Manager docker. Although you can store macros within the macro project for a document — for example, to create an all-in-one template — it is recommended that you instead use GMS files to store your macro projects.

Each macro project contains at least one module. You can use the Macro Manager docker to add a module to a VBA-based macro project, or to open existing modules for editing. You can also use the Macro Manager docker to rename or delete VBA modules.



The editing feature is disabled for some modules.

Finally, you can use the Macro Manager docker to create macros within the available modules. You don’t need any programming experience to create macros; however, if you have programming experience and want to edit VBA macros, you can do so by using the Macro Editor. You can also use the Macro Manager docker to rename and delete VBA macros.



Corel PHOTO-PAINT includes sample macros, which supply additional functionality, demonstrate automation in the software, and provide sample code. For information on these sample macros, please see the Corel PHOTO-PAINT Macros Help file (**pp\_om.chm**, which is located in the **Data** folder for the installed software).

## Playing macros

You can perform the actions that are associated with a macro by playing that macro.

## Learning more about macros

Corel PHOTO-PAINT provides additional resources that contain helpful information about macros. These additional resources, which are located in the **Data** folder for the installed software, are described in the following table.

Resource	Description and filename
Macros Help file	Provides detailed information about the features and functions for creating macro projects in Corel PHOTO-PAINT  <b>pp_om.chm</b>
Macro Programming Guide	Provides an instructional approach to creating macro projects for Corel PHOTO-PAINT  <b>Macro Programming Guide.pdf</b>
Object Model Diagram	Provides a hierarchical representation of the features and functions that can be automated in Corel PHOTO-PAINT  <b>Corel PHOTO-PAINT Object Model Diagram.pdf</b>

The Macros Help file includes documentation on every feature and function that can be automated in the application. (Collectively, these features and functions are called an “object model.”) You can easily access the Macros Help file from within the Macro Editor.



For more detailed information about VBA and its programming environment, please consult the Microsoft Visual Basic Help from the **Help** menu in the Macro Editor.

For more detailed information about VSTA and its programming environment, please consult the **Help** menu in the VSTA Editor.

## To manually install the macro features

- 1 On the Windows Control Panel, click **Uninstall a program**.
- 2 Double-click **CorelDRAW Graphics Suite** on the **Uninstall or change a program** page.
- 3 Enable the **Modify** option in the wizard that appears, and follow the instructions.
- 4 On the **Features** page of the installation wizard, enable the following check boxes in the **Utilities** list box:
  - **Visual Basic for Applications**
  - **Visual Studio Tools for Applications**



The macro features for VBA and VSTA are installed with the software by default.

## To specify VBA options

- 1 Click **Tools** ► **Options**.
- 2 In the **Workspace** list of categories, click **VBA**.
- 3 In the **Security** area, specify how to control the risk of running malicious macros by clicking **Security options**.  
If you want to bypass this security feature, enable the **Trust all installed GMS modules** check box, and then proceed to step 6.
- 4 On the **Security level** page of the **Security** dialog box, enable one of the following options:
  - **Very high** — allows only macros installed in trusted locations to run. All other signed and unsigned macros are disabled.
  - **High** — allows only signed macros from trusted sources to run. Unsigned macros are automatically disabled.
  - **Medium** — lets you choose which macros run, even if they are potentially harmful
  - **Low (not recommended)** — allows all potentially unsafe macros to run. Enable this setting if you have virus-scanning software installed, or if you check the safety of all documents that you open.

5 On the **Trusted publishers** page of the **Security** dialog box, review which macro publishers are trusted. Click **View** to display details on the selected macro publisher, or click **Remove** to delete the selected macro publisher from the list.

If desired, you can enable or disable the **Trust access to Visual Basic project** check box for the selected macro publisher.

6 Disable the **Delay load VBA** check box if you want to load the VBA feature at start-up.

## To access the macro tools

To

Display the **Macros** toolbar

Do the following

Click **Window** ► **Toolbars** ► **Macros**.

A check mark next to the command indicates that the toolbar is displayed.

Display the **Macro Manager** docker

Do one of the following:

- Click **Tools** ► **Macros** ► **Macro Manager**.
- Click the **Macro Manager** button  on the **Macros** toolbar.

Display the **Macro Editor**

Do one of the following:

- Click **Tools** ► **Macros** ► **Macro Editor**.
- Click the **Macro Editor** button  on the **Macros** toolbar.
- Right-click **Visual Basic for Applications** in the **Macro Manager** docker, and then click **Show IDE**.

Display the **VSTA Editor**

Click **Tools** ► **Macros** ► **VSTA Editor**. (VSTA must be installed on your computer.)

## To create a macro project

- In the **Macro Manager** docker, do one of the following:
  - Click **Visual Studio Tools for Applications** in the list, click **New**, and then click **New macro project**.
  - Click **Visual Basic for Applications** in the list, click **New**, and then click **New macro project**.

You can also

Open (or “load”) a macro project

Do one of the following:

- Click **Visual Studio Tools for Applications** in the list, click **Load**, and then choose the project.
- Click **Visual Basic for Applications** in the list, click **Load**, and then choose the project.

Rename a macro project

Right-click the project in the list, and then click **Rename**.

Copy a **GMS**-based macro project

Right-click the project in the list, click **Copy to**, and then choose the target location for the copied project.

**NOTE:** You cannot copy a document-based macro project. Such projects are stored within a document and cannot be managed separately from that document.

Display or hide all modules in the list

Click the **Simple mode** button .

Add a module to a **VBA** macro project

Do one of the following:

- Click the project in the list, click **New**, and then click **New module**.
- Right-click the project in the list, and then click **New module**.

## You can also

Edit a module in a VBA macro project

Rename a module in a macro project

Delete a module from a macro project

Close (or “unload”) a GMS-based macro project



Some macro projects are locked and cannot be modified.

## To create a macro

- In the **Macro Manager** docker, do one of the following:
  - Click the container you want, click **New**, and then click **New macro**.
  - Right-click the desired container module, and then click **New macro**.

## You can also

Edit a macro

Delete a macro



Some macro projects are locked and cannot be modified.

## To play a macro

- Do any of the following:
  - Click **Tools** ► **Macros** ► **Run macro**, or click the **Run macro** button  on the **Macros** toolbar. From the **Macros in** list box, choose the project in which the macro is stored. From the **Macro name** list, choose the macro. Click **Run**.
  - In the **Macro Manager** docker, double-click the macro in the list.
  - In the **Macro Manager** docker, click the macro in the list, and then click the **Run** button .
  - In the **Macro Manager** docker, right-click the macro in the list, and then click **Run**.

Do one of the following:

- Click the module in the list, and then click the **Edit** button .
- Right-click the module in the list, and then click **Edit**.

Right-click the module in the list, and then click **Rename**.

Do one of the following:

- Click the module in the list, and then click the **Delete** button .
- Right-click the module in the list, and then click **Delete**.

Right-click the macro project in the list, and then click **Unload macro project**.

**NOTE:** You can close a document-based macro project only by closing the document in which it is stored.

Do one of the following:

- Click the macro in the list, and then click the **Edit** button .
- Right-click the macro in the list, and then click **Edit**.

Do one of the following:

- Click the macro in the list, and then click the **Delete** button .
- Right-click the macro in the list, and then click **Delete**.

## To access the Macros Help file from within the Macro Editor

- 1 While in Microsoft Visual Basic for Applications, press **F2** to display the Object Browser.  
The Object Browser displays all the features and functions that can be automated in the Macro Editor.
- 2 Choose **PHOTOPAINT** from the **Library** list box.  
The Object Browser is updated to display only the features and functions of Corel PHOTO-PAINT that can be automated in the Macro Editor. Collectively, these features and functions are called an “object model.”
- 3 Do one of the following:
  - Display the home page for the Macros Help file by pressing **F1**. You can browse the object-model documentation for the application by accessing the “Object Model Reference” section of the Help file.
  - Display the Help topic for a specific item in the Object Browser by clicking that item and pressing **F1**.



You can also display a Help topic for any item in the **Code** window of the Macro Editor by clicking that item and pressing **F1**.

## Working with scripts

Scripts are short programs that use the Corel **SCRIPT** programming language to automate simple tasks. For example, if you have a series of images that are underexposed, you can record the corrective adjustments as you apply them to the first photograph. You can then play the recording on all the remaining photographs to correct them simultaneously.

You can use the **Recorder** docker to create recordings, which you can save as scripts for future use. You can also use the **Recorder** docker to open, edit, and play recordings and scripts.

### Creating recordings and scripts

You can record a sequence of most keyboard, toolbar, toolbox, menu, and mouse operations. As you record, the operations are translated into command statements that appear chronologically in a command list. Each command statement is one word that is based on the name of a menu plus the name of a command found in that menu.

Some operations are converted to parameters that are embedded within a command. Parameters are recorded, but they are not displayed in the command list. For example, if you choose a paint color and apply a brushstroke to the image, the color selection is not displayed in the recorder’s command list; instead, it is recorded as a parameter of the paint tool command.

The following operations and commands cannot be recorded in Corel PHOTO-PAINT:

- toolbar, keyboard, and menu customization
- grid, ruler, and guideline customization
- Window and Help menu commands
- image calculations and image stitching
- viewing operations, such as zooming

To make a recording accessible in a future Corel PHOTO-PAINT session, you must save it as a script. The scripts that you create can be loaded and played at any time.

You can also save a list of Undo actions as a script. For example, if you did not record the actions for an effect that you want to reproduce, you can save those operations as a script by using the Undo list. A script created from an Undo list includes all the operations you perform on an image; therefore, you may need to edit the script to isolate the commands you want.

### Editing recordings and scripts

You can edit a recording or script by inserting new commands, recording over existing commands, and deleting the commands that you no longer want to include.

## Playing recordings and scripts

When you play a recording or script, the recorded commands are applied to the active image. You can play a recording only in the current Corel PHOTO-PAINT session. If you want to use the recording in other work sessions, you must save it as a script. Before playing a recording or script, ensure that the active image contains the components necessary for successful execution of the recorded commands. For example, if your script has commands that are specific to objects, it cannot be applied successfully to an image that has no objects.

You can apply a single command from a recording or script to an image. This feature is useful when you want to evaluate the result of a particular command before applying the rest of the commands in the recording or script to the image.

You can temporarily exclude some commands from a sequence before you play a recording or script. You can enable disabled commands without having to re-create the recording or script.

You can apply one or more scripts to one or more images simultaneously, which is known as batch processing. This feature lets you perform global adjustments on several images, without having to open each image and play each script individually. After batch processing, the images can be saved to their original file format or to a different file format.

## To display the Recorder docker

- Click **Window** ► **Dockers** ► **Recorder**.

## To create a recording or script

- 1 Click the **New** button  in the **Recorder** docker.
- 2 Click the **Record** button .
- 3 Perform the actions that you want to record.
- 4 Click the **Stop** button .

The recording is now complete and can be played in the current session.

To save the recording as a script for future use, click the **Save** button , choose the drive and folder where you want to save the script, and type a filename in the **File name** box.



If a document-saving command is the first action in a recording, you can restore the original image by returning to the first command in the recording.

## To save the Undo list as a script

- 1 Click **Windows** ► **Dockers** ► **Undo**.
- 2 Click the **Save script file as** button  in the **Undo manager** docker.
- 3 In the **Save recording** dialog box, choose the drive and folder where you want to save the script.
- 4 Type a filename in the **File name** box.

## To open a script

- 1 Click the **Open** button  in the **Recorder** docker.
- 2 Choose the drive and folder where the script is stored.
- 3 Double-click the script filename.

## To insert commands into a recording or script

- 1 Create a recording, or open a script in the **Recorder** docker.

- 2 Click the **Insert new command** button .
- 3 Double-click the command that you want to precede the commands you insert.  
The position indicator appears beside the selected command.
- 4 Click the **Record** button .
- 5 Perform the actions that you want to insert.
- 6 Click the **Stop** button .

### To replace commands in a recording or script

- 1 Create a recording, or open a script.
- 2 In the **Recorder** docker, double-click the first command in the sequence of commands that you want to replace.  
The position indicator appears beside the selected command.
- 3 Click the **Record** button .
- 4 Perform the new operations.
- 5 Click the **Stop** button .

### To delete commands from a recording or script

- 1 Create a recording, or open a script.
- 2 In the **Recorder** docker, hold down **Ctrl**, and click the commands.
- 3 Click the **Delete selected command(s)** button .



If you delete commands from a script, you must save the script before closing it to save the changes.

### To play a recording or script

- 1 Create a recording, or open a script.
- 2 Click the **Play** button  in the **Recorder** docker.

#### You can also

Play a single command

Double-click the name of the command you want to play. (The position indicator is displayed next to the command you have chosen.) Click the **Step forward** button .

Disable or enable a command

Click a command, and click the **Enable/Disable selected command(s)** button .

Disabled command names are grayed.

Go to the first command

Click the **Rewind** button .

Go to the last command

Click the **Fast forward** button .

### To play scripts on multiple images

- 1 Click **File** ► **Batch process**.

- 2 Click **Add file**.
- 3 In the **Load images for batch playback** dialog box, choose the drive and folder where the images are stored.
- 4 Holding down **Ctrl**, click the images that you want to edit, and click **Open**.
- 5 In the **Batch process** dialog box, click **Add script**.
- 6 In the **Load script** dialog box, choose the drive and folder where the scripts are stored.
- 7 Holding down **Ctrl**, click the scripts that you want to play, and click **Open**.
- 8 Choose an option from the **On completion** list box.  
To save the files to a specific folder, click **Browse**, and navigate to the folder you want.
- 9 Click **Play**.



Choosing **Don't save** from the **On completion** list box lets you assess the results before overwriting the original image.



## Reference

Corel PHOTO-PAINT for Adobe Photoshop users.....	483
Glossary.....	487





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Corel PHOTO-PAINT for Adobe Photoshop users

Adobe Photoshop and Corel PHOTO-PAINT have many similarities, which makes it easy to move from one application to the other. Although they share most basic drawing and design capabilities, Adobe Photoshop and Corel PHOTO-PAINT are distinguished by some differences in both terminology and tools. Understanding these differences lets you make a quick transition to Corel PHOTO-PAINT.

In this section you'll learn about

- ["Comparing terminology" \(page 483\)](#)
- ["Comparing tools" \(page 484\)](#)

### Comparing terminology

The terms and concepts in Adobe Photoshop and Corel PHOTO-PAINT differ for some features. Adobe Photoshop terms are listed below with their Corel PHOTO-PAINT equivalents.

#### Adobe Photoshop term

Actions

Adjustment layers

Animations

Bitmap mode

Blending modes

Canvas

Extract filter

Guides

Indexed Color mode

Layer masks

Layers

Layer options

#### Corel PHOTO-PAINT term

Scripts/macros

Lenses

Movies

Black-and-white color mode

Merge modes

Paper size

Cutout Lab

Guidelines

Paletted color mode

Clip masks

Objects

Object properties

## Adobe Photoshop term

Masks  
Panels  
Photomerge  
Selections  
Snapshots

## Corel PHOTO-PAINT term

Protected areas of a mask  
Dockers  
Stitching images  
Editable areas of a mask  
Checkpoints

## Comparing tools

The following table lists Adobe Photoshop tools and the corresponding Corel PHOTO-PAINT tools. Many of the tools create the same result but operate slightly differently.

### Adobe Photoshop tool

Actions panel

Blur tool

Burn tool

Clone Stamp tool

Dodge tool

Elliptical Marquee tool

Filter Gallery

Freeform Pen tool

Gradient tool

Healing Brush tool

History panel

Lasso tool

### Corel PHOTO-PAINT tool

**Recorder** docker. See “To create a recording or script” on page 477.

**Blur** special effects. See “Blur special effects” on page 287.

**Effect** tool . See “To smear, smudge, or blend colors in an image” on page 128.

**Dodge/Burn** tool . See “To adjust image color and tone by using brush effects” on page 139.

**Clone** tool . See “To clone an image area or object” on page 124.

**Dodge/Burn** tool . See “To adjust image color and tone by using brush effects” on page 139.

**Ellipse mask** tool . See “To define a rectangular or elliptical editable area” on page 226.

**Effects** menu. See “Working with special effects” on page 283.

**Path** tool . See “To draw a freehand path” on page 247.

**Interactive fill** tool . See “To apply a fountain fill interactively” on page 204.

**Touch-up brush** tool . See “To remove imperfections from an image by blending textures and colors” on page 122.

**Undo manager** docker. See “To undo or redo actions” on page 76.

**Freehand mask** tool . See “To define an editable area by using the Freehand Mask tool” on page 227.

## Adobe Photoshop tool

Magic Wand tool

Magnetic Lasso tool

Move tool

Navigator panel

Paint Bucket tool

Pattern Stamp tool

Pen tool

Polygonal Lasso tool

Rectangular Marquee tool

Single Column Marquee tool

Single Row Marquee tool

Type tool

## Corel PHOTO-PAINT tool

**Magic wand mask tool** . See "To define an editable area of uniform color" on page 229.

**Magnetic mask tool** . See "To define an editable area surrounded by uniform color" on page 230.

**Object pick tool** . See "To select objects" on page 314.

**Navigator pop-up window** . See "Viewing images" on page 61.

**Fill tool** . See "To apply a uniform fill" on page 201.

**Image sprayer tool** . See "To spray images" on page 272.

**Path tool** . See "Creating paths" on page 245.

**Freehand mask tool** . See "To define an editable area by using the Freehand Mask tool" on page 227.

**Path tool** . See "To draw a Bézier path" on page 246.

**Rectangle mask tool** . See "To define a rectangular or elliptical editable area" on page 226.

**Rectangle mask tool** . See "To define a rectangular or elliptical editable area" on page 226.

**Rectangle mask tool** . See "To define a rectangular or elliptical editable area" on page 226.

**Text tool** . See "To add text" on page 344.





Corel®  
PHOTO-PAINT® X7

## Glossary

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

### A

#### **accelerator table**

A file that contains a list of shortcut keys. Different tables are active depending on the task that you are performing.

#### **active object (Corel PHOTO-PAINT)**

An object that has a red border around its thumbnail in the **Object manager** docker.

#### **alpha channel**

A temporary storage area for masks. When you save a mask to an alpha channel, you can access and reuse it in the image as many times as you want. You can save an alpha channel to a file or load a previously saved channel in the active image.

#### **ambient lighting**

The lighting in a room, including natural and artificial light sources.

#### **animation file**

A file that supports moving images; for example, animated GIF and QuickTime (MOV).

#### **anti-aliasing**

A method of smoothing curved and diagonal edges in images. Intermediate pixels along edges are filled to smooth the transition between the edges and the surrounding area.

#### **aspect ratio**

The ratio of the width of an image to its height (expressed mathematically as x:y). For example, the aspect ratio of an image that is 640 x 480 pixels is 4:3.

### B

#### **bit depth**

The number of binary bits that define the shade or color of each pixel in a bitmap. For example, a pixel in a black-and-white image has a depth of 1 bit, because it can only be black or white. The number of color values that a given bit depth can produce is equal to 2 to the power of the bit depth. For example, a bit depth of 1 can produce two color values ( $2^1=2$ ), and a bit depth of 2 can produce 4 color values ( $2^2=4$ ).

Bit depth ranges between 1 and 64 bits per pixel (bpp) and determines the [color depth](#) of an image.

## **bitmap**

An image composed of grids of pixels or dots.

See also [vector graphic](#).

## **bitmap fill**

A fill created from any bitmap.

## **black point**

A brightness value that is considered black in a bitmap image. In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can set the black point to improve the contrast of an image. For example, in a [histogram](#) of an image, with a brightness scale of 0 (dark) to 255 (light), if you set the black point at 5, all pixels with a value greater than 5 are converted to black.

## **black-and-white color mode**

A 1-bit color mode that stores images as two solid colors — black and white — with no gradations. This color mode is useful for line art and simple graphics. To create a black-and-white photo effect, you can use the grayscale color mode.

See also [grayscale](#).

## **bleed**

The part of the printed image that extends beyond the edge of the page. The bleed ensures that the final image goes right to the edge of the paper after binding and trimming.

## **bounding box**

The invisible box indicated by the eight selection [handles](#) surrounding a selected object.

## **brightness**

The amount of light that is transmitted or reflected from a given pixel. In the HSB color mode, brightness is a measure of how much white a color contains. For example, a brightness value of 0 produces black (or shadow in photos), and a brightness value of 255 produces white (or highlight in photos).

## **C**

### **CERN**

CERN (Conseil Européen pour la Recherche Nucléaire) is the scientific laboratory in which the World Wide Web was developed. CERN is also one of the World Wide Web server systems. Contact your server administrator to find out which system your server uses.

### **channel**

An 8-bit grayscale image that stores color or mask information for another image. There are two types of channels: color and mask. Images have one color channel for each component of the color model on which they are based. In addition, some images use spot color channels. Each channel contains the color information for that component. Mask (alpha) channels store masks that you create for your images, and they can be saved with images in formats that support mask information, such as Corel PHOTO-PAINT (CPT) format.

### **child object**

An object whose image elements are inserted into the shape of another object, called a [parent object](#). The child object and parent object are called a clipping group. The child object must be on a layer above the parent object.

### **choke**

In commercial printing, a form of trapping created by extending the background object into the foreground object.

### **client/server image map**

A rarely used image map type that includes code for both client-side and server-side image maps. This type of image map automatically defaults to the user's web browser for image map processing. If the browser does not support image maps, the server uses the external map file to process information. Currently, most web browsers support image maps, so client-side image maps are more common.

### **client-side image map**

This common image map type does not depend on the server to process the map information.

**clipart**

Ready-made images that can be imported into Corel applications and edited if required.

**Clipboard**

An area that is used to temporarily store cut or copied information. The information is stored until new information is cut or copied to the Clipboard, replacing the old.

**clip mask**

A mask that lets you edit an object's transparency levels without affecting the pixels in the object. You can change the transparency levels directly on the object and then add the clip mask, or add the clip mask before making the changes.

**clipping range**

The percentage of the range of values that is not displayed in the upper part of the histogram's vertical axis.

**color cast**

A color tint that often occurs in photos as a result of lighting conditions or other factors. For example, taking a photo indoors in dim incandescent light can result in a yellow color cast, and taking a photo outdoors in bright sunlight can result in a blue color cast.

**color depth**

The maximum number of colors an image can contain. Color depth is determined by the [bit depth](#) of an image and the displaying monitor. For example, an 8-bit image can contain up to 256 colors, while a 24-bit image can contain roughly up to 16 million colors. A GIF image is an example of an 8-bit image; a JPEG image is an example of a 24-bit image.

**CMY**

A color mode made up of cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y). This mode is used in the three-color printing process.

**CMYK**

A color mode made up of cyan (C), magenta (M), yellow (Y), and black (K). CMYK printing produces true blacks and a wide tonal range. In the CMYK color mode, color values are expressed as percentages; therefore, a value of 100 for an ink means that the ink is applied at full saturation.

**code page**

A code page is a table in the DOS or Windows operating system that defines which ASCII or ANSI character set is used for displaying text. Different character sets are used for different languages.

**color channel**

An 8-bit grayscale version of an image. Each channel represents one level of color in the image; for example, RGB has three color channels, while CMYK has four. When all the channels are printed together, they produce the entire range of colors in the image.

See also [RGB](#) and [CMYK](#).

**color gamut**

The range of colors that can be reproduced or perceived by any device. For example, a monitor displays a different color gamut than a printer, making it necessary to manage colors from original images to final output.

**color mode**

A system that defines the number and kind of colors that make up an image. Black-and-white, grayscale, RGB, CMYK, and paletted are examples of color modes.

**color model**

A simple color chart that defines the range of colors displayed in a color mode. RGB (red, green, blue), CMY (cyan, magenta, yellow), CMYK (cyan, magenta, yellow, black), HSB (hue, saturation, brightness), HLS (hue, lightness, saturation), and CIE L\*a\*b (Lab) are examples of color models.

**color palette**

A collection of solid colors from which you can choose colors for fills and outlines.

**color profile**

A description of the color-handling capabilities and characteristics of a device.

**color separation**

In commercial printing, the process of splitting colors in a composite image to produce a number of separate grayscale images, one for each primary color in the original image. In the case of a CMYK image, four separations (one for cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) must be made.

**color space**

In electronic color management, a virtual representation of a device or the color gamut of a color model. The boundaries and contours of a device's color space are mapped by color management software.

See also [color gamut](#).

**color swatch**

A solid-colored patch in a color palette.

**color tolerance**

The value that determines the color range or sensitivity of the Lasso mask tool, Magic wand mask tool, and Fill tool. Tolerance is also used in the Color mask dialog box to determine which pixels are protected when you create a color mask. A pixel is included in the specified color range if its grayscale value falls within the defined tolerance.

**color trapping**

A printing term used to describe a method of overlapping colors to compensate for misaligned color separations (misregistration). This method avoids white slivers that appear between adjoining colors on a white page.

See also [spread](#), [choke](#), and [overprinting](#).

**contrast**

The difference in tone between the dark and light areas of an image. Higher contrast values indicate greater differences and fewer gradations between dark and light.

**control points (Corel PHOTO-PAINT)**

The points that extend from a node along a curve that is being edited with the Shape tool. Control points determine the angle at which the curve passes through the node.

**crop**

To cut unwanted areas of an image without affecting the resolution of the part that remains.

**cubist**

An abstract style of art that stresses several aspects of the same object simultaneously, generally in the form of squares or cubes.

**D****DeviceN**

A type of color space and device color model. This color space is multi-component, allowing color to be defined by other than the standard set of three (RGB) and four (CMYK) color components.

**distortion handles**

The outward-facing, double-headed arrows located at each corner of the highlighting box.

**dithering**

A process used to simulate a greater number of colors when only a limited number of colors are available.

**dpi (dots per inch)**

A measure of a printer's resolution in dots per inch. Typical desktop laser printers print at 600 dpi. Imagesetters print at 1270 or 2540 dpi. Printers with higher dpi capabilities produce smoother and cleaner output. The term dpi is also used to measure scanning resolution and to indicate bitmap resolution.

**drawing page**

The portion of a drawing window enclosed by a rectangle with a shadow effect.

**duotone**

An image in the duotone color mode is an 8-bit [grayscale](#) image that has been enhanced with one to four additional colors.

**E****editable area**

An editable area (selection) allows paint and effects to be applied to the underlying pixels.

See also [protected area](#) and [mask](#).

**encoding**

Determines the character set of text, letting you correctly display text in the appropriate language.

**Exchangeable Image File (EXIF)**

A file format that embeds digital camera information, such as the time and date a photo is taken, shutter speed, and focus, into JPEG images.

**exposure**

A photographic term referring to the amount of light used to create an image. If not enough light is permitted to interact with the sensor (in a digital camera) or film (in a traditional camera), the image appears too dark (underexposed). If too much light is permitted to interact with the sensor or film, the image appears too light (overexposed).

**F****feathering**

The level of sharpness along the edges of a drop shadow.

**fill**

A color, bitmap, fountain, or pattern applied to an area of an image.

**filter**

An application that translates digital information from one form to another.

**flattened image**

An image in which objects and masks are combined with the background and can no longer be edited.

**floating editable area**

An editable area that hovers or floats above an image and can be moved and modified without affecting the underlying pixels.

**floating object**

A bitmap with no background. Floating objects are also referred to as photo objects or cutout images.

**font**

A set of characters with a single style (such as italic), weight (such as bold), and size (such as 10 point) for a typeface such as Times New Roman.

**fountain fill**

A smooth progression of two or more colors applied to an area of an image that follow a linear, radial, conical, or square path. Two-color fountain fills have a direct progression from one color to another, while custom fills may have a progression of many colors.

**fountain step**

The shades of color that make up the appearance of a fountain fill. The more steps in a fill, the smoother the transition from the beginning color to the end color.

## **fractal**

An irregular shape generated by a repeating pattern. Fractals can be used to mathematically generate an irregular and complex image by following a pattern, without having to define all of the individual components in the image.

## **G**

### **Gaussian**

A type of pixel distribution that spreads the pixel information outward using bell-shaped curves rather than straight lines.

### **GIF**

A graphic file format designed to use a minimum of disk space and be easily exchanged between computers. This format is commonly used to publish images of 256 or fewer colors to the Internet.

### **glyph (typographic)**

A typographic glyph corresponds to a single character of a typeface.

### **grab area**

The area of a command bar that can be dragged. Dragging the grab area moves the bar, while dragging any other area of the bar has no effect. The location of the grab area depends on the operating system you are using, the orientation of the bar, and whether the bar is docked or undocked. Command bars with grab areas include toolbars, the toolbox, and the property bar.

### **gradient node**

A square point that represents each color on the gradient arrow of a gradient fill, which is used to change the fill's start and end points, colors, and transparency values.

### **grayscale**

A color mode that displays images by using 256 shades of gray. Each color is defined as a value between 0 and 255, where 0 is darkest (black) and 255 is lightest (white). Grayscale images, especially photos, are commonly referred to as "black and white."

### **grayscale image**

An image that uses the [grayscale](#) color mode, which can display up to 256 shades of gray, ranging from white to black. Grayscale images, especially photos, are commonly referred to as "black and white."

## **grid**

A series of evenly spaced horizontal and vertical lines that are used to help draw and arrange objects.

## **group**

A set of objects that behave as one unit. Operations you perform on a group apply equally to each of its objects.

## **guideline**

A horizontal, vertical, or slanted line that can be placed anywhere in the drawing window to aid in object placement.

## **H**

### **halftone**

An image that has been converted from a continuous tone image to a series of dots of various sizes to represent different tones.

### **handles**

A set of eight black squares that appear at the corners and sides of an object when the object is selected. By dragging individual handles, you can scale, resize, or mirror the object. If you click a selected object, the shape of the handles changes to arrows so that you can rotate and skew the object.

### **highlight, shadow, and midtone**

Terms used to describe the brightness of pixels in a bitmap image. Brightness values range from 0 (dark) to 255 (light). Pixels in the first third of the range are considered shadows, pixels in the middle third of the range are considered midtones, and pixels in the last third of the range are considered highlights. You can lighten or darken specific areas in images by adjusting the highlights, shadows, or midtones. A [histogram](#) is an excellent tool for viewing and evaluating the highlights, shadows, and midtones of images.

**highlighting box**

A rectangle with eight handles that encloses a selection in an image.

**histogram**

A histogram consists of a horizontal bar chart that plots the brightness values of the pixels in your bitmap image on a scale from 0 (dark) to 255 (light). The left part of the histogram represents the shadows of an image, the middle part represents the midtones, and the right part represents the highlights. The height of the spikes indicates the number of pixels at each brightness level. For example, a large number of pixels in the shadows (the left side of the histogram) indicates the presence of image detail in the dark areas of the image.

**hotspot**

The area of an object that you can click to jump to the address specified by a URL.

**HSB (hue, saturation, brightness)**

A color model that defines three components: hue, saturation, and brightness. Hue determines color (yellow, orange, red, and so on); brightness determines perceived intensity (lighter or darker color); and saturation determines color depth (from dull to intense).

**HTML**

The World Wide Web authoring standard comprised of markup tags that define the structure and components of a document. The tags are used to tag text and integrate resources (such as images, sound, video, and animation) when you create a webpage.

**hue**

The property of a color that allows it to be classified by its name. For example, blue, green, and red are all hues.

**hyperlink**

An electronic link that provides access directly from one place in a document to another place in that document or to another document.

I

**image map**

A graphic in an HTML document that contains clickable areas that link to locations on the World Wide Web, to other HTML documents, or to graphics.

**imagesetter**

A high-resolution device that creates film or film-based paper output used in the production of plates for printing presses.

**intensity**

Intensity is a measure of the brightness of the light pixels in a bitmap compared with the darker midtones and dark pixels. An increase in intensity increases the vividness of whites while maintaining true darks.

**interlaced video image**

Interlaced video images take two passes to fill a screen, painting every other line in each pass. This can produce a flicker.

**interlacing**

In GIF images, a method that lets you display a web-based image on the screen at a low, blocky resolution. As the image data loads, the image quality improves.

J

**JavaScript**

A scripting language used on the web to add interactive functions to HTML pages.

**JPEG**

A format for photographic images that offers compression with some loss of image quality. Because of their compression (up to 20 to 1) and small file size, JPEG images are widely used in Internet publishing.

**JPEG 2000**

An improved version of the JPEG file format that features better compression and allows you to attach image information and assign a different compression rate to an image area.

## K

### **kerning**

The space between characters, and the adjustment of that space. Often, kerning is used to place two characters closer together than usual, for example WA, AW, TA, or VA. Kerning increases readability and makes letters appear balanced and proportional, especially at larger font sizes.

### **knockout**

A printing term that refers to an area where underlying colors have been removed so that only the top color prints. For example, if you print a small circle on a large circle, the area under the small circle is not printed. This ensures that the color used for the small circle remains true instead of overlapping and mixing with the color used for the large circle.

## L

### **Lab**

A color model that contains a luminance (or lightness) component (L) and two chromatic components: "a" (green to red) and "b" (blue to yellow).

### **layer**

A transparent plane on which you can place objects in a drawing.

### **leading**

The spacing between lines of text. Leading is important for both readability and appearance.

### **lens**

An object that protects part or all of an image when you perform color and tonal corrections. You can view the effect of a correction through a lens without affecting the underlying pixels. If you move a lens, the correction is applied to the pixels at the new location.

### **linking**

The process of placing an object created in one application into a document created in a different application. A linked object remains connected with its source file. If you want to change a linked object in a file, you have to modify the source file.

### **lossless**

A kind of file compression that maintains the quality of an image that has been compressed and decompressed.

### **lossy**

A kind of file compression that results in noticeable degradation of image quality.

### **low-frequency areas**

Smooth areas in an image where gradual changes take place. That is, areas where there are no edges or noise.

## **LZW**

A lossless file compression technique that results in smaller file size and faster processing time. LZW compression is commonly used on GIF and TIFF files.

## M

### **marquee**

A dashed outline that surrounds an editable area or an object in an image. By default, object marquees are blue and mask marquees are black.

### **marquee select**

To select objects or nodes by dragging the **Pick** tool or **Shape** tool diagonally and enclosing objects in a marquee box with a dotted outline.

### **mask**

A mask is applied to an image during image editing to define [protected areas](#) and [editable areas](#).

## **mask modes**

Mask tool operation modes that you must choose before you create or fine-tune a mask and its editable area. There are four mask modes: Normal, Additive, Subtractive, and XOR. The Normal mode (default) lets you select an area in an image. The Additive mode lets you expand the editable regions by selecting multiple areas in an image. The Subtractive mode lets you reduce the editable regions by removing areas from a selection. The XOR mode lets you select multiple areas in an image. If areas overlap, the overlapping regions are excluded from the editable area and added to the protected area.

## **merge mode**

An editing state that determines how the selected paint, object, or fill color combines with other colors in the image.

## **micro nudge**

To move an object in small increments.

See also [nudge](#) and [super nudge](#).

## **moiré pattern**

The visual effect of radiating curves created by superimposing two regular patterns. For example, a moiré pattern can result from overlapping two [halftone](#) screens of different angles, dot spacing, and dot size. Moiré patterns are the undesirable result of rescreening an image with a different halftone screen or with the same halftone screen on an angle different from the original.

## **mosaic**

The decorative artwork made by arranging small pieces of variously colored material to form pictures or patterns.

## **multichannel**

A color mode that displays images by using multiple color channels, each comprising 256 shades of gray. When you convert an RGB color image to the multichannel color mode, the individual color channels (red [R], green [G], and blue [B]) are converted to grayscale information that reflects the color values of the pixels in each channel.

## **multitasking**

An option that can improve the overall performance of an application by optimizing how the CPU executes tasks.

## **N**

### **NCSA (National Center for Supercomputing Applications)**

NCSA is a server system. If you are creating an image map to be displayed on the web, you need to know the system your server uses, because different codes are used in the map files. Contact your server administrator to find out which system your server uses.

## **nodes**

The square points at each end of a line or curve segment. You can change the shape of a line or curve by dragging one or more of its nodes.

## **noise**

In bitmap editing, random pixels on the surface of a bitmap, resembling static on a television screen.

### **NTSC (National Television Standards Committee)**

A video color filter that is commonly used to define the gamut of colors supported by television monitors in North America.

## **nudge**

To move an object in increments.

See also [micro nudge](#) and [super nudge](#).

## **O**

### **object (Corel PHOTO-PAINT)**

An independent bitmap that is layered above the background image. Changes applied to objects do not affect the underlying image.

## **opacity**

The quality of an object that makes it difficult to see through. If an object is 100 percent opaque, you cannot see through it. Opacity levels under 100 percent increase the transparency of objects.

See also [transparency](#).

### **overlay**

A red-tinted, transparent sheet that you can superimpose on the protected areas in an image. The mask overlay makes it easy to distinguish between the editable and the masked (protected) regions in an image. When the overlay is applied, the masked areas are displayed in varying degrees of red (according to their transparency). The deeper the saturation of the red tint, the greater the degree of protection.

See also [editable area](#) and [protected area](#).

### **overprinting**

Overprinting is achieved by printing one color over another. Depending on the colors you choose, the overprinted colors mix to create a new color, or the top color covers the bottom color. Overprinting a dark color on a light color is often used to avoid registration problems that occur when color separations are not precisely aligned.

See also [color trapping](#), [choke](#), and [spread](#).

## **P**

### **PAL**

A video color filter that is commonly used to define the gamut of colors supported by television monitors in Europe and Asia.

### **paletted color mode**

An 8-bit color mode that displays images of up to 256 colors. You can convert a complex image to the paletted color mode to reduce file size and to achieve more precise control of the colors used throughout the conversion process.

### **pan (Corel PHOTO-PAINT)**

To move the image around in the image window, usually when the image is larger than its window. Panning changes the image view in the same way that scrolling moves the image up, down, to the left, or to the right in the image window. When working at high magnification levels where not all of the image is displayed, you can quickly pan to see parts of the image that were previously hidden.

### **PANOSE font matching**

A feature that lets you choose a substitute font if you open a file that contains a font not installed on your computer. You can make a substitution for the current working session only, or you can make a permanent substitution, so that the new font is automatically displayed when you save and reopen the file.

### **PANTONE process colors**

The colors that are available through the PANTONE Process Color System, which is based on the CMYK color model.

### **parent object**

An object whose shape is combined with the image elements of another object, called a [child object](#). The child object and parent object are called a clipping group. The parent object must be on an object layer below the child object.

### **path**

A series of line or curve [segments](#) connected by square endpoints called [nodes](#).

### **pattern fill**

A fill consisting of a series of repeating vector objects or images.

### **perspective handles**

The hollow circles in the corners of the highlighting box.

### **pixel**

A colored dot that is the smallest part of a bitmap.

See also [resolution](#).

### **pixelation**

A type of image distortion in which individual pixels are discernible to the naked eye, or groups of pixels appear as blocks of colors. Pixelation is caused by incorrect resolution or incorrect image dimensions, or it can be created intentionally for a special effect.

## **PNG (Portable Network Graphics)**

A graphic file format designed for use in online viewing. This format can import 24-bit color graphics.

### **pressure-sensitive pen**

A stylus that you can use to access commands and draw your images. To use with Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you must install the pressure-sensitive pen, along with a pressure-sensitive tablet and its corresponding drivers.

### **process color**

In commercial printing, colors that are produced from a blend of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. This is different from a spot color, which is a solid ink color printed individually (one printing plate is required for each spot color).

### **progressive**

In JPEG images, a method of having the image appear on screen in its entirety, at a low, blocky resolution. As the image data loads, the image quality progressively improves.

### **protected area**

An area that prevents paint and effects from being applied to the underlying pixels.

See also [mask](#) and [editable area](#).

## **R**

### **radius**

As applied to orbits, sets the distance between the center of the brushstroke and the nibs that travel around the center of the brushstroke when you paint with orbits. Increasing this value increases the size of the brushstroke.

As applied to the Dust & Scratch filter, sets the number of pixels surrounding the damaged area that are used to apply the filter.

### **range sensitivity**

A paletted color mode option that lets you specify a focus color for the paletted conversion. You can adjust the color and specify its importance to guide converting.

### **rasterized image**

An image that has been rendered into pixels. When you convert vector graphic files to bitmap files, you create rasterized images.

### **render**

To capture a two-dimensional image from a three-dimensional model.

### **resample**

To change the [resolution](#) and dimensions of a bitmap. Upsampling increases the size of the image; downsampling decreases the size of the image. Resampling with fixed resolution lets you maintain the resolution of the image by adding or subtracting pixels while varying the image size. Resampling with variable resolution keeps the number of pixels unchanged while changing the image size, resulting in lower or higher resolution than that of the original image.

### **resolution**

The amount of detail that an image file contains, or that an input, output, or display device is capable of producing. Resolution is measured in dpi (dots per inch) or ppi (pixels per inch). Low resolutions can result in a grainy appearance; high resolutions can produce higher quality images but result in larger file sizes.

## **RGB**

A color mode in which the three colors of light (red, green, and blue) are combined in varying intensities to produce all other colors. A value between 0 and 255 is assigned to each [channel](#) of red, green, and blue. Monitors, scanners, and the human eye use RGB to produce or detect color.

### **rollover**

An interactive object or group of objects that changes its appearance when you click or point to it.

**round-tripping**

The conversion of a document saved in one file format, such as Portable Document Format (PDF), to another format, such as Corel DESIGNER (DES) and then back again.

**rotation handles**

The curved, double arrows in the corners of the highlighting box.

**ruler**

A horizontal or vertical bar marked off in units and used to determine the size and position of objects. By default, the rulers appear on the left side and along the top of the application window, but they can be hidden or moved.

**S****saturation**

The purity or vividness of a color, expressed as the absence of white. A color that has 100 percent saturation contains no white. A color with 0 percent saturation is a shade of gray.

**scanner**

A device that converts images on paper, transparency, or film to digital form. Scanners produce bitmaps or [rasterized images](#).

**seed color**

The color of the first pixel that you click when you define an editable area by using the Lasso and Magic wand mask tools. This color is used by the tolerance value to set the sensitivity of the color detection in color masks.

**segment**

The line or curve between nodes in a curve object.

**segment (path)**

The section of a path located between two consecutive nodes. A path is a series of segments.

**selection**

An area of an image, also called editable area, that is not protected by a mask and that is, therefore, available for editing. The selection can be modified by painting and editing tools, special effects, and image commands.

**selection box**

An invisible rectangle with eight visible handles that appears around any object you select using the **Pick** tool.

**server-side image map**

A rarely used image map type that relies on a server to process image map information. It requires a separate map (\*.map) file for the web server. Currently, most web browsers can process image maps, so client-side image maps are more common.

**shape cursor**

Uses the shape and size of the nib of the current tool as a cursor.

**skewing handles**

The straight, double-headed arrows located in the center of each side of the highlighting box.

**spot color**

In commercial printing, a solid ink color that prints individually, one plate per spot color.

**spread**

In commercial printing, a type of trap that is created by extending the foreground object into the background object.

**stacking order**

The sequence in which objects are created in the image window. This order determines the relationship between objects and, therefore, the appearance of your image. The first object you create appears on the bottom; the last object appears on the top.

**stylus**

A pen device, used in conjunction with a pen tablet, that allows you to draw paint strokes. A pressure-sensitive stylus allows you to vary your strokes with subtle changes in pressure.

**subpath (Corel PHOTO-PAINT)**

A segment which is not joined to the main path.

**subtractive color model**

A color model, such as CMYK, that creates color by subtracting wavelengths of light reflected from an object. For example, a colored ink appears blue if it absorbs all colors except blue.

**super nudge**

To move an object in large increments by pressing Shift and an Arrow key. The super nudge value is multiplied by the nudge value to obtain the distance by which the object is moved.

See also [nudge](#) and [micro nudge](#).

**swap disk**

Hard drive space used by applications to artificially increase the amount of memory available in your computer.

**swatch**

One of a series of solid-colored patches used as a sample when selecting color. A printed booklet of swatches is called a swatchbook. Swatch also refers to the colors contained in the color palette.

**symbol**

A reusable object or group of objects. A symbol is defined once and can be referenced many times in an image.

**T****target**

The frame or web browser window in which a new webpage appears.

**temperature**

A way of describing light in terms of degrees Kelvin — lower values correspond to dim lighting conditions that cause an orange cast, such as candlelight or the light from an incandescent light bulb. Higher values correspond to intense lighting conditions that cause a blue cast, such as sunlight.

**texture fill**

A fractally generated fill that, by default, fills an object or image area with one image instead of with a series of repeating images.

**threshold**

A level of tolerance for tonal variation in a bitmap.

**threshold (path)**

A control available when you create a [path](#) from a [mask](#). Threshold values range from 1 to 10 and determine the size of the angle required between two sections of a mask for a node to be created there. A low value produces more cusps, and therefore more nodes on the resulting path.

**thumbnail**

A miniature, low-resolution version of an image or illustration.

**tightness (path)**

A control available when you create a path from a mask [marquee](#). Tightness values range from 1 to 10 and determine how close the path's shape will be to that of the marquee. The higher the value, the more the new path resembles the marquee; it will have more nodes than a path with a lower tightness value.

**tiling**

The technique of repeating a small image across a large surface. Tiling is often used to create a patterned background for webpages.

## **tint**

In photo editing, a tint often refers to a semitransparent color applied over an image. Also called a [color cast](#).

In printing, a tint refers to a lighter shade of a color created with halftone screening — for example, a spot color.

See also [halftone](#).

## **tonal range**

The distribution of pixels in a bitmap image from dark (a value of zero, indicating no brightness) to light (a value of 255, indicating full brightness). Pixels in the first third of the range are considered shadows, pixels in the middle third of the range are considered midtones, and pixels in the last third of the range are considered highlights. Ideally, the pixels in an image should be distributed across the entire tonal range. A [histogram](#) is an excellent tool for viewing and evaluating the tonal range of images.

## **tone**

The variations in a color or the range of grays between black and white.

## **transparency**

The quality of an object that makes it easy to see through. Setting lower levels of transparency causes higher levels of opacity and less visibility of the underlying items or image.

See also [opacity](#).

## **true color**

A term that refers to digital RGB color that is composed of 24 bits, or 16.7 million colors.

## **TWAIN**

By using the TWAIN driver supplied by the manufacturer of the imaging hardware, Corel graphics applications can acquire images directly from a digital camera or scanner.

## **U**

### **uniform fill**

A type of fill used to apply one solid color to your image.

See also [fill](#).

### **Unicode**

A character encoding standard that defines character sets for all written languages in the world by using a 16-bit code set and more than 65,000 characters. Unicode lets you handle text effectively regardless of the language of the text, your operating system, or the application you are using.

### **URL (Uniform Resource Locator)**

A unique address that defines where a webpage is located on the Internet.

## **V**

### **vector graphic**

An image generated from mathematical descriptions that determine the position, length, and direction in which lines are drawn. Vector graphics are created as collections of lines rather than as patterns of individual dots or pixels.

See also [bitmap](#).

## **W**

### **watermark**

A small amount of random noise added to the luminance component of the image pixels which carries information about the image. This information survives normal editing, printing, and scanning.

### **white point**

The measurement of white on a color monitor that influences how highlights and contrast appear.

In image correction, the white point determines the brightness value that is considered white in a bitmap image. In Corel PHOTO-PAINT, you can set the white point to improve the contrast of an image. For example, in a [histogram](#) of an image, with a brightness scale of 0 (dark) to 255 (light), if you set the white point at 250, all pixels with a value greater than 250 are converted to white.

**Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)**

A standard interface and driver, created by Microsoft, for loading images from peripheral devices, such as scanners and digital cameras.

Z

**zoom**

To reduce or magnify the view of a drawing. You can zoom in to see details or zoom out for a broader view.

**ZIP**

A lossless file compression technique that results in smaller file size and faster processing time.